L. V. KNODEL

CANADA: A LOOK AT THE FUTURE

TEXTBOOK

KIEV – 2019

Канада – страна молодая в своем историческом периоде развития, всего лишь 200 лет ее независимого существования, но пройденный ею путь поучителен. Весь мир восторгается достижениями этой страны.

Учебник из цикла «Лингвострановедение» – «Canada» состоит из 4 глав: «Географическое положение и климат», «Территории, провинции, города» «История Канады», «Политическая система», «Премьер министры» «Современная Канада», «Экономическое развитие», «Развлечения», «Туризм», каждая из которых делится на подразделы.

В книге много иллюстраций, делающих изучение английского языка привлекательным для молодежи. В книге приводятся оригинальные тексты на английском языке, даются всевозможные комментарии к ним, разнообразные диалоги и упражнения для закрепления специальной лексики.

Спецкурс позволяет в короткие сроки значительно усовершенствовать свою языковую базу, что является первостепенным условием успешной карьеры в будущем.

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Кана́да – государство в Северной Америке, занимает второе место в мире по площади. Омывается Атлантическим, Тихим и Северным Ледовитым океанами, граничит с США на юге и на северо-западе, морские границы с Данией (Гренландия) на северо-востоке и Францией (Сен-Пьер и Микелон); на востоке. Граница Канады и США – самая протяжённая общая граница в мире.

Канада – конституционная монархия (королевство) с парламентарной системой, являющаяся двуязычной и многокультурной страной, где английский и французский языки признаны официальными на федеральном уровне. Технологически и промышленно развитое государство, Канада имеет многоотраслевую экономику, базирующуюся на богатых природных ресурсах и торговле (в частности с США, с которыми Канада комплексно сотрудничает со времён существования колоний и основания Конфедерации).

Основанная французским исследователем Жаком Картье в 1534 году, Канада берёт своё начало от французской колонии на месте современного города Квебек, населённом первоначально местными народами. После периода английской колонизации из союза трёх британских колоний (до этого территории Новой Франции) родилась канадская конфедерация.

Канада получила независимость от Соединённого Королевства в результате мирного процесса, длившегося с 1867 по 1982 год.

В настоящее время Канада является федеративным государством, состоящим из 10 провинций и 3 территорий. Провинция с преобладающим франкоговорящим населением – Квебек, остальные – преимущественно англоязычные провинции, также называемые «английская Канада» в сравнении с франкоязычным Квебеком.

Будучи одной из девяти преимущественно англоязычных провинций, Нью-Брансуик является единственной официально двуязычной канадской провинцией.

Территория Юкон официально двуязычна (английский и французский), а Северо-Западные территории и территория Нунавут признают 11 и 4 официальных языка соответственно (английский и французский).

Название Канада происходит от слова «kanata», означающего «деревня» или «поселение» на языке лаврентийских ирокезов, первых индейцев, которых Жак Картье встретил на Гаспе летом 1534 года в их летнем лагере.

Ж. Картье позже использовал слово «Канада» для обозначения не только этой деревни, но и всей области, находившейся под контролем местного вождя Доннаконы.

С 1545 года европейские книги и карты обозначали этот регион и все берега реки Св. Лаврентия словом «Канада». Впоследствии это название перешло и на большинство соседних территорий в Северной Америке, управлявшихся Британской империей.

Учебное пособие из цикла «Лингвострановедение» «Канада: взгляд в будущее» состоит из 4 глав: Географическое положение и климат; Политическая система; История Канады; Экономика и социальная деятельность. В учебнике приводятся оригинальные тексты, даются комментарии к ним, специальная лексика и целый ряд упражнений, которые помогают закрепить поданный лексический материал.

В учебнике даются многочисленные иллюстрации, которые помогают лучше усвоить и понять сложную информацию в сфере лингвистики и страноведении.

Учебник предназначен для занятий по страноведению в лицеях, гимназиях, институтах и университетах.

INTRODUCTION
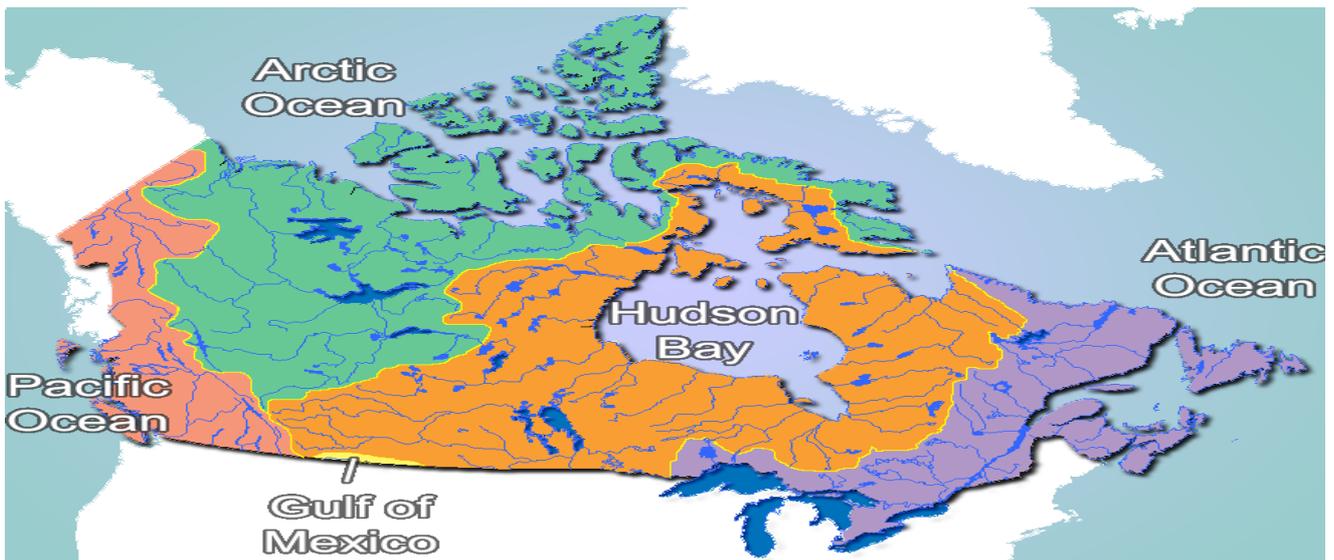
Canada is a country in the northern part of North America. Its ten provinces and three territories extend from the Atlantic to the Pacific and northward into the Arctic Ocean, covering 9.98 million square kilometres (3.85 million square miles), making it the world's second-largest country by total area and the fourth-largest country by land area.

Canada's border with the USA is the world's longest land border. Canada is sparsely populated, the majority of its land territory being dominated by forest andtundra and the Rocky Mountains; about four-fifths of the country's population of 35 million people live near the southern border.

The majority of Canada has a cold or severely cold winter climate, but southerly areas are warm in summer. The land now called Canada has been inhabited for millennia by various Aboriginal peoples. Beginning in the 15th century, British andFrench colonies were established on the Atlantic coast, with the first establishment of a region called "Canada" occurring in 1537.

As a consequence of various conflicts, the United Kingdom gained and lost territories within British North America until left, in the late 18th century, with what mostly geographically comprises Canada today.

The English established additional colonies in Cupids and Ferryland, Newfoundland, beginning in 1610. The Thirteen Colonies to the south were founded soon after.

A series of four wars erupted in colonial North America between 1689 and 1763; the later wars of the period constituted the North American theatre of the Seven Years' War. Mainland Nova Scotia came under British rule with the 1713 Treaty of Utrecht and the 1763 Treaty of Paris ceded Canada and most of New France to Britain after the Seven Years' War. The Royal Proclamation of 1763 created the Province of Quebec out of New France, and annexed Cape Breton Island to Nova Scotia.

St. John's Island (Prince Edward Island) became a separate colony in 1769.

To avert conflict in Quebec, the British parliament passed the Quebec Actof 1774, expanding Quebec's territory to the Great Lakes and Ohio Valley. It re-established the French language, Catholic faith, and French civil law there.

This angered many residents of the Thirteen Colonies, fuelling anti-British sentiment in the years prior to the 1775 outbreak of theAmerican Revolution.

The 1783 Treaty of Paris recognized American independence and ceded the newly added territories south (but not north) of the Great Lakes to the new USA. New Brunswick was split from Nova Scotia as part of a reorganization of Loyalist settlements in the Maritimes.

To accommodate English-speaking Loyalists in Quebec, the Constitutional Act of 1791 divided the province into French-speaking Lower Canada (later Quebec) and English-speaking Upper Canada (later Ontario), granting each its own elected legislative assembly.

Pursuant to the British North America Act, on July 1, 1867, the colonies of Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia joined to form the autonomous federal Dominion of Canada. This began an accretion of provinces and territories to the self-governing Dominion to the present ten provinces and three territories forming modern Canada. In 1931, Canada achieved near total independence from the United Kingdom with the Statute of Westminster 1931, and full sovereignty was attained when the Canada Act 1982 removed the last remaining ties of legal dependence on the British parliament.

Canada is a federal parliamentary democracy and a constitutional monarchy, with Queen Elizabeth II being the head of state. The country isofficially bilingual at federal level. It is one of the world's most ethnically diverse and multicultural nations, the product of large-scale immigration from many countries.

Its advanced economy is the 11th largest in the world, relying chiefly upon its abundant natural resources and well-developed international trade networks.

Canada's long and complex relationship with the USA has had a significant impact on its economy and culture. Canada is a developed country and has the tenth highest nominal per capita income globally, and the ninth highest ranking in the Human Development Index. It ranks among the highest in international measurements of government transparency, civil liberties, quality of life, economic freedom, and education. Canada is a Commonwealth Realm member of the Commonwealth of Nations, a member of the Francophonie, and part of several major international and intergovernmental institutions or groupings including the United Nations, the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, the G8, the Group of Ten, the G20, the North American Free Trade Agreement and the Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation forum.

While a variety of theories have been postulated for the etymological origins of Canada, the name is now accepted as coming from the St. Lawrence Iroquoian word "kanata", meaning "village" or "settlement". In 1535, indigenous inhabitants of the present-day Quebec City region used the word to direct French explorer Jacques Cartier to the village of Stadacona.

Cartier later used the word Canada to refer not only to that particular village, but the entire area subject to Donnacona (the chief at Stadacona); by 1545, European books and maps had begun referring to this small region along the St Lawrence River as Canada.

From the 16th to the early 18th century "Canada" referred to the part of New France that lies along the St. Lawrence River. In 1791, the area became two British colonies called Upper Canada and Lower Canada collectively named The Canadas; until their union as the British Province of Canada in 1841.

Upon Confederation in 1867, Canada was adopted as the legal name for the new country, and the wordDominion was conferred as the country's title. The transition away from the use of Dominion was formally reflected in 1982 with the passage of the Canada Act, which refers only to Canada. Later that year, the national holiday was renamed from Dominion Day to Canada Day.

Canada is the second largest country in the world surpassed only by Russia. Canada is situated to the North from the USA between the Atlantic and the Pacific Ocean. Canada is 7,770 km long from west to east and 4,600 km from north to south. Almost 90% of Canadian population lives at 160 km range from the boarder on the USA.

Canada is the largest country in the Western Hemisphere and the second largest in the world, with a total area of 9,970,610 sq. km. It stretches north to south from Cape Columbia on Ellesmere Island to Middle Island in Lake Erie, a distance of 4,634 km.

The greatest east – west distance is 5,514 km from Cape Spear, Newfoundland, to the Yukon – Alaska border. Canada borders on the USA in the south and in the west. The total length of its land borders is 8,893 km, including Alaska. The length of its sea boarders is 243,791 km.

Canada occupies much of the continent of North America, sharing land borders with the contiguous USA to the south, and the US state of Alaska to the northwest. Canada stretches from the Atlantic Ocean in the east to the Pacific Ocean in the west; to the north lays the Arctic Ocean.

Greenland is to the northeast. By total area (including its waters), Canada is the second-largest country in the world, after Russia. By land area alone, however, Canada ranks fourth, the difference being due to it having the world's largest proportion of fresh water lakes.

Within this vast expanse, Canada contains an extremely wide variety of geographical features: the towering peaks of the Rockies, the flat Prairies, the rugged north and the gently rolling landscape of the east. Though most of Canada's territory is occupied by lakes and wilderness forests, there are also vast mountain ranges, plains and even a small desert. Great Plains, or prairies, covers Manitoba, Saskatchewan and partly Alberta. These fertile territories are suitable for agriculture.

Western Canada is famous for the Rocky Mountains. In Eastern Canada all the main cities as well as Niagara Falls are situated. The Canadian Shield, the ancient mountainous region, which formed more than 2,5 billion years ago, covers the north of the country.

In the Arctic region there is tundra, which is divided to the north into many islands covered with ice all the year round. But within this seemingly wide range of features, five areas with common characteristics are found. These physiographic regions are generally used to describe Canada and form the basis of Canada's geographical landforms and geological regions.

The territories suitable for cultivation occupy only 5% of Canada and 3% are used as pastures. 54% of the territory of Canada is covered with forests and cultivated land occupies only 7,100 sq. km.

Canada, one of the largest countries in the world occupies almost all the northern part of the North America and all the nearby islands, among them are Vancouver Island in the west, Newfoundland in the East and Canadian Arctic Archipelago in the north. Canada is famous for its vast steppes, beautiful mountains, rich mineral resources, forests, rivers and lakes.

Canada has the longest coastline in the world, with a total length of 243,042 kilometres (151,019 mi); additionally, its border with the USA is the world's longest land border, stretching 8,891 kilometres (5,525 mi). On the territory Canada is surpassed only by Russia, but if we take into account only dry land (minus 8% of the territory occupied by rivers and lakes), this total area of Canada is less than that of China. Canada borders on Russia through the North Pole.

Canada is washed by the Pacific, the Atlantic and the Arctic Oceans. Its total coastal line length is more than 250,000 km. The Western Coast of the country is high, steep and cut up by gulfs.

Nearby there are a lot of islands, Vancouver Island, the Queen Charlotte Islands, etc.

The Pacific Ocean is not covered with ice in winter. The Eastern Coast is also steep and cut up by bays and gulfs. The deepest gulfs are the St. Lawrence and the Bay of Fundy. The Ocean is covered with ice only for a short period every year, but fogs and storms prevent regular navigation.

The Northern Coast has no gulfs and bays. The Arctic Ocean is covered with ice during 9-10 months a year, so navigation is possible only in summer. As Canada is situated between the Atlantic and the Pacific Ocean, it is connected with many countries of the world. This connection provided possibilities for not expensive transportation by the sea. Since 1925, Canada has claimed the portion of the Arctic between 60° and 141°W longitude, but this claim is not universally recognized. Canada is home to the world's northernmost settlement, Canadian Forces Station Alert, on the northern tip of Ellesmere Island – latitude 82.5°N – which lies 817 km (508 mi) from the North Pole.

Much of the Canadian Arctic is covered by ice and permafrost.

Since the end of the last glacial period, Canada has consisted of eight distinct forest regions, including extensive boreal forest on the Canadian Shield.

Canada has over 2,000,000 lakes (563 greater than 100 km² (39 mi²)), more than any other country, containing much of the world's fresh water. There are also fresh-water glaciers in the Canadian Rockies and the Coast Mountains.

Canada is geologically active, having many earthquakes and potentially active volcanoes, notably Mount Meager, Mount Garibaldi,Mount Cayley, and the Mount Edziza volcanic complex.

The volcanic eruption of the Tseax Cone in 1775 was among Canada's worst natural disasters, killing 2,000 Nisga'a people and destroying their village in the Nass River valley of northern British Columbia. The eruption produced a 22.5-kilometre (14.0 mi) lava flow, and, according to Nisga'a legend, blocked the flow of the Nass River.[99]Canada's population density, at 3.3 inhabitants per square kilometre (8.5/sq mi), is among the lowest in the world.

The most densely populated part of the country is the Quebec City – Windsor Corridor, situated in Southern Quebec and Southern Ontario along the Great Lakes and the St. Lawrence River.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Write out all dates and make a table with them.

Canadian Day

Provinces & Territories
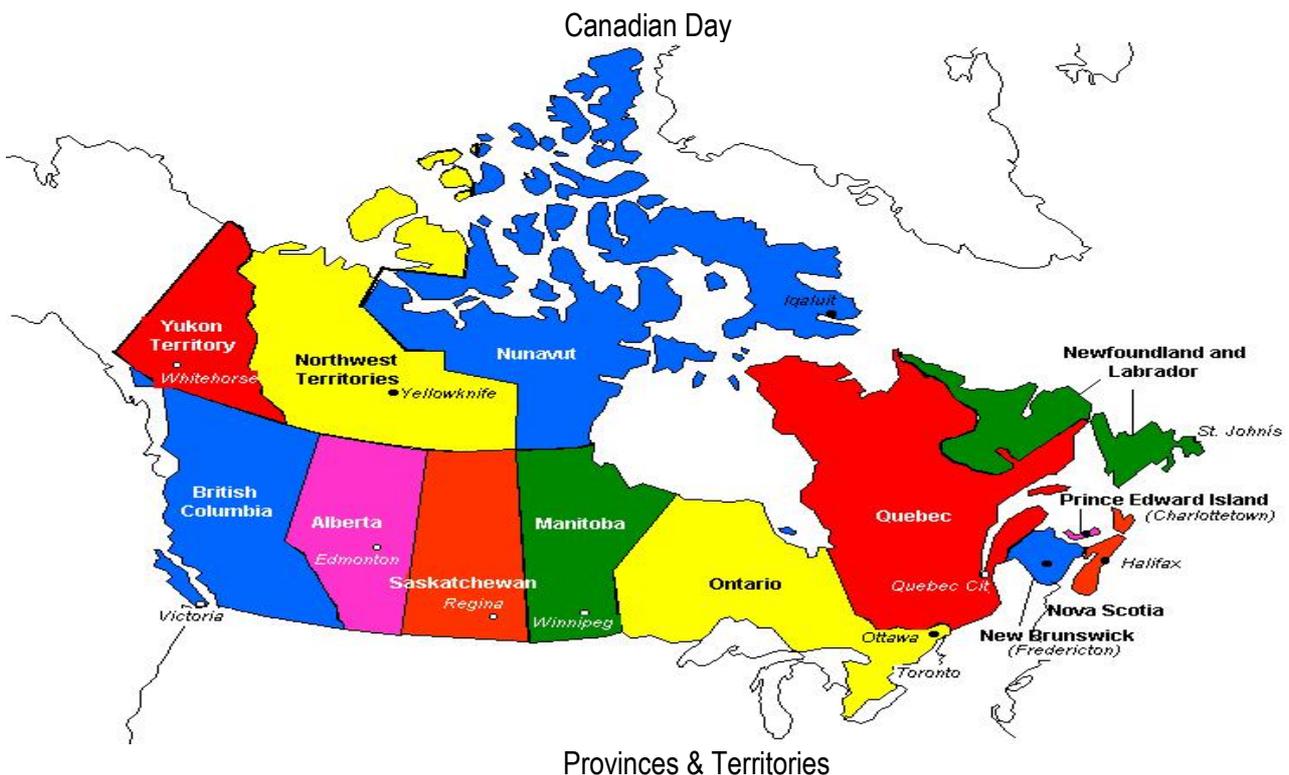
GEOGRAPHICAL POSITION

Canada can be divided into 5 parts with different physical and geographical characteristics: the Appalachian Region (in the south-east), the Canadian Shield, the Prairies, the Great Lakes – St. Lawrence Lowlands (in the middle) and the Cordillera (in the west).

We teach that there are 11 geographic regions: Pacific Coast, Cordillera, Prairie Provinces, Interior Plains, Canadian Shield, Far North, Southeast, Manufacturing Core, Appalachians, Atlantic – these regions are not divided by political boundaries but separate all of North America into these regions with common physical characteristics.

The lands of Canada have complicated geological structure with layers of different age. Near the oldest Canadian Shield there are newly formed Cordillera.

Almost half of the country's territory is occupied by the St. Lawrence Plateau, which is a part of the Canadian Shield. It still has remained traces of the recent glacial period: smooth rocks, chains of lakes, etc. The Plateau is a sloping and undulating plain. It is the most unsuitable for living part of Canada, but it the richest one with mineral resources.

From the north and south the St. Lawrence Plateau is surrounded by vast lowlands – the Great Lakes and St. Lawrence Lowlands and the Hudson Bay Lowland. They represent the most typical Canadian landscape and made Canada famous as a vast country with good climate and geographical conditions. Steppes occupy the largest part of Alberta, Saskatchewan and Manitoba.

These are often called Prairie Provinces. The St. Lawrence Lowlands have climate favourable for agriculture as well as suitable soil. It is the economical centre of Canada.

THE CANADIAN SHIELD

This ruling geological and physical feature of the North American Continent has been named the "Canadian Shield". Round it the Palaeozoic sands and clays, largely derived from its own waste, were deposited as nearly horizontal beds, in many places still almost undisturbed. Later the sediments lying to the southeast of this "parataxis", or nucleus of the continent, were pushed against its edge and raised into the Appalachian chain of mountains.

Also known as the Precambrian Shield, this area is located in the central part of the continent. Viewed from the air it is a vast, inhospitable land of rocks, lakes and trees.

It makes up roughly half of Canada's surface area, sweeping around Hudson Bay like a giant horseshoe, but also is the foundation for the rest of the continent.

The Canadian Shield has not always looked as it does today. Early in the Earth's history this area was the site of towering mountains, deep valleys and mighty rivers.

The mountains were thrust up by volcanic activity as long as 3.8 billion years ago, during the Precambrian era. Over time, the forces of erosion – wind, water, freezing temperatures, ice – wore down the rocks that formed the mountain peaks and carried the materials away. Now all that remains are the roots of once mighty mountains. The processes of volcanism present at the time of mountain-building caused minerals to form in the cooling rock of the Precambrian mountains. Deep inside the mountains, minerals such as gold, silver, copper and nickel came together into veins of ore. These ore bodies make the Shield a rich storehouse of mineral wealth.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Answer the questions.

1. Where is Canada located? 2. What is called "Canadian Shield"? 3. What kind of geographical position is comprised by Canada? 4. How many geographic regions are there in Canada? 5. What Oceans is Canada washed? 6. What international organizations is Canada a member? 7. What are the etymological origins of the name "Canada"? 8. What is the Canadian Shield like? 9. What do processes of volcanism cause? 10. What makes the Shield a rich storehouse of mineral wealth? 11. What happens in mountains? 12. How long were the mountains thrust up?

THE APPALACHIAN REGION

The Appalachian Mountains are situated in the South – East of the country. They are rich with mineral resources. The average height of this mountain range is about 600 metres.

To the north-west of the Appalachians there is the Canadian Shield consisting mainly of granite and gneiss. There are also many swamps, lakes and Mountain Rivers there.

From west and south the Canadian Shield is surrounded by the chain of lakes – from Great Bear Lake to Great Lakes. Great Bear Lake is the largest lake situated entirely in Canada.

To the west of the Canadian Shield there is Great Plains. Their southern part – the Lowlands – is the agricultural centre of the country; they make 75% of all the cultivated territories.

The Cordillera Mountains run along the Pacific Coast of Canada – 2,500 km from north to south and 750 km from west to east. They are called the Rocky Mountains at the East and the Coastal Mountains at the West. Their average height is 2-3 thousand meters above the sea level.

To the east of the Shield this region was also once the site of massive mountain peaks. The rock that forms these peaks is not as old as the rock of the Shield, and is of a type that is more easily eroded. The Appalachian Region runs in a northeasterly direction from the southern USA to Newfoundland. The mineral deposits found in the region reflect the complexity of the geology, and include gypsum, barite, salt, and copper, zinc, lead, gold and silver.

Since the end of the mountain – building period, erosion has worn off the tops of the mountains and filled the valleys with sediments, which gives the area its present – day less rugged appearance.

THE INTERIOR PLAINS

West of the Shield, rock, which formed at the bottom of ancient lakes and seas, gives the Prairies their distinctive flatness. The Interior Plains occupy the central portion of the continent.

Minerals found in the Interior Plains include potash, a substance produced when lakes and shallow seas evaporate, leaving deposits. Potash deposits in Saskatchewan are among the largest in the world. Coal, oil and natural gas were formed from organic materials trapped by the sedimentary layers during Palaeozoic times.

An extension of the Interior Plains trusts up between the Canadian Shield and the Appalachian Region, forming the Great lakes – St. Lawrence Lowlands landform area. Soils throughout the Interior Plains are fertile since the sedimentary materials that are found in the Plains break down easily.

Other lowland areas were formed during the Palaeozoic era as a result of the deposit of sediment, which created the Interior Plains. The Hudson Bay Lowlands on the southwestern edge of Hudson Bay are relatively thin layers of sedimentary rock on top of the Precambrian Shield.

The Arctic Lowlands, between the Shield and the Innuition Mountains of the high Arctic, are similar in age and characteristics to the material of the Interior Plains. The Dominion of Canada comprises northern half of the continent of North America and its adjacent islands, excepting Alaska, which belongs to the USA, and Newfoundland, which is a separate dominion of the British Empire.

The northern-eastern coast of Labrador belongs to Newfoundland. Its boundary on the south is the parallel of latitude 49", between the Pacific Ocean and Lake-of-the-Hoods, then a chain of small lakes and rivers eastward to the mouth of Pigeon River on the northwest side of Lake Superior, and the Great Lakes with their connecting rivers to Cornwall, on the St. Lawrence.

From this eastward to the state of Maine the boundary is an artificial line nearly corresponding to latitude 45"; then an irregular line partly determined by watersheds and rivers divides Canada from Maine, coming out on the Bay of Fundy.

The western boundary is the Pacific on the south, an irregular line a few miles inland from the coast along the "pan handle" of Alaska to Mount St. Elias, and the meridian of 141' to the Arctic Ocean. In spite of this restriction of its natural coastline on both the Atlantic and the Pacific, Canada is admirably provided with harbours on both oceans. The Suit of St.Lawrence with its much indented shores and the coast of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick supply endless harbours the northern ones closed by ice in the winter, but the southern ones open all the year round; and on the Pacific British Columbia is deeply fringed with islands and fjords with well-sheltered harbours everywhere, in strong contrast with the unbroken shore of the USA to the south.

The long stretches of sheltered navigation from the Straits of Belle Isle north of Newfoundland to Quebec, and for 600 m on the British Columbian coast are of great advantage for the coasting trade. To the North Hudson Bay, an inland sea 850 m long from north to south and 600 m wide, with its outlet Hudson Strait , has long been navigated by trading ships and whalers, and may become an outlet for the wheat of western Canada, though closed by ice except for four months in the summer.

Of the nine provinces of Canada only two have no coast line on salt water, filbert and Saskatchewan* Ontario and Manitoba have a seaboard only on Hudson Bay, where Churchill Harbour on the west side may become an important grain port. What Ontario lacks in saltwater navigation is, however, made up by the busy traffic of the Great Lakes. More than half Canada's surface slopes gently inwards towards the shallow Hudson Bay, with higher margins to the southeast and southwest.

In the main it is a broad trough, wider towards the north than towards the south and unsymmetrical, Hudson Bay occupying much of its northeastern part, while to the west broad plains rise gradually to the foothills of the Rocky Mountains.

The mountain structures originated in three great organic periods, the earliest in the Achaean, the second at the end of the Palaeozoic and the third at the end of the Mesozoic. The Achaean mountain chains, which enclosed the present region of Hudson Bay, are so ancient that they had already been worn down almost to a plain before the early Palaeozoic sediments were laid down.

The Mesozoic sediments were almost entirely laid down to the west and southwest of the pro-taxis. Upon the flat-lying Palaeozoic rocks and in the prairie region they are still almost horizontal; but in the Cordillera they have been thrust up into the series of mountain chains characterizing the Pacific coast region. The youngest of these mountain chains is naturally the highest and the oldest one in most places no longer rises to heights deserving the name of mountains.

Owing to the asymmetric development of North Filnierica the main structural watershed is towards its western side on the South coinciding with the Rocky Mountains proper, but to the no-rthward falling back to ranges situated farther west in the same mountain region.

The central area of Canada is drained towards Hudson Bay, but the two largest Canadian rivers have separate watersheds, the Mackenzie flowing north-west to the Arctic Ocean and the St. Lawrence north-east towards the Atlantic, the one to the south-west and the other to the south-east of the Achaean parataxis. While these ancient events shaped the topography in a broad way its finally development took place during the glacial period, when the loose materials were scoured from some regions and spread out as boulder clay, or piled up as moraines in other: and the original water-ways were blocked in many places. The ret-rat of the ice left Canada much in its present condition and the region has a very youthful topography with innumerable lakes and waterfalls as evidence that the rivers have not long been at work.

THE WESTERN CORDILLERA

As the Precambrian mountains eroded, the sedimentary layers were deposited over a great distance and formed the Appalachian Region to the east. These deposits also provided the material from which future landforms would be built to the west. These landforms are now known as the Western Cordillera. When the continent started its westward movement about 200 million years ago, its leading edge was forced against the adjacent oceanic plate and the land moved overtop the ocean.

Geologists speculate that the tremendous pressure exerted during this process caused the sedimentary layers of the plate's edge to buckle into a massive dome. Magma, the hot fluid substance below the Earth's crust, flowed into the dome and formed a core which eventually collapsed between 65 and 160 million years ago, breaking the rock layers. This core stretches along the edge of the continental plate and absorbs the pressure of the two plates as they press upon each other.

The Western Cordillera is an area of great complexity; rocks composed of different materials and through different processes are thoroughly mixed. The Coast Ranges, which form the leading western edge of the Continent, are composed of both igneous and metamorphic rock. The interior of the Cordillera is a jumble of plateaus, folded and broken rock layers and recent volcanoes.

The sedimentary materials of the Rockies on the eastern edge of the Cordillera were folded and broken during a period of mountain – building in Eocene times, some 40-65 million years ago.

The Cordillera contains minerals associated with all the processes involved in its creation.

The igneous rocks of the western part of the Cordillera are a major source of minerals including lead, zinc, silver, copper and gold. The sedimentary deposits of the eastern Cordillera are responsible for the coal and petroleum found there.

INNUITION REGION

Mountain – building shaped the landforms of the high Arctic during the Devonian period (about 405 million years ago.) The most recent activities appear to have occurred about 30 million years ago, which was long after the mountain – building period that thrust up the Rocky Mountains in the Cordillera. Little detail is known about this region because research is so difficult in the inhospitable climate, but some geologists have suggested mountain – building is the result of the North American plate advancing on the Eurasian plate. The topography of this region is characterized by low plateaus mountains, with ridges as high as 3,000 m. The area is composed mainly of sedimentary rocks but includes some metamorphic and volcanic rocks.

OCEAN CURRENTS

Oceans or large bodies of water like the Great Lakes affect the climate of the land nearby because they act as heat reservoirs and heat exchangers. Water heats up more slowly than land, and it holds that heat for a longer time. Because of this, the climate in the areas closest to water is more moderate than the climate inland: even though the air over the coastal land is warmer in summer and colder in winter than the air over water at the same latitude, it won't be as hot or as cold as the air over land that is far away from the coast.

These water bodies also affect rainfall, wind and clouds: when the water is warmer than the air above it, it generates clouds, rain and wind; when the water is colder than the air above, the opposite happens – there is likely to be fog, less rain, and wind are reduced.

As the ocean currents move heat and cold around the world, Canada is affected by the warm Gulf Stream on the Atlantic coast and the weaker but still warm Alaska Current on the Pacific side; both of these flow northward. Cold currents like the West Greenland Current and the Labrador Current flow south from the Arctic on the east side; the banks of fog off the southeast coast of Newfoundland mark the sport where the Labrador Current meets the Gulf Stream.

In general though, because our weather flows from west to east, it is the currents on the Pacific side that have the most effect on Canada's climate. Inland, the Great Lakes and Hudson Bay are two vast areas of water that affect the climate around them: the Great Lakes act as a huge heat reservoir that moderates the weather in southern Ontario and Quebec, while Hudson Bay is frozen over for six months, and even during the summer months melting ice keeps the surface water temperature close to freeing. Hudson Bay's most common effect is fog in summer and precipitation, cloud and strong winds during the rest of the year.

LAKES & RIVERS

There are some two million lakes in Canada, covering about 7, 6% of the Canadian landmass.

The main lakes, in order of the surface area located in Canada (many large lakes are traversed by the Canada – U.S.A. border), are Huron, Great Bear, Superior, Great Slave, Winnipeg, Erie and Ontario. The largest lake situated entirely in Canada is Great Bear Lake (31 326 km²) in the Northwest Territories. The St. Lawrence (3058 km long) is Canada's most important river, providing a seaway for ships from the Great Lakes to the Atlantic Ocean. The longest Canadian River is the Mackenzie, which flows 4241 km through the Northwest Territories.

Other large watercourses include the Yukon and the Columbia (parts of which flow through U.S. territory), the Nelson, the Churchill, and the Fraser – along with major tributaries such as the Saskatchewan, the Peace, the Ottawa, the Athabasca, and the Laird.

Almost 2/3 of Canadian rivers belong to the Arctic Ocean basin. Everywhere except the southern part of the country rivers are covered with ice for a period from 5 to 9 months a year.

The Niagara and the St. Lawrence rivers play a very important role in economy of Canada as they connect it to the U.S.A. and are a source of electrical power produced by numerous hydroelectric power stations on its banks. The Columbia is also used for producing electricity but it is not suitable for navigation. There are about 4 million lakes, big and small in Canada.

The biggest ones are Great Lakes, Great Bear Lake and some others. All the lakes are beautiful indeed due to clean transparent blue water and picturesque rocky banks. Lakes are the most popular place for spending weekends and vacations with Canadians. As a result of the geological causes just mentioned many parts of Canada are lavishly strewn with lakes of all sizes, from bodies of water hundreds of miles long and a thousand feet deep to pounds lost to sight in the forest.

The largest and most thickly strewn lakes occur within five hundred or a thousand miles of Hudson Bay and belong to the Achaean parataxis or project beyond its edges into the Palaeozoic sedimentary rocks, which lean against it.

The most famous are those or the St. Lawrence system, which from part of the southern boundary of Canada and are shared with the USA.

But many others have the right to be called "Great Lakes" from their magnitude. There are nine others, which have a length of more than 100 m, and 35, which are more than 50, a long.

Within the Firchaen protaxis they are of the most varied shapes, since they represent merely portions of the irregular surface inundated by some florainic dam at the lowest point. They often contain islands* sometimes even thousands in number, as in Georgian Bay and Lake-of-the-Hood.

In the Cordillerian region on the other hand the lakes and long narrow and deep, in reality sections of mountain valleys occupied by fresh water. Just as the fjords of the adjoining coast are valleys occupied by the sea. The smaller lakes are often rimmed with marshes and are slowly filling up with vegetable matter, ultimately becoming peat bogs, the muskegs of the Indian.

Most of Canada is so well watered that the lakes have outlets and are kept fresh, but there are a few small lakes in southern Saskatchewan – the Quill and Old Hives lakes, in regions arid enough to require no outlet. In such cases the waters are alkaline, and contain various Salts in solution which are deposited as a white rime round the basin towards the end of the summer when the amount of water has been greatly reduced by evaporation. It is interesting to find maritime plants such as the samphire, growing on their shores a thousand miles from the sea and more than a thousand feet above it.

In many cases the lakes of Canada simply spill over at the lowest point from one basin into the next below» so that canoe navigation may be carried on for hundreds of allies, with here and there a waterfall or rapid requiring a portage.

The river systems are in many cases complex and tortuous, and very often the successive connecting links between the lakes receive different names, well illustrated by the St. Lawrence, which say be said to begin as Nipigon river and to take the names St. Mary's, St. Clair, Detroit and Niagara, before finally flowing from Lake Ontario to the sea under its proper name. As these lakes are great reservoirs and settling basins, the rivers which empty them are unusually steady in level and contain clear water* The St»Lawrence varies only a few feet in the year and always has pellucid bluish-green water, while the Mississippi, whose tributaries begin only a short distance south of the Great Lakes, varies 40 ft, or, more between high-and low-water and is loaded with mud.

The St. Lawrence has provided the main artery of exploration and with its canals past rapids and between lakes selves as a great highway of trade between the interior of the continent and the seaports of Montreal and Quebec. It is probable that politically Canada would have followed the course of the States to the south but for the planting of a French colony with widely extended trading posts along the easily ascended channel of the St. Lawrence and the Great Lakes, so that this river was the unlimited bond of union between Canada and the empire.

CANADA'S CHANGING BOUNDARIES

In 1867, when the British North America Act was proclaimed and the Dominion of Canada was created, the four "provinces" of Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia and New Brunswick were the only members – and the boundaries of at least two were very different from what exists now.

While New Brunswick and Nova Scotia were recognizable, the territory divided between Quebec and Ontario included only the land near the Gulf of St. Lawrence (on both sides), the St. Lawrence River and the land north of the Great Lakes. The British government, through the Hudson's Bay Company, controlled most of the rest of the territory we know as Canada today.

In 1870, the British government gave control of what was known as the North-Western Territory (including the fertile prairies) to Canada, and at the same time the Hudson's Bay Company sold Rupert's Land to the Canadian government. Rupert's Land included all land drained by rivers flowing into Hudson Bay – about 40 % of the country, nearly 2.8 mln. ha.

It also included the land around the company's trading posts (another 18,000 ha.)

The purchase price was £300,000. The two pieces of land were combined into a huge area called the Northwest Territories. The province of Manitoba was carved out of a tiny part around the Red River. It was originally only 36,000 sq. km – it's now nearly 650,000 ²²km².

In 1871, after the promise of a railway to link it with the rest of the country, the British colony of British Columbia joined. Prince Edward Island became the 7th province in 1873, but only after promises to establish year-round "efficient steam service for the conveyance of mail and passengers" between the island and the mainland.

The ability to deliver on this promise was often jeopardised by severe winter weather; the Confederation Bridge, opened in 1997, is yet another attempt to make the promise good.

In 1874 Ontario's boundaries were pushed further north, but not west; the District of Keewatin was created in the Northwest Territories in **1876,** including part of present-day Ontario, Manitoba and extending north to the Gulf of Boothia. Ownership of the islands of the Arctic Archipelago was transferred from Britain to Canada in **1880,** and in **1881** Manitoba's boundaries were extended, giving that province some land claimed by Ontario.

The Northwest Territories were subdivided, with the Districts of Saskatchewan, Assiniboia, Alberta and Athabaska making an appearance on the maps in **1882. In 1895,** further subdivision created the Districts of Ungava (northern Quebec), Franklin (the Arctic Islands), and Mackenzie (western Northwest Territories) and Yukon. The Yukon District became a separate territory in **1898.**

Also in **1898,** Quebec's boundaries were extended further north, but the province still shared the area with the District of Ungava, and the District of Keewatin continued to grow, taking in much of present-day Manitoba and Ontario.

By 1905, as the prairies began to fill with settlers, the provinces of Saskatchewan and Alberta were created out of the Districts of Athabaska, Alberta, Saskatchewan and Assiniboia. The District of Keewatin was transferred to the shrinking (but still vast) Northwest Territories.

In 1912, the boundaries of Quebec, Ontario and Manitoba were extended north to Hudson Bay and Hudson Strait, assuming the boundaries that we recognize today.

In **1920,** the Districts of Mackenzie, Franklin and Keewatin became identified as the Northwest Territories. The Judicial Committee of the British Privy Council was called on to mediate a boundary between Quebec and Labrador in 1927 and the boundary for present-day Labrador was established.

This territory belonged to Newfoundland, which was still a British colony. It did not join the union until **1949,** after extensive debate and two closely fought referenda.

In 1999, the boundaries of the Northwest Territories will change once again, when the new territory of Nunavut is established and begins to take over administrative and legislative duties.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords and phrases that best convey the gist of the information.

CLIMATE

There are many climatic variations in Canada, ranging from Arctic in the north to moderate in the south. The majority of Canadian territories have continental climate, the Eastern and Western Coasts – sea climate and the southern part of the country is characterized by moderate, almost subtropical climate. The average temperature in January in the north is -35° C, in the south -20° C, on the eastern coast -5° C, on the western coast -4° C. The average temperature of July ranges from 5° C in the north to 22° C along the border on the USA in the south.

Precipitation prevails in the coastal regions (up to 2,500 mm a year); the central part of Canada is rather dry (200-300 mm a year). In winter almost all the territory of the country is covered with snow and rivers and lakes are covered with ice. Cold air masses from the Arctic coast easily reach the southern parts of Canada, cooling the air of the temperate zone. The mountain chains of Canada are located along the meridians and do not protect its southern part from the influence of the Arctic winds.

Only southwestern and southeastern parts of the country can be characterized as having mild and moderate climate. Within Canada, climate is primarily affected by surrounding landforms, proximity to large bodies of water and the degree of latitude.

Latitude is the distance north or south of the equator and is expressed in degrees. Its effects on climate are twofold. Firstly, the farther north the location, the more the curvature of the earth results in the sunlight spreading over a greater surface area. This decreases the solar radiation per unit area of ground so that less warmth from the sun is felt. Secondly, solar radiation has to travel a greater distance through the atmosphere at higher latitudes, which again reduces the amount of energy reaching the earth. In a country like Canada ranging from latitude 42° to the arctic regions and touching three oceans, there must be great navigation of climate* If placed upon Europe it would extend from Rome to the North Cape, bat latitude is of course only one of the factors influencing climate.

The arrangement of the ocean currents and of the areas of high and low pressure taking a very wide difference between the climates of the two Sides of the Atlantic. The Pacific coast of Canada, rather than the Atlantic coast, should be compared with Western Europe, the southwest corner of British Columbia, in latitude 48° to 0° having a climate very similar to the southern coast of England.

In Canada the isotherms by no means follow parallels of latitude, especially in summer when in the western half of the country they run nearly north-west and south-east, so that the average temperature of 55° is found about on the Arctic circle in the Mackenzie river valley, in latitude 50° near the Lake-of-the-Hoods, in latitude 55° at the northern end of James Bay, and in latitude 49° in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

It is impossible to describe even the climate of a single province, like Ontario or British Columbia, as a unit, as it varies so greatly in different parts.

Details should therefore be sought in articles on the separate provinces. South of the Gulf of St. Lawrence the Maritime Provinces average 40° for the year and over 60° for the summer months.

The amount of rain is naturally high so near the sea 40° to 60° in, but the snowfall is not usually excessive. In Quebec and northern Ontario the rainfall is diminished ranging from 20° to 40° in., while the snow of winter are deep and generally cover the ground from the beginning of December to the end of March. The winters are brilliant but cold, and the summers average from 60° to 65°, with clear skies and a bracing atmosphere which makes there regions favourite summer resorts for the people of the cities to the south. The winter storms often sweep a little to the north of southern Ontario, so that what falls as snow in the north is rain in the south, giving a much more variable winter, often with little snow. The summers are warm, with an average temperature of 65° and an occasional rise to 90°. If one goes westward the precipitation diminishes most of it, however, coming opportunely from May to August, the months when the growing grain most requires moisture. There is a much lighter snowfall than in northern Ontario and Quebec, with somewhat lower winter temperatures.

The precipitation in southern Saskatchewan and Alberta is much more variable than farther east and north, so that in some seasons crops have been a failure through drought.

But large areas are now being brought under irrigation to avoid such losses.

The Prairie Provinces have a distinctly continental climate with comparatively short, warm summers and long, cold winters but with much sunshine in both seasons.

In southern Alberta the winter cold is often interrupted by Chinooks, westerly winds which have lost their moisture by crossing the mountains and become warmed by plunging down to the plains, where they blow strongly, licking up the snow and raising the temperature, in a few hours from 20º to 40º.

Landforms. Air masses are forced to rise over mountains, which lie in their path. As this happens, the air cools and its ability to retain moisture is reduced. Condensation then occurs and precipitation falls in the form of snow or rain. For instance, Prince Rupert on the western side (windward) of the Coastal Mountains receives over 2,500 mm of precipitation annually.

On the leeward side of the mountains (the side away from the wind0, the air mass descends, warms and is able to once again retain moisture. Moreover, there may be little moisture left in the air mass. Thus precipitation is light and a rain – shadow effect is created. In a rain – shadow area, such as near Kamloops, BC, desert – like conditions exist.

Water. Parts of Canada near large bodies of water have more moderate climates due to the differing abilities of land and water to gain or lose heat. Whereas water can act like a heat bank, releasing accumulated heat through the fall and early winter and warming the land nearby, the reverse is also true. In the spring and early summer, the water is cooler than the land and can keep the land temperature lower. Wind direction also determinates the degree to which this influence is felt.

On the Pacific coast the prevailing western ice blow off the water onto the land and the influence of the Pacific Ocean is keenly felt. On the Atlantic coast the western ice blows off the land onto the water so the effect of the Atlantic Ocean is not as pronounced.

Victoria's lowest monthly average temperature is 4.6 °C in January with an annual range of only 11°C between the warmest and coldest months while Halofax's lowest monthly average is – 4.8º C in February with an annual range of 22.7º C. In this region cattle and horses can generally winter on the grass of the ranges without being fed. With sunshine for 20 hours out of 24 in June, growth is almost the same in the north as for hundreds of miles to the south, so that wheat and vegetables ripen in the Peace river valley in latitude 56º have lost their moisture by crossing the mountains and become warmed by plunging down to the plains, where they blow strongly, licking up the snow and raising the temperature, in a few hours from 20º to 40º.

The climate of the Cordillerian region presents even sore variety than that of the other provinces because of the ranges of mountains, which run parallel to the Pacific. Along the coast itself the climate is insular, with little frost in winter and mild heat in summer, and with a very heavy rainfall amounting to 100 in on the south-west Side of Vancouver Island and near Prince Rupert.

Beyond the Coast Range the precipitation and general climate are comparatively mild and with moderate snow-fall towards the south, but with keen winters farther north. The interior plateau may be described as arid, so that irrigation is required if crops are to be raised.

The Selkirk Mountains have a heavy rainfall and a tremendous snowfall on their western flanks, but very much less precipitation on their eastern side. The Rocky Mountains have the same relationships but the whole precipitation much less than in the Selkirks.

The temperature depends largely, of course, on altitude, so that one may quickly pass from perpetual snow above 6000 ft in the mountains to the mild, moist climate of Vancouver or Victoria.

North-west and north-east of Hudson Bay the climate becomes too severe for the growth of trees, and there may be perpetual ice beneath the coating of moss, which serve as a non-conducting covering for the "tundras". Leaving out the Maritime Provinces Southern Ontario, southern Filbert and the Pacific Coast region on the one hand and the Arctic north on the other Canada has snowy and severe winters a very short spring with a sudden rise of temperature, short warm summers and a delightful autumn with its "Indian summer". There is much sunshine and atmosphere is bracing.

Average winter and summer high temperatures across Canada vary from region to region.

Winters can be harsh in many parts of the country, particularly in the interior and Prairie provinces, which experience a continental climate, where daily average temperatures are near −15 °C (5 °F), but can drop below −40 °C (−40 °F) with severe wind chills. In noncoastal regions, snow can cover the ground for almost six months of the year, while in parts of the north snow can persist year-round. Coastal British Columbia has a temperate climate, with a mild and rainy winter.

On the east and west coasts, average high temperatures are generally in the low 20s °C (70s °F), while between the coasts, the average summer high temperature ranges from 25 to 30 °C (77 to 86 °F), with temperatures in some interior locations occasionally exceeding 40 °C (104 °F).

Exercise 1. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.

Exercise 2. Answer the questions.

1. Are there many climatic variations in Canada? 2. What is the average temperature in January and July? 3. What part of the country is dry? 4. Where are the mountain chains of Canada located? 5. How can southwestern and southeastern parts of the country be characterized? 6. What is latitude loke? 7. What climate is there on the Pacific coast of Canada? 8. What climate is there on the Atlantic coast of Canada? 9. What is the rainfall in Quebec and northern Ontario? 10. Why do parts of Canada near large bodies of water have more moderate climates? 11. Does the climate of the Cordillerian region present variety? 12. The Prairie Provinces have a distinctly continental climate, don't they? 13. What happens when air masses are forced to rise over mountains? 14. Where does the climate become too severe? 15. Does average winter and summer high temperatures across Canada vary from region to region? 16. What climate does Coastal British Columbia have?

Exercise 3. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Notions	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.	Latitude			
2.	Landforms			
3.	Water			
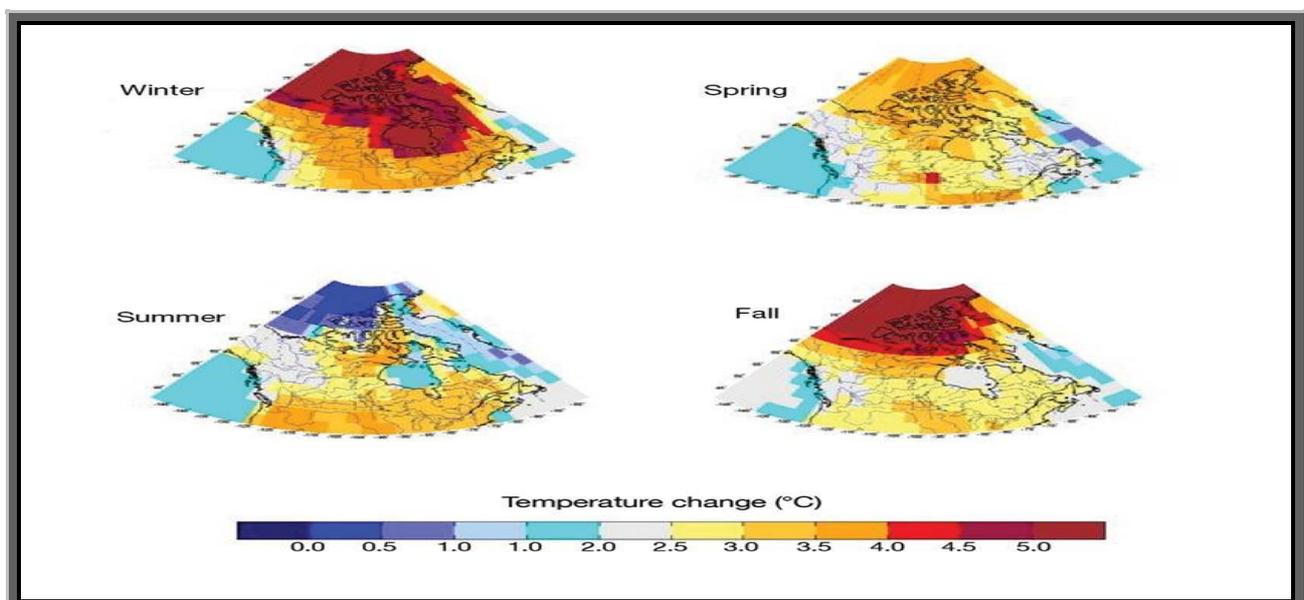
WHAT ARE WATERSPOUTS?

A waterspout is a rapidly whirling, funnel-shaped column of vapour and water that appears between a cloud and the earth's surface. It looks like a tornado over water, but it's really just a first cousin. Spouts formed over water are much smaller, less destructive, live shorter, lives and move more slowly than land – based tornadoes.

Waterspouts come in a variety of sizes and strengths and arise from different mechanisms.

They can start over land as true tornadoes and drift out to sea or over a lake or large river.

Much more common are the fair – weather spouts in which small whirlwinds start from the water surface. They climb skyward – maybe 3 to 10 metres above the water surface – but rarely extend to the cloud level. They are similar to the little dust whirls that form over dry roads and fields.

Larger waterspouts may also grow down from above in a manner similar to a tornado, with the circulation beginning in the cloud and working its way down to the water.

Waterspouts have been known to pick up small fish and frogs and other water creatures and carry them inland, where they are suddenly dropped on started residents.

Residents of Montreal once reported a shower of live lizards, while green toads have fallen from the sky in Belleville, brown ants came down in Winnipeg and a community in experiences a "rainfall" of tiny beetles. When tornadoes are over water, they are called a waterspout. Tornadoes occur during atmospheric instability, forming as a rotating column of air that extends between clouds, usually a cumulonimbus.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Remember that.

Cumulonimbus – cloud forming a towering mass with a flat base at fairly low altitude and often a flat top, as in thunderstorms.

Waterspout ['wɔ : təspaut] – a rotating column of water and spray formed by a whirlwind occurring over the sea or other body of water – а) водяной смерч б) ливень

Exercise 3. Answer the questions.

1. What is a waterspout like? 2. Waterspouts come in a variety of sizes and strengths and arise from different mechanisms, don't they? 3. Where can they start and drift out? 4. How many meters above the water surface can they skyward? 5. How can larger waterspouts grow down? 6. What is it known about waterspouts? 7. What did Residents of Montreal once report?

TORNADOES

If there's any good news about tornadoes, it is that they usually touch down in the daylight when we can spot them and watch their progress.

In national survey of nearly 2,300 tornadoes that have occurred in Canada over the pass 75 years, only a fraction – 12% - occurred between sunset and sunrise. That's fortunate, because most of us are sleeping at this time, unaware of the impending danger and unable to take protective measures.

Why aren't many tornadoes creatures of the night? Severe thunderstorms will kick start into action only after considerable heating from the sun. It's no surprise, then, that tornadoes are most likely to develop during the late afternoon and early evening hours, peaking around the dinner hour.

This is just after the hottest temperature of the day and when solar heating and therefore thunderstorm development are at their maximum. There are, of course, some regional variations.

For example, tornadoes in the Maritimes tend to occur earlier, around 3 p.m., whereas tornadoes on the Prairies peak around suppertime.

In Canada, not only do tornadoes seldom strike at night – they're not often up before noon.

There are always the exceptions. On June 22, 1922 tornadoes struck Portage La Prairie, Manitoba at 2 am, killing 4 and injuring 12. It was said that buildings collapsed like playing cards and giant trees were flung through the air like twigs.

FLORA

Tundra and taiga comprise the major part of Canadian landmass. Only 8% of it is cultivated, 50% of the territory is covered with forests rich with valuable sorts of wood.

The most valuable sorts are that of conifers: gigantic tuya, balm fir, and larch, black and white fur-trees. In the south and southwest of the country poplar, yellow birch, oak and maple, which are the symbol of Canada, are widely represented. Hunting fur-bearing animals in taiga is a very important branch of Canadian economy. On the stock of wood resources Canada is surpassed only by Russia and Brazil, but it is on the 1st place in the world on the stock of wood per one citizen.

Coniferous forests dominated by spruce, fir and pine cover much of the Canadian landscape, sweeping across the continent in a broad band. Through the rest of the country there is a range of forest conditions. To the north, cold temperatures limit growth and the trees become small and fewer in number. At the tree line, trees grow only in sheltered river valleys.

The tree line marks the northern extent of forests and the beginning of tundra conditions (moss, lichens and dwarf vegetation with permanent frozen subsoil). The massive spruce, fir and pine of the forests along the coast of British Columbia are encouraged by a friendly climate. The moisture – laden winds from the Pacific Ocean keep the land well – supplied with rain.

Under these conditions tree growth is rapid: the soils are constantly being replenished with minerals by the rains, and plants decay is also rapid in the damp conditions, thereby releasing more minerals for tree growth. With average monthly temperatures seldom going below freezing, the growing season is long. Coniferous trees thrive under such conditions.

The Interior Plains is one region of Canada that is not covered by forests because there is not enough precipitation, or available moisture, to sustain tree growth. In Alberta Saskatchewan and Manitoba, forests gradually give way from north to south through a transitional area called the park belt, which contains both trees and grassland, before yielding, to grasslands. Within these provinces, there re areas where moisture levels are insufficient to support grasslands and even hardy grasses have difficulty growing. During the 1930s, the lack of rainfall in the Interior Plains led to 'dust bowl' conditions because vegetation could not grow enough to anchor the soil.

The forests of southeastern Canada are mixed, containing both coniferous and deciduous trees. Adequate rainfall and warm temperatures allow the less hardy species such as oak, maple, hickory and walnut to flourish in southern Ontario and Quebec and the Maritime provinces.

The general flora of the Maritime Provinces, Quebec and Eastern Ontario is much the same, except that in Nova Scotia a number of species are found   common also to Newfoundland that is not apparent in land. In New Brunswick the western flora begins to appear as well as immigrants from the south while in the next eastern province, Quebec, the flora varies considerably.

In the lower St. Lawrence country and about the many Arctic and sub-Arctic species are found.

From the city of Quebec westwards there is a constantly increasing ratio of southern forms, and when Montreal is reached the representative Ontario flora begins. In Ontario the flora of the northern part is much the same as that of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, but from Montreal along the Ottawa and St. Lawrence valleys the flora takes a more southern aspect, and trees, shrubs and herbaceous plants not found in the eastern parts of the Dominion become common.

In the forest regions north of the lakes the vegetation on the shores of Lake Erie requires a high winter temperature, while the east and north shores of Lake Superior have boreal vegetation that shows the summer temperature of this enormous understretch to be quite low.

Beyond the forest country of Ontario come the prairies of Manitoba and the North-West Territories. In the ravines the eastern flora continues for some distance, and then disappearing gives place to that of the prairie, which is found everywhere between the Red river and the Rocky Mountains except in wooded and damp localities. Northwards, the flora of the forest and that of the prairies intermingle. On the prairies and the foothills of the Rocky Mountains a great variety of grasses is found.

Besides the grasses there are many leguminous plants valuable for pasture. About the saline lakes and marshes of the prairie country are found Rupee Maritime.

The flora of the forest belt of the North-West Territories differs little from that of northern Ontario. At the beginning of the elevation of the Rocky Mountains there is a luxurious growth of herbaceous plants, including a number of rare unbelievers.

At the higher levels the vegetation becomes more Arctic. Northwards the valleys of the Peace and other rivers differ little from those of Quebec and the northern prairies. On the western slope of the mountains, that is, the Selkirk and Coast ranges as distinguished profile the eastern or Rocky mountain range, the flora differs, the climate being damp instead of dry. In some of the valleys having an outlet to the south the flora is partly peculiar to the American desert in the drier part of the Fraser valley, the absence of rain results in the sea character of flora, while in the rainy districts of the lower Fraser the vegetation is so luxuriant that it resembles that of the tropics.

So in various parts of the mountainous country of British Columbia, the flora varies according to climatic conditions. Nearer the Pacific coast the woods and open spaces are filled with flowers and shrubs. Liliaceous flowers are abundant, including various species of Erythronium. The flora of the forest belt of the North-West Territories differs little from that of northern Ontario.

At the beginning of the elevation of the Rocky Mountains there is a luxurious growth of herbaceous plants, including a number of rare umbel lifers. At the higher levels the vegetation becomes more Arctic. Northwards the valleys of the Peace and other rivers differ little from those of Quebec and the northern prairies. The Arctic tundra is so very dry and cold that the growing season is extremely limited. The vegetation of the tundra consists of mosses, lichen, dwarf bushes and heather.

These plants are able to grow because they have adapted to the difficult conditions through characteristics such as small size and slow growth. Some shrubs and lichen grow so slowly that their development must be measured in centimetres.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords and phrases that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Province	**Climate**	**Flora**	**Fauna**
1.				

FAUNA

Moss, grass and flowers grow in tundra only in summer. In the forest tundra one can see different sorts of dwarf trees. Prairies and lowlands are covered with feather grass and wormwood.

Canada has a diversity of fauna on its territory. In tundra northern deer, tundra wolf, white bear, white hare, Arctic fox and some other species are occurred. Forests are inhabited by bear, wolf, fox, lynx, squirrel, hare, marten, beaver, elk and deer. Field mice, mole and gopher live in steppes. Many species of migratory birds inhabit the lakes and the Arctic islands in summer.

In Canadian National Parks a lot of rare species are preserved. Among them are buffalos, which were almost exterminated since the first Europeans had settled on the North American Continent.

Coastal waters in the west are rich with salmon, gorbusha, chum salmon, etc., and in the east – with codfish and herring. The larger animals of Canada are the musk ox and the caribou of the barren lands, both having their habitat in the far north; the caribou of the woods, found in all the provinces except Prince Edward Island; the moose, with an equally wide range in the wooded country; the Virginia deer, in one or other of its variety forms, common to all the southern parts; the black-tailed or mule deer and allied forms, on the western edge of the plains and in British Columbia; the pronghorn antelope on the plains, and a small remnant of the once plentiful bison in northern Alberta and Mackenzie.

In the mountains of the west are the grizzly bear and the black bear. The black bear is also common to most other parts of Canada; the polar bear everywhere along the arctic littoral. The large or timber wolf is found in the wooded districts of all the provinces and on the plains there is also a smaller wolf called the coyote. In British Columbia   the Houma or cougar still frequently occurs.

The birds of Canada are mostly migratory, and are those common to the northern and central states of the USA. The wildfowl are, particularly in the west. The several kinds of geese – including the Canada goose, the arctic goose or waves, the laughing goose and others.

The golden eagle, bald eagle, osprey, and a large variety of hawks are common in Canada, as are the snowy owl, the horned owl and other owls. The raven is found only in the less populated districts, but the crow is common everywhere.
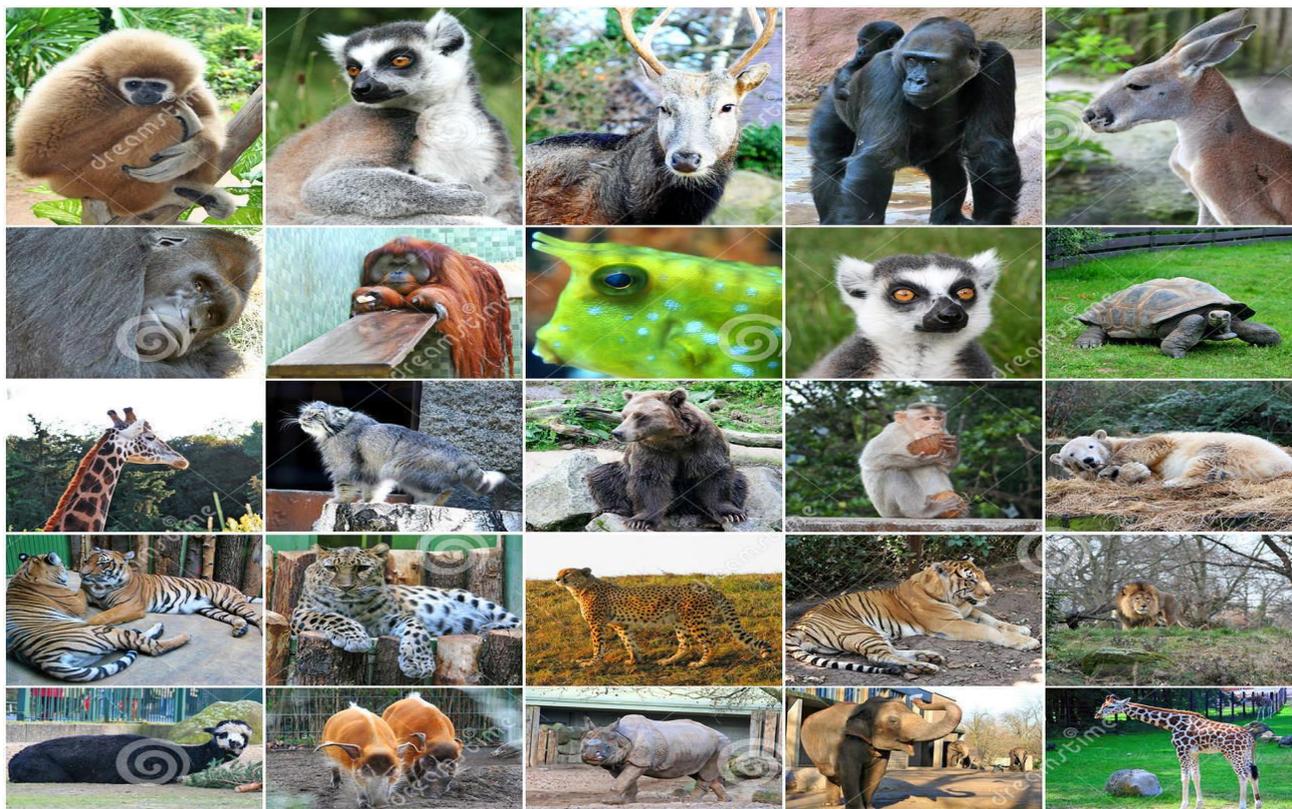
NATURAL RESOURCES

The Department of Natural Resource Funding (French: Ministère des Ressources naturelles), operating under the FIP applied title Natural Resources Canada (NRCan), is the ministry of the government of Canada responsible for natural resources, energy, minerals and metals, forests, earth sciences, mapping and remote sensing. It was created in 1995 by amalgamating the now-defunct Departments of Energy, Mines and Resources and Forestry. Natural Resources Canada (NRCan) works to ensure the responsible development of Canada's natural resources, including energy, forests, minerals and metals.

NRCan uses its expertise in earth sciences to build and maintain an up-to-date knowledge base of our landmass and resources. Natural Resources Canada also collaborates with American and Mexican government scientists, along with the Commission for Environmental Cooperation, to produce the North American Environmental Atlas, which is used to depict and track environmental issues for a continental perspective.

Under the Canadian constitution, responsibility for natural resources belongs to the provinces, not the federal government. However, the federal government has jurisdiction over off-shore resources, trade and commerce in natural resources, statistics, international relations, and boundaries.

The current Minister of Natural Resources is Jim Carr as of November 4, 2015.
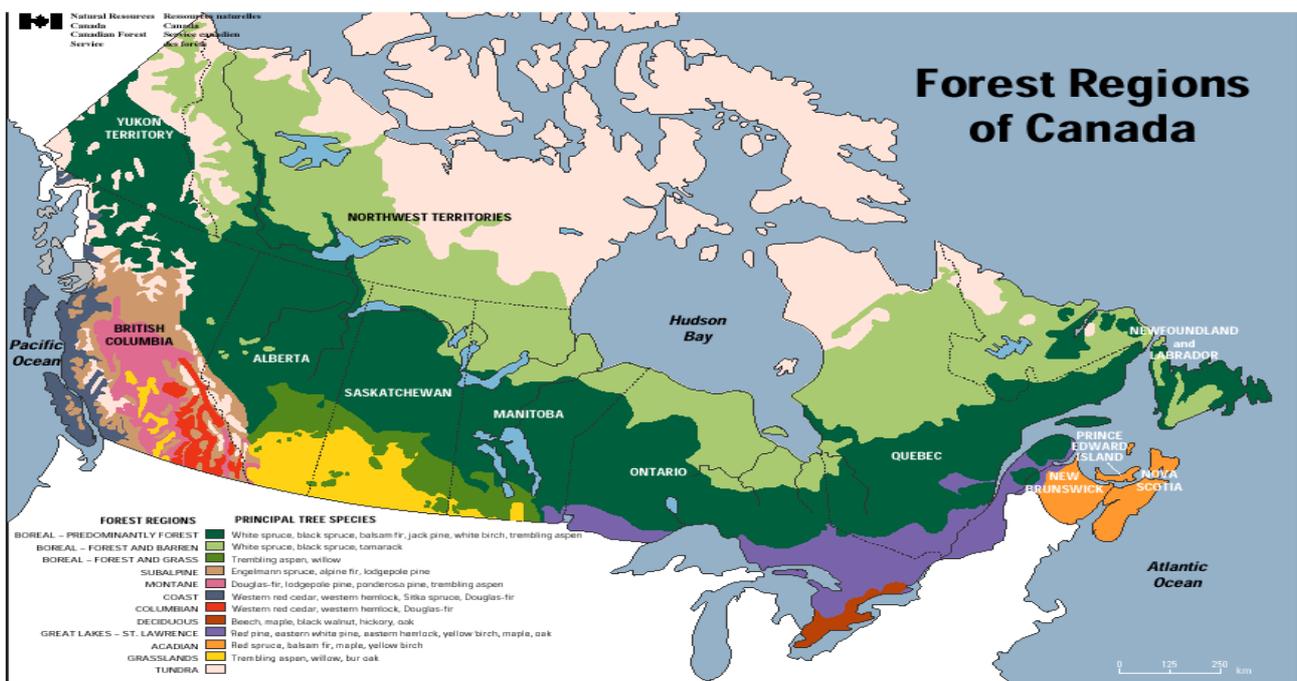
EARTH SCIENCES & CANADIAN INVENTIONS

The earth sciences include *geology* (the study of earth's origin and composition), *oceanography* (the study of ocean water, currents, life-forms and the ocean floor), *palaeontology* (the study of fossils and ancient life-forms) and *meteorology* (the study of earth's atmosphere, including weather and climate).

The Geological Survey of Canada (GSC) is Canada's first scientific agency, and one of the first of its kind in the world. The agency was created to survey and map mineral deposits in Canada's nearly 1 mln. km² of land and freshwater lakes, and more than 6 mln. km² of coastal boundaries.

The Survey began life in Montreal in 1842. Under the first director William Edmond Logan, a Canadian businessman turned geologist, its initial task was a search for coal, the main industrial fuel at the time. The search, throughout Upper and Power Canada, was unsuccessful, but Logan did find mineable deposits of copper and other metallic minerals. Soon Survey geologists were undertaking expeditions westward. In the 1880s another director, George mercer Dawson, became a noted ethnologist in Western Canada, as well as pioneer geologist. During his expeditions he took many photographs of settlements and totem poles, capturing a glimpse of a vanishing landscape.

In 1992 the Geological Survey marked its 150th anniversary. The Survey now undertakes an ever – expanding range of research – from exploring questions related to global change to those concerning natural hazards such as earthquakes, landslides, volcanoes, floods and ground instability.

Frederick Gisbourne developed a method of insulating wire to make it saltwater resistant.

Then in 1852, he successfully laid the first *undersea telegraph cable* in North America, linking New Brunswick and prince Edward Island. Gisbourne also proposed a cable linking North America and Europe. With the financial backing of American industrialist Cyrus Field, the Atlantic Cable, connecting Ireland and Newfoundland, was completed in 1866.

In 1878, Sir Sandford Fleming, Canada's foremost railway surveyor and construction engineer, realized the new national railroad made local *timekeeping obsolete*. He devised a method whereby the world is divided into 24 time zones. His system of Standard Time was adopted by the International prime meridian Conference in Washington, DC, in 1884, and is still used today.

Reginald Fessenden, from East Bolton, Quebec, discovered a way to send actual sounds via radio waves. In 1906, he transmitted the world's first *radio broadcast* from his transmitter at Brant Rock, Massachusetts. Sailors aboard ships of the United Fruit Company in the Caribbean found themselves listening to a Christmas Eve broadcast of music and voice. Fessenden produced the program himself, and even sang and played carols on his violin.

Fifteen-year-old Armand Bombardier built a *prototype snowmobile* in 1922 at his home in Valcourt, Quebec. Over the years, he refined the design and was granted a patent in 1937. At first he produced commercial vehicles, but in 1959 Bombardier perfected a sports model, the Ski-door.

In 1925, Ted Rogers, a Torontonian, introduced the world's first *batteryless radio*. Gone were the days when programs faded away as batteries "died". The modern "plug in" radio was born. Rogers also built the world's first all-electric, batteryless broadcast station, CFRB.

In 1915, Dr. Cluny Macpherson designed the first *gas mask* to protect troops from gas attacks during World War I. Wallace Turnbull, an aeronautical engineer, worked on the variable *pitch propeller* in his home workshop in Rothesay, New Brunswick. This propeller was the first that could be adjusted in the air and adapted to the differing aerodynamic conditions of take off, climbing and diving.

Pilots could adjust the propeller's blades for takeoff and again during flight. It was successfully tested by the RCAF at Camp Borden in 1927.

The world's first *bush aircraft* was designed and built in Montreal by Robert Noorduyn in 1935.

Norseman aircraft are noted for their performance in rugged terrain, and were known as "workhorses" of the North. Some are still in use.

In 1951, Dr. Harold Johns, working with others, created the "*cobalt-60 bomb*" for the treatment of cancer. Cobalt radiation therapy units have revolutionized cancer treatment worldwide.

In 1989, Bob Dickie of King City, Ontario invented a revolutionary *wall plug* – it's flat.

The first major change to wall plugs in 75 years, the FlatPlug extends only one – quarter inch from the wall. The power cord exits and travels parallel to the wall. Dickie was motivated to create a safer plug while watching his two-year-old daughter at play.

John Connor of Flora, Ontario invented the world's first *panoramic camera* in 1887.

The camera had the capability of photographing an entire circle at one exposure.

Motivated by television images of rescuers scrambling to evacuate babies from the 1985 Mexico City earthquake, Toronto researcher Wendy Murphy developed the world's first *stretcher* for taking infants from disaster areas. The Canadian inventions include the telephone, basketball, zipper and insulin. Some of the most famous are listed below.

- *Alexander Graham Bell* – hit on the idea of the telephone at his summer house in Canada.

- *Joseph-Armand Bombardier* – invented the snowmobile, a light-weight winter vehicle.

- *Sir Sandford Fleming* – invented the worldwide system of standard time zones.

- *Mathew Evans and Henry Woodward* – together invented the first electric light bulb and later sold the patent to Thomas Edison who, more famously, commercialized the light bulb.

- *Reginald Fessenden* – contributed to the invention of radio, sending the first wireless voice message in the world.

- *Dr. Wilder Penfield* – was a pioneering brain surgeon at McGill University in Montreal, and was known as "the greatest living Canadian."

- *Dr. John A. Hopps* – invented the first cardiac pacemaker, used today to save the lives of people with heart disorders.

- *SPAR Aerospace / National Research Council* – invented the Canadarm, a robotic arm used in outer space.

- *Mike Lazaridis and Jim Balsillie* – of Research in Motion (RIM) – a wireless communications company known for its most famous invention, the BlackBerry.

- *Sir Frederick Banting of Toronto* and *Charles Best* discovered Insulin, a hormone to treat diabetes that has saved 16 million lives worldwide.

In 2012, Canada spent approximately C$31.3 billion on domestic research and development, of which around $7 billion was provided by the federal and provincial governments.

As of 2015, the country has produced thirteen Nobel laureates in physics, chemistry, and medicine, and was ranked fourth worldwide for scientific research quality in a major 2012 survey of international scientists. It is furthermore home to the headquarters of a number of global technology firms. Canada has one of the highest levels of Internet access in the world, with over 33 million users, equivalent to around 94 % of its total 2014 population.

THE EARLY DAYS OF CANADIAN TELEVISION

Canadian television got off to a belated and somewhat shaky start in 1952 as stations signed on in Montreal September 6 and two days later in Toronto, where the first image was the CBC logo upside down and backwards. Both the Toronto and Montreal stations – which were joined by a third in Vancouver by the end of 1952 – began with 18 hours of weekly programming, almost all of it Canadian.

Hockey Night in Canada, with Foster Hewitt handling the play-by-play, was one of the first shows to compete in popularity with American-based programs such as the Jackie Gleason Show.

Before the start of CBC television broadcasts, there were fewer than 150000 television sets in the country – all with antennas pointed towards the USA, where the first stations had been launched five years earlier. Sales doubled each year during the mid 1950s so that, by 1956, more than half of Canadian households owned a TV. An early boost to sales was the coronation of Queen Elizabeth in 1953. The CBC rewarded its early viewers by winning the American station to broadcast the royal event.

The network recorded the seven-hour BBC broadcast on kinescope film and developed it in minutes using a special process called "hot line".

The film was flown across the Atlantic in three shipments by a combination of RAF bomber, RCAF jet and helicopter. It aired in Canada at 4:14 p. m. EDT, less than four hours after the ceremony had ended. In September 1997 another royal broadcast riveted Canadian viewers. Estimates indicated that over 3 million watched the CBC and CTV simulcast of the funeral of the Princess of Wales.

THE CANADIAN SPACE AGENCY (CSA)

The CSA was created by an act of Parliament on December 14, 1990 and its mission is to "promote the peaceful use and development of space for the social and economic benefit of Canadians".

Its more immediate job is to co-ordinate Canada's space programs and manages our space-related activities. Canadian experience in space predates the creation of the CSA: Canadians designed and built the first Canadian satellite in time for launch on September 9, 1962, Alouette I made us the third country in space (after Russia and the US), and was the first satellite to return useful information on the ionosphere, (the layer of the upper atmosphere that affects long-distance radio transmissions).

In 1972, Canada launched Anik A I and became the first country to have a commercial communications satellite network. It made nation-wide, real-time television possible. It also brought reliable telephone service to the North for the first time.

Anik E – 2 still provides services to television networks and telephone systems, and facilitates activities such as the transmission of newspaper copy to five printing plants across the country.

In 1976, Canada and the USA launched a joint venture communications satellite, Hermes, which became the prototype for direct broadcast satellites. In 1981, the Canadian-designed and built Remote manipulator System or Canadarm, was used on the Space Shuttle *Colombia*.

Operated by two hand controls from the comfort of the space shuttle's cabin, the Canadarm allows astronauts to take satellites from the cargo bay and position them in space; it is also designed to snare satellites already in orbit and place them into the cargo bay for a return to Earth.

More recent contributions to international space programs include a Wind Imaging Interferometer (WINDII), which is a component of NASA's Upper Atmosphere Research satellite program. WINDII measures wind velocity and atmospheric temperatures and helps monitor the stratospheric ozone.

The Canadian-built RADARSAT has just finished mapping the world and MORITT is our contribution to NASA's Mission to Planet Earth. Canadian scientists and engineers are also working on instruments to go on the next international space station.

Exercise 1. Render the contents of the passage in English.

Exercise 2. Make a chart with the dates of inventions.

TOP 10 CANADIAN INVENTIONS

No, we're not just known for inventing lacrosse and hockey. Canadians are credited with some very important inventions, in fact, that make every day life more manageable. From sports to gadgets to all-important supporters, here are the top 10 Canadian inventions that the world can thank us for.

Basketball

In 1891, James Naismith was a Canadian gym teacher who is credited with creating the game of basketball. Although this may be a more popular sport south of the border, we Canucks can be credited with inventing it.

Walkie-talkie

The walkie-talkie was produced by Canadian inventor Donald Hings in the 1930s. He created it for his company CM&S in British Columbia and it was originally known as a "packset".

Snow blower

Of course we're the ones behind this helpful gadget – how else would we get out of our driveways from January till March? Canadian Arthur Sicard produced the first snow blower in 1925, and today we hail him as a true Canadian idol.

Wonderbra

The world over should give Canada a big collective "thank you!" for helping support the lowest and droopiest of the bunch so that perkiness can prevail. The Wonderbra brand was made in Canada by Moses (Moe) Nadler, founder and majority owner of the Canadian Lady Corset Company.

Insulin

Probably one of the most notable and important Canadian inventions ever, insulin, which was created by Dr. Frederick Banting, an Alliston, Ontario native and Nobel laureate. He shared credit with his colleague Dr. Charles Best.

Peanut butter

Jelly was never the same after this Canadian invention. While Native Americans may have been slathering this sweet and savoury spread on toast (?) for centuries, Canadian and Montreal native Marcellus Gilmore Edson patented the concoction in 1884 and therefore gets credit for "inventing" peanut butter.

Garbage bag

Thank goodness for Winnipegger Harry Wasylyk, the man behind the modern-day garbage bag. He, along with Larry Hansen of Lindsay, Ontario, invented a disposable green polyethylene garbage bag – they were first intended for commercial use at places like hospitals and quickly became a household must.

Zipper

How else would we keep our ski jackets closed in the chilly winter months?! Canadian electrical engineer Gideon Sundback made the first modern-day zipper in 1913, improving upon models of inventors before him.

Telephone

We all know that Alexander Graham Bell wins the prize for inventing the telephone, but did you know that he did so while living in Canada? Born in Scotland, his family immigrated to Nova Scotia when he was young and hence the telephone is credited as being a Canadian-made invention.

Superman

Look! Up in the sky! It's a bird (no, not a goose), it's a plane (not Air Canada), no, it's Superman, a hero across the globe but one who was created by American writer Jerry Siegel *and* Canadian-born artist Joe Shuster in 1932. We'll definitely take some of the credit for this one!

CANADA'S ASTRONAUTS

The Canadian Astronaut program began in 1983 when Canada was invited to send an astronaut on the U.S. space shuttle. The invitation led to the creation of a permanent corps of Canadian astronauts who could co-ordinate and conduct Canadian experiments in space. In first invitation to join the astronaut program went out in 1983 and 4,300 applied in the nationwide competition.

Six were selected, and since then nearly all have ventured into space. Marc Garneau has flown two missions: in 1984 on the *Challenger*, he carried out microgravity experiments, and in 1996 on the *Endeavour*, he served as a mission specialist.

Roberta Bondar went aloft in January 1992 on *Discovery* to conduct life sciences experiments; and Steve Maclean flew on *Discovery* later in the same year to do more microgravity work, plus some experiments on materials exposure. Bob Thirsk flew a mission in June of 1996 on Columbia, a 17- day journey that included research on the mystery of space sickness, among other research tasks.

Ken Money and Bjarni Tryggvason were also selected in the first competition. Bjarni Tryggvason flew aboard Discovery in August 7, 1997 on an 11-day mission; his job was to test a Canadian-designed shock-absorber for protecting experiments in zero gravity. Ken Money resigned from the program in July 1992; Roberta Bondar resigned in September 1992.

In 1992 a second invitation for recruits went out and another 5,000 applications poured in.

Candidates were selected based on a combination of academic background, professional experience, health and communication skills. The successful ones were Major Chris Hadfield, Captain Mike Mckay, Ms.Julie Payette and Dr. Dave Williams. Hadfield visited the space station *Mir* during a November 1995 missions aboard the space shuttle Atlantis.

The Canadian Space Agency operates a highly active space program, conducting deep-space, planetary, and aviation research, and developing rockets and satellites. Canada was the third country to launch a satellite into space after the USSR and the USA, with the 1962 Alouette 1launch.

In 1984, Marc Garneau became Canada's first male astronaut. Canada is a participant in the International Space Station (ISS), and is a pioneer in space robotics, having constructed the Canadarm, Canadarm2 and Dextre robotic manipulators for the ISS and NASA's Space Shuttle.

Since the 1960s, Canada's aerospace industry has designed and built numerous marques of satellite, including Radarsat-1 and 2, ISIS and MOST. Canada has also produced one of the world's most successful and widely used sounding rockets, the Black Brant; over 1,000 Black Brants have been launched since the rocket's introduction in 1961.

UNIT II. TERRITORIES & PROVINCES & CITIES

Region	Province/Territory	Capital City
Atlantic region	- Newfoundland and Labrador - Prince Edward Island - Nova Scotia - New Brunswick	- St. John's - Charlotteton - Halifax - Fredericton
Central Canada	- Quebec - Ontario	- Québec City - Toronto
Prairie Provinces	- Manitoba - Saskatchewan - Alberta	- Winnipeg - Regina - Edmonton
West Coast	British Columbia	Victoria
North	- Nunavut - Northwest Territories - Yukon Territory	- Iqaluit - Yellowknife - Whitehorse

CANADIAN PROVINCES

Atlantic Canada's coasts and natural resources, including fishing, farming, forestry and mining, have made these provinces an important part of Canada's history and development.

The Atlantic Ocean brings cool winters and cool humid summers.

Newfoundland and *Labrador* is the most easterly point in North America and has its own time zone. In addition to its natural beauty, the province has a unique heritage linked to the sea. The oldest colony of the British Empire and a strategic prize in Canada's early history, the province has long been known for its fisheries, coastal fishing villages and distinct culture. Today off-shore oil and gas extraction contributes a substantial part of the economy. Labrador also has immense hydro-electric resources.

Prince Edward Island (P.E.I.) is the smallest province, known for its beaches, red soil and agriculture, especially potatoes. P.E.I. is the birthplace of Confederation, connected to mainland Canada by one of the longest continuous multispan bridges in the world, the Confederation Bridge.

Anne of Green Gables, set in P.E.I. by Lucy Maud Montgomery, is a much-loved story about the adventures of a little red-headed orphan girl.

Nova Scotia is the most populous Atlantic Province, with a rich history as the gateway to Canada. Known for the world's highest tides in the Bay of Fundy, the province's identity is linked to shipbuilding, fisheries and shipping. As Canada's largest east coast port, deep-water and ice-free, the capital, Halifax, has played an important role in Atlantic trade and defence and is home to Canada's largest naval base. Nova Scotia has a long history of coal mining, forestry and agriculture. Today there is also off-shore oil and gas exploration. The province's Celtic and Gaelic traditions sustain a vibrant culture.

Nova Scotia is home to over 700 annual festivals, including the spectacular military tattoo in Halifax.

New Brunswick is situated in the Appalachian Range; the province was founded by the United Empire Loyalists and has the second largest river system on North America's Atlantic coastline, the St. John River system. Forestry, agriculture, fisheries, mining, food processing and tourism are the principal industries. Saint John is the largest city, port and manufacturing centre.

Moncton is the principal Francophone Acadian centre; and Fredericton, the historic capital. New Brunswick is the only officially bilingual province and about one-third of the population lives and works in French. The province's pioneer Loyalist and French cultural heritage and history come alive in street festivals and traditional music.

CENTRAL CANADA

More than half the people in Canada live in cities and towns near the Great Lakes and the St. Lawrence River in southern Quebec and Ontario, known as Central Canada and the industrial and manufacturing heartland. Southern Ontario and Quebec have cold winters and warm humid summers. Together, Ontario and Quebec produce more than three-quarters of all Canadian manufactured goods.

Nearly eight million people live in **Quebec**, the vast majority along or near the St. Lawrence River. More than three-quarters speak French as their first language. The resources of the Canadian Shield have helped Quebec to develop important industries, including forestry, energy and mining.

Quebec is Canada's main producer of pulp and paper. The province's huge supply of fresh water has made it Canada's largest producer of hydro-electricity. Quebecers are leaders in cutting-edge industries such as pharmaceuticals and aeronautics.

Quebec films, music, literary works and food have international stature, especially in *La Francophonie*, an association of French-speaking nations. Montreal, Canada's second largest city and the second largest mainly French-speaking city in the world after Paris, is famous for its cultural diversity.

At more than 12 mln. the people of **Ontario** make up more than one-third of Canadians.

The large and culturally diverse population, natural resources and strategic location contribute to a vital economy. Toronto is the largest city in Canada and the country's main financial centre. Many people work in the service or manufacturing industries, which produce a large percentage of Canada's exports. The Niagara region is known for its vineyards, wines and fruit crops.

Ontario farmers raise dairy and beef cattle, poultry, and vegetable and grain crops. Founded by United Empire Loyalists, Ontario also has the largest Frenchspeaking population outside of Quebec, with a proud history of preserving their language and culture. There are five Great Lakes located between Ontario and the USA: Lake Ontario, Lake Erie, Lake Huron, Lake Michigan (in the U.S.A.) and Lake Superior, the largest freshwater lake in the world.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Events	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

Tremblant, Québec

THE PRAIRIE PROVINCES

Manitoba, Saskatchewan and Alberta are the Prairie Provinces, rich in energy resources and some of the most fertile farmland in the world. The region is mostly dry, with cold winters and hot summers.

Manitoba's economy is based on agriculture, mining and hydro-electric power generation.

The province's most populous city is Winnipeg, whose Exchange District includes the most famous street intersection in Canada, Portage and Main. Winnipeg's French Quarter, St. Boniface, has Western Canada's largest Francophone community at 45,000. Manitoba is also an important centre of Ukrainian culture, with 14% reporting Ukrainian origins, and the largest Aboriginal population of any province, at over 15%.

Saskatchewan, once known as the "breadbasket of the world" and the "wheat province", has 40% of the arable land in Canada and is the country's largest producer of grains and oilseeds. It also boasts the world's richest deposits of uranium and potash, used in fertilizer, and produces oil and natural gas. Regina, the capital, is home to the training academy of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police. Saskatoon, the largest city, is the headquarters of the mining industry and an important educational, research and technology centre.

Alberta is the most populous Prairie province. The province, and the world-famous Lake Louise in the Rocky Mountains, were both named after Princess Louise Caroline Alberta, fourth daughter of Queen Victoria. Alberta has five national parks, including Banff National Park, established in 1885. The rugged Badlands house some of the world's richest deposits of prehistoric fossils and dinosaur finds. Alberta is the largest producer of oil and gas, and the oil sands in the north are being developed as a major energy source. Alberta is also renowned for agriculture, especially for the vast cattle ranches that make Canada one of the world's major beef producers.

THE WEST COAST

British Columbia is known for its majestic mountains and as Canada's Pacific gateway. The Port of Vancouver, Canada's largest and busiest, handles billions of dollars in goods traded around the world. Warm airstreams from the Pacific Ocean give the B.C. coast a temperate climate.

About one-half of all the goods produced in B.C. are forestry products, including lumber, newsprint, and pulp and paper products – the most valuable forestry industry in Canada.B.C. is also known for mining, fishing, and the fruit orchards and wine industry of the Okanagan Valley. B.C. has the most extensive park system in Canada, with approximately 600 provincial parks. The province's large Asian communities have made Chinese and Punjabi the most spoken languages in the cities after English. The capital, Victoria, is a tourist centre and headquarters of the navy's Pacific fleet.

The Northwest Territories, Nunavut and Yukon contain one-third of Canada's land mass but have a population of only 100,000. There are gold, lead, copper, diamond and zinc mines. Oil and gas deposits are being developed. The North is often referred to as the "Land of the Midnight Sun" because at the height of summer, daylight can last up to 24 hours. In winter, the sun disappears and darkness sets in for three months. The Northern territories have long cold winters and short cool summers. Much of the North is made up of tundra, the vast rocky Arctic plain. Because of the cold Arctic climate, there are no trees on the tundra and the soil is permanently frozen. Some continue to earn a living by hunting, fishing and trapping. Inuit art is sold throughout Canada and around the world.

Thousands of miners came to the *Yukon* during the Gold Rush of the 1890s, as celebrated in the poetry of Robert W. Service. Mining remains a significant part of the economy. The White Pass and Yukon Railway opened from Skagway in neighbouring Alaska to the territorial capital, Whitehorse in 1900 and provides a spectacular tourist excursion across precipitous passes and bridges. Yukon holds the record for the coldest temperature ever recorded in Canada (-63°C). Mount Logan, located in the Yukon, is the highest mountain in Canada. It is named in honour of Sir William Logan, a world-famous geologist, born in Montreal in 1798 to Scottish immigrant parents. Logan founded and directed the Geological Survey of Canada from 1842 to 1869.

The Northwest Territories (N.W.T.) were originally made up in 1870 from Rupert's Land and the North-Western Territory. The capital, Yellowknife (population 20,000), is called the "diamond capital of North America". More than half the population is Aboriginal (Dene, Inuit and Métis).

The Mackenzie River, at 4,200 kilometres, is the second-longest river system in North America after the Mississippi and drains an area of 1.8 mln. km².

Nunavut, meaning "our land" in Inuktitut, was established in 1999 from the eastern part of the Northwest Territories, including all of the former District of Keewatin.

The capital is Iqaluit, formerly Frobisher Bay, named after the English explorer Martin Frobisher, who penetrated the uncharted Arctic for Queen Elizabeth I in 1576. The 19-member Legislative Assembly chooses a premier and ministers by consensus. The population is about 85% Inuit, and Inuktitut is an official language and the first language in schools.

Canada's vast north brings security and sovereignty challenges. Dealing with harsh weather conditions in an isolated region, the **Canadian Rangers**, part of the Canadian Forces Reserves (militia), play a key role. Drawing on indigenous knowledge and experience, the Rangers travel by snowmobile in the winter and all-terrain vehicles in the summer from Resolute to the Magnetic North Pole, and keep the flag flying in Canada's Arctic.

An Inuit boy in Sanikiluaq, Nunavut, uses a pellet gun to hunt for birds The caribou (reindeer) is popular game for hunters and a symbol of Canada's North.

TORONTO

"Toronto" is a Native American word for "meeting place". Positioned at the mouth of the Humber River at Lake Ontario, the original village was visited by natives and Europeans for fur trading and was an outpost between Lakes Huron and Ontario. As the capital of Upper Canada, the English-speaking territory, the city's original English name was York. British-Canadian York was destroyed by the Americans in the War of 1812. It was rebuilt and renamed Toronto in 1834. It now has a population of 3.5 million. Yonge Street is the longest street in the world, running from the harbour in Toronto to rainy River, Ontario, near James Bay – a distance of 1,900 km.

Designated in 1989 by the United nations as the world' most ethnically diverse city, Toronto welcomes more immigrants than any other city in Canada. East Asians and Caribbeans are still arriving, and yesterday's Italian, Jewish and Eastern European arrivals stay on in neighbourhoods with their signs in many languages. Toronto proudly hosts three Chanatowns, a "Portuguese Village", and a Jewish community in North York, Polish bakeries and butcher shops.

Toronto has one youth hotel, Hostelling International, although those under 17 are discouraged from staying there. It is next to Yonge Street, with its shopping, nightlife and non-stop street life.

In speech, Canadians are mainly soft-spoken. Their habit of ending sentences with '*eh*?' makes them seem to be asking, "Don't you agree?" In writing, Canadians prefer British English spellings: *theatre, centre, harbour, neighbourhood, realise.* Words for some objects are different : a *sofa* becomes a more English-sounding *chesterfield*, a *napkin* becomes a French *serviette*, a wandering dog is not *lost* but *gone missing,* and native people are not *Indians* or *Native Americans* but *First Nations.* Toronto is in the *province*, not *state*, of Ontario; "*the States*"means the USA.

There are differences between Canadian English and British or American English, but don't worry – you'll be understood! Summer or winter, rain or shine, doesn't miss Niagara Falls! Buses leave from the youth hostel, and the falls are only one-and-a-half hours away. Then put on a raincoat (provided) and ride the maid of the Mist boat at the base of the falls. You can also take a tour of the Niagara escarpment and see cliffs, waterfalls and wildlife.

 Sports fans cat catch the Toronto maple Leafs hockey team and learn about hockey from the people who invented it – the Canadians – at the Hockey hall of Fame.

Check out baseball with the Blue Jays; Canadian rules football with the Argonauts; and basketball (invented in 1891 by Canadian-born physical education instructor Dr James Naismith).

If you don't mind it being a bit cold, try the beach at Lake Ontario from June through August.

Some call them "Eskimos", but the proper name is "Inuit". Come to see the art of the North at the Art gallery of Ontario and get a free visit to The Grange, the oldest brick house in Toronto.

Just for fun, visit the Bata Shoe Museum. If you've ever wondered what Elton John's platform boots were really like, this is your chance to find out. Indigenous peoples' footwear, an astronaut's space boots... if you can imagine it and put a foot in it, it's there, in a building shaped like a boot.

And if you see just one museum, make sure it's the Ontario Science Centre. A day of "science" includes everything from understanding electricity to solving a crime, and almost everything is hand-on (apart from the electricity. Dinner can be cheap as well as fun if you know where to look.

Whenever possible, dine at the ethnic restaurants, especially the Asian and Caribbean ones. Downtown Toronto's Chinatown is the largest in Canada and so real you might think you are in China (or Korea or Vietnam). The CN Tower, on the Harbour, is the tallest freestanding structure in the world (553metres) and is used as a communications tower. You can have breakfast, lunch or dinner in the revolving restaurant on top. Toronto is the third-largest English-speaking theatre city in the world, so you really must see a show. The most popular shows are imports from New York's Broadway, but explore on your own for Toronto's own talent. As for nightlife, Toronto is hot! Now the bad news: discos are off-limits to the underage. The legal drinking age in Ontario province is 21 – and yes, that includes beer and wine. (The more French-minded province of Quebec puts it at 18.)

OTTAWA

Ottawa, a city of Carleton province of Ontario, and the capital of the dominion of Canada, on the right bank of the Ottawa River. The population of Greater Ottawa 215022, to include the city of Hull and various suburbs. The city stands for the most part on a cluster of hills, 60 to 155 feet above the river. It is on the transcontinental lines of both the Canadian National and Canadian Pacific railways, and has direct communication by both systems to Montreal, Toronto and other points in Canada as well as by the Ottawa and New York and other railways to New York and elsewhere in the USA.

Electric railways afford communication with all parts of the city and the suburbs, as well as through the neighbouring city of Hull to Aylmer. Several bridges connect Ottawa with Hull and other cross Rideau River and the Rideau Canal. The site of the city is very picturesque.

For 3 miles it follows the high southern bank of the Ottawa from the Chaudiere falls, whose mist crowned cauldron is clearly visible from the summit of Parliament Hill, to and beyond the Rideau falls, so named by early French explorers because of their curtain-like appearance.

The Rideau, a southern tributary of the Ottawa, once formed the eastern boundary of the city, which however is now absorbing a string of suburbs that lie along its eastern banks.

The Rideau Canal cuts the city in two, the western portion being known as Upper Town and the eastern as Lower Town. Roughly speaking, the Canal divides the two sections of the population, the English occupying Upper Town and the French-Lower Town.

Opposite and a little below the mouth of the Rideau river, the Catineau flows into the Ottawa from the north. The river is now the scene of very large hydro – electric developments.

Above the Chaudiere Falls the river is broken by the Deschenes rapids, and beyond these again it expands into Lake Deschenes, a favourite summer resort. To the north the Laurentian Hills, broken by the picturesque Gatineau valley, offer skiing in winter.

The crowning architectural feature of the city is the splendid group of Gothic buildings on the summit of Parliament Hill. The three blocks form sides of a great quadrangle, the fourth side remaining open. The corner stone of the main building was laid by the then Prince of Wales in 1860.

With the exception of the library, it was destroyed by fire in 1916, and has since been rebuilt. In the tower is a remarkably beautiful war Memorial Chamber, and above it is hung a carillon of 53 bells.

The Langevin block on the south side of Parliament Hill is used for departmental purposes, and to meet the increasing needs of the government, a group of buildings is being erected on the banks of the Ottawa, west of Parliament Hill.

Other national institutions are the Public Archives, Royal Mint, Department of National Revenue, National Museum & the National Art Gallery, and Dominion Observatory. Other buildings are the City Hall, Public Library, University of Ottawa, the Collegiate Institutes, Normal and Model School, St. Patrick's College and the Roman Catholic and Church of England Cathedrals.

City charities include a large civic hospital and nurses' home, a general hospital supported by the Roman Catholics and three special hospitals devoted to contagious diseases.

A system of public parks and driveways, partly within and partly without the city, and very largely to its directions. These have been built and are maintained by the federal district commission.

Statues of Queen Victoria, as well as of Sir John McDonald, Sir Wilfrid Laurier and other Canadian statesmen, stand on Parliament Hill. A very beautiful war memorial has been erected in honour of those killed in action (1914-18). Rideau Hill, the official residence of the Governor General, lies on the eastern boundary of the city at the entrance to Rockcliffe Park.

Ottawa is governed by a mayor, and board of control of four members, elected by the city at large, and a board of 22 aldermen, two elected by each of the 11 wards. The city returns two members to the Dominion House of Commons, and two to the Ontario Legislature.

Exercise 1. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.

HISTORY OF THE CITY

The earliest description of the site of Ottawa is that of Samuel de Champlain, in his Voyages. In June 1613, on hi way up the river, he came to a tributary on the south side, "at the mouth of which is a marvellous fall. For it descends a height of 20 or 25 fathoms with such impetuosity that it makes an arch nearly four hundred paces broad. The savages take pleasure in passing under it, hot welling themselves, except from the spray that is thrown off".

This was the Rideau Falls, but a good deal of allowance must be made for exaggeration in his account. Continuing up the river, "we passed", he says, "a fall, a league from there, which is half a league broad and has a descent of 6 or 7 fathoms. There are many little islands. The water falls in one place with such force upon a rock that   it has hollowed out in course of time a large and deep basin eddies in the middle, so that the savages call it Asticon, which signifies boiler. This cataract produces such a noise in this basin that it is heard for more than two leagues".

The present name, Chaudiere, is the French equivalent of the old Indian name.

For two hundred years and more after Champlain's first visit the Chaudiere portage was the main thoroughfare from Montreal to the great western fur country; but it was not until 1800 that any permanent settlement was made in the vicinity.

In that year Philemon Wright, of Woburn, Massachusetts, built a home for himself at the foot of the portage, on the Quebec side of the river, where the city of Hull now stands, but for some time the precipitous cliffs on the south side seem to have discouraged settlement there.

Finally about 1820 one Nicholas Sparks moved over the river and cleared a farm in what is now the heart of Ottawa. Seven years later Colonel John By was sent out to build a canal from a point below the Chaudiere falls to Kingston on Lake Ontario.

The canal, completed at a cost of $2.500000 has never been of any great commercial importance.

It has never been called upon to fulfil its primary object, as a military work to enable gunboats and military supplies to reach the lakes from Montreal without being exposed to attack along the St. Lawrence frontier. The building of the canal created a fare sized settlement at its Ottawa end, which came to be known as Bytown. As the lumber trade developed Bytown rapidly increased in wealth and importance. In 1854 it was incorporated as a city, the name being changed to Ottawa; and four years later Queen Victoria selected Ottawa as the capital of the province of Canada.

Ottawa was admirably situated for a capital from a political and military point of view; but there is reason to believe that the deciding factor was the pressure exerted by the four other rival claimants, Montreal, Quebec, Toronto and Kingston, any three of which would have fiercely resented the selection of the fourth. The 1st session of parliament in Ottawa was opened in 1865. The British North America Act of 1867 makes Ottawa the capital of the Dominion of Canada.

Canadians are friendly and open, but reserved, and they usually do not introduce themselves to outsiders. Bring with you a smile, a sense of humour and a willingness to make new friends.

Be assertive and introduce yourself first; Canadians will respond with warmth and enthusiasm.

MONREAL

Montreal is the largest city in the Canadian province of Quebec. It is thesecond largest city in Canada, 18th largest in North America and the 26th largest in the Americas. Originally called *Ville-Marie*, or "City of Mary", it is named after Mount Royal, the triple-peaked hill in the heart of the city.

The city is on the Island of Montreal, which took its name from the same source as the city, and a few much smaller peripheral islands, the largest of which is Île Bizard. It has a distinct four-season continental climate with warm to hot summers and cold snowy winters.

In 2011 the city had a population of 1,649,519. Montreal's metropolitan area had a population of 3,824,221 and a population of 1,886,481 in the urban agglomeration, with all of the municipalities on the Island of Montreal included. The 2014 estimate of the population of the metropolitan area of Montreal is 4.1 mln.

French is the city's official language and is the language spoken at home by 56.9% of the population of the city, followed by English at 18.6% and 19.8% other languages (2016 census).

In the larger Montreal Census Metropolitan Area, 67.9% of the population speaks French at home, compared to 16.5% who speak English. Montreal is one of the most bilingual cities in Quebec and Canada with 56% of the population able to speak both English and French. Montreal is the second largest primarily French-speaking city in the world, after Paris.

Historically the commercial capital of Canada, it was surpassed in population and economic strength by Toronto in the 1970s. It remains an important centre of commerce, aerospace, finance, pharmaceuticals, technology, design, education, culture, tourism, gaming, film and world affairs.

Along with Washington D.C and New York City, Montreal is one of the three North American cities home to organizations of the United Nations, being the location for the headquarters of the International Civil Aviation Organization. Montreal has the second-highest number of consulates in North America. Montreal was also named a UNESCO City of Design.

In 2009, Montreal was named North America's leading host city for international association events, according to the 2009 preliminary rankings of the International Congress and Convention Association (ICCA). The 2016 edition of QS Best Student Cities ranked Montreal the 7th-best city in the world to be a university student. In August 2015, the Economist Intelligence Unit's Global Liveability Ranking placed Montreal 14th out of 140 cities.

Montreal has hosted multiple international conferences and events throughout its history, including the 1967 International and Universal Exposition and the 1976 Summer Olympic Games. It is the only Canadian city to have held the Summer Olympics. Currently, the city hosts the Canadian Grand Prix of Formula One, the Montreal International Jazz Festival and the Just for Laughs festival.

Montreal is in the southwest of the province of Quebec. The city covers most of the Island of Montreal at the confluence of the Saint Lawrence and Ottawa Rivers. The port of Montreal lies at one end of the Saint Lawrence Seaway, the river gateway that stretches from the Great Lakes to the Atlantic.

Montreal is defined by its location between the Saint Lawrence river to its south and the Rivière des Prairies to its north. The city is named after the most prominent geographical feature on the island, a three-head hill called Mount Royal, topped at 232 mabove sea level.

Montreal is at the centre of the Montreal Metropolitan Community, and is bordered by the city of Laval to the north; Longueuil, Saint-Lambert, Brossard, and other municipalities to the south; repentigny to the east and the West Island municipalities to the west.

Montreal was incorporated as a city in 1832. The opening of the Lachine Canal permitted ships to bypass the unnavigable Lachine Rapids, while the construction of the Victoria Bridge established Montreal as a major railway hub. The leaders of Montreal's business community had started to build their homes in the Golden Square Mile (~2.6 km^2) from about 1850.

By 1860, it was the largest municipality in British North America and the undisputed economic and cultural centre of Canada.

VANCOUVER

Vancouver officially the City of Vancouver, is the most populous city in the Canadian province of British Columbia. The 2011 census recorded 603,502 people in the city, making it the eighth largest Canadian municipality. The Greater Vancouver area of around 2.4 mln. inhabitants is the third most populous metropolitan area in the country, the second largest city on the USA-Canada border, and the most populous in Western Canada. Vancouver is one of the most ethnically and linguistically diverse cities in Canada; 52% of its residents have a first language other than English.

Vancouver is classed as a Beta global city. The City of Vancouver encompasses a land area of about 114 square km, giving it a population density of about 5,249 people per km² (13,590 per mi²).

With over 250,000 residents, Vancouver is the most densely populated Canadian municipality, and the fourth most densely populated city in North America behind New York City, San Francisco, and Mexico City. The original settlement, named Gastown, grew up on clearcuts on the west edge of the Hastings Mill logging sawmill's property, where a makeshift tavern had been set up on a plank between two stumps and the proprietor, Gassy Jack, persuaded the curious millworkers to build him a tavern, on 1 July 1867. From that first enterprise, other stores and some hotels quickly appeared along the waterfront to the west. Gastown became formally laid out as a registered townsite dubbed Granville, B.I. ("B.I" standing for "Burrard Inlet").

As part of the land and political deal whereby the area of the townsite was made the railhead of the CPR, it was renamed "Vancouver" and incorporated shortly thereafter as a city, in 1886.

By 1887, the transcontinental railway was extended to the city to take advantage of its large natural seaport, which soon became a vital link in a trade route between the Orient, Eastern Canada, and Europe. As of 2014, Port Metro Vancouver is the third largest port by tonnage in the Americas (displacing New York), 27th in the world, the busiest and largest in Canada, and the most diversified port in North America. While forestry remains its largest industry, Vancouver is well known as an urban centre surrounded by nature, making tourism its second-largest industry.

Major film production studios in Vancouver and Burnaby have turned Greater Vancouver and nearby areas into one of the largest film production centres in North America, earning it the film industry nickname, Hollywood North. Vancouver is consistently named as one of the top five worldwide cities for livability and quality of life, and the Economist Intelligence Unit acknowledged it as the first city to rank among the top-ten of the world's most liveable cities for five consecutive years.

Vancouver has hosted many international conferences and events, including the 1954 British Empire and Commonwealth Games, UN Habitat I, Expo 86, the World Police and Fire Games in 1989 and 2009; and the 2010 Winter Olympics and 2010 Winter Paralympics which were held in Vancouver and Whistler, a resort community 125 km (78 mi) north of the city.

In 2014, following thirty years in California, the annual TED conference made Vancouver its indefinite home. Several matches of the 2015 FIFA Women's World Cup were played in Vancouver, including the final at BC Place Stadium.

Archaeological records indicate the presence of Aboriginal people in the Vancouver area from 8,000 to 10,000 years ago. The city is located in the traditional territories of the Burrard peoples of the Coast Salish group. Europeans became acquainted with the area of the future Vancouver when José María Narváez of Spain explored the coast of present-dayPoint Grey and parts of Burrard Inlet in 1791 – although one author contends that Francis Drake may have visited the area in 1579.

The city takes its name from George Vancouver, who explored the inner harbour of Burrard Inlet in 1792 and gave various places British names. The explorer and North West Company trader Simon Fraser and his crew became the first known Europeans to set foot on the site of the present-day city. In 1808, they travelled from the east down the Fraser River, perhaps as far as Point Grey.

Exercise 1. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.

Clockwise from top: Downtown Vancouver as seen from the southern shore of False Creek, The University of British Columbia, Lions Gate Bridge, a view from the Granville Street Bridge,Burrard Bridge, The Millennium Gate (Chinatown), and totem poles in Stanley Park.

CALGARY

Calgary is a city in the Canadian province of Alberta. It is situated at the confluence of the Bow River and the Elbow River in the south of the province, in an area of foothills and prairie, about 80 km (50 mi) east of the front ranges of the Canadian Rockies. In the 2011 census, the City of Calgary had a population of 1,096,833 and a metropolitan population of 1,214,839, making it the largest city in Alberta, and the third-largest municipality and fifth-largest census metropolitan area (CMA) in Canada.

The economy of Calgary includes activity in the energy, financial services, film and television, transportation and logistics, technology, manufacturing, aerospace, health and wellness, retail, and tourism sectors. The Calgary CMA is home to the second-highest number of corporate head offices in Canada among the country's 800 largest corporations.

In 1988, Calgary became the first Canadian city to host the Winter Olympic Games.

Calgary was named after Calgary on the Isle of Mull, Scotland. In turn, the name originates from a compound of *kald* and *gart*, similarOld Norse words, meaning "cold" and "garden", likely used when named by the Vikings who inhabited the Inner Hebrides. Alternatively, the name might be Gaelic for either "clear running water" or "bay farm".

With the energy sector employing a huge number of Calgarians, the fallout from the economic slump of the early 1980s was significant, and the unemployment rate soared.

By the end of the decade, however, the economy was in recovery. Calgary quickly realized that it could not afford to put so much emphasis on oil and gas, and the city has since become much more diverse, both economically and culturally.The period during this recession marked Calgary's transition from a mid-sized and relatively nondescript prairie city into a major cosmopolitan and diverse centre.

This transition culminated in the city hosting Canada's first Winter Olympics in 1988. The success of these Games essentially put the city on the world stage.

Thanks in part to escalating oil prices, the economy in Calgary and Alberta was booming until the end of 2009, and the region of nearly 1.1 mln. people was home to the fastest growing economy in the country. While the oil and gas industry comprise an important part of the economy, the city has invested a great deal into other areas such as tourism and high-tech manufacturing.

Over 3.1 mln. people now visit the city annuallyfor its many festivals and attractions, especially the Calgary Stampede. The nearby mountain resort towns of Banff, Lake Louise, and Canmore are also becoming increasingly popular with tourists, and are bringing people into Calgary as a result.

Other modern industries include light manufacturing, high-tech, film, e-commerce, transportation, and services. Widespread flooding throughout southern Alberta, including on the Bow and Elbow rivers, forced the evacuation of over 75,000 city residents on June 21, 2013 and left large areas of the city, including downtown, without power.

EDMONTON

Edmonton is the capital of Alberta, Canada. Edmonton is on the North Saskatchewan River and is the centre of theEdmonton Capital Region, which is surrounded by Alberta's central region. The city had a population of 877,926 in the 2014 census, is Alberta's second-largest city and Canada's fifth-largest municipality. This population represents 66 percent of the total 2014 population of 1,328,300 within the Edmonton census metropolitan area (CMA), Canada's fifth-largest CMA by population. Edmonton is the most northern North American city with a metropolitan population over one million. A resident of Edmonton is known as an *Edmontonian*.

Edmonton's historic growth has been facilitated through the absorption of five adjacent urban municipalities (Strathcona, North Edmonton,West Edmonton, Beverly and Jasper Place) and a series of annexations ending in 1982.

Edmonton serves as the northern anchor of the Calgary – Edmonton Corridor. Known as the "Gateway to the North", the city is a staging point for large-scale oil sands projects occurring in northern Alberta and large-scale diamond mining operations in the Northwest Territories.

Edmonton is a cultural, governmental and educational centre. It hosts a year-round slate of festivals, reflected in the nickname "Canada's Festival City".It is home to North America's largest mall, West Edmonton Mall (the world's largest mall from 1981 until 2004), and Fort Edmonton Park, Canada's largest living history museum.

Edmonton is located on the North Saskatchewan River, and sits at an elevation of 671 metres (2,201 ft). Edmonton is the most northerly city in North America with a metropolitan population of over one million. It is at the same latitude as Hamburg (Germany), Dublin (Ireland), Manchester (United Kingdom), and Magnitogorsk (Russia). North as it is, it is south of the geographic centre of Alberta, which is located near the Hamlet of Fort Assiniboine. The terrain in and around Edmonton is generally flat to gently rolling, with ravines and deep river valleys, such as the North Saskatchewan River valley.

The Canadian Rockies are located about 220 km (140 mi) to the southwest.

The population of the City of Edmonton according to its 2014 municipal census is 877,926, a 7.4% change from its 2012 municipal censuspopulation of 817,498. The 2012 census captured more detailed demographic information on residents, including age and gender, marital status, employment status, length of residency, prior residence, employment transportation mode, citizenship and school residency, as well as dwellings and properties, including ownership, structure and status. Per its municipal census policy, the city's next municipal census is scheduled for 2016.

Edmonton is the major economic centre for northern and central Alberta and a major centre for the oil and gas industry. As of 2014, the estimated value of major projects within the Edmonton Capital Region was $57.8-billion, of which $34.4-billion are within the oil and gas, oil sands and pipeline sectors.

Edmonton traditionally has been a hub for Albertan petrochemical industries, earning it the nickname "Oil Capital of Canada" in the 1940s. Supply and service industries drive the energy extraction engine, while research develops new technologies and supports expanded value-added processing of Alberta's massive oil, gas, and oil sands reserves. These are reported to be the second-largest in the world, after Saudi Arabia. Edmonton's geographical location has made it an ideal spot for distribution and logistics. Many events are anchored in the downtown Arts District, centred on Churchill Square.

On the south side of the river, the University district and Whyte Avenue contain theatres, concert halls, and various live music venues. Edmonton plays host to several large festivals each year, contributing to its nickname, "Canada's Festival City". There are many museums in Edmonton of various sizes. The largest is the Royal Alberta Museum (RAM), which was formerly known as the Provincial Museum of Alberta until it was renamed in honour of Queen Elizabeth II's 2005 Alberta centennial visit. The Art Gallery of Alberta (AGA) is the city's largest single gallery.

Exercise 1. Render the main idea of the information.
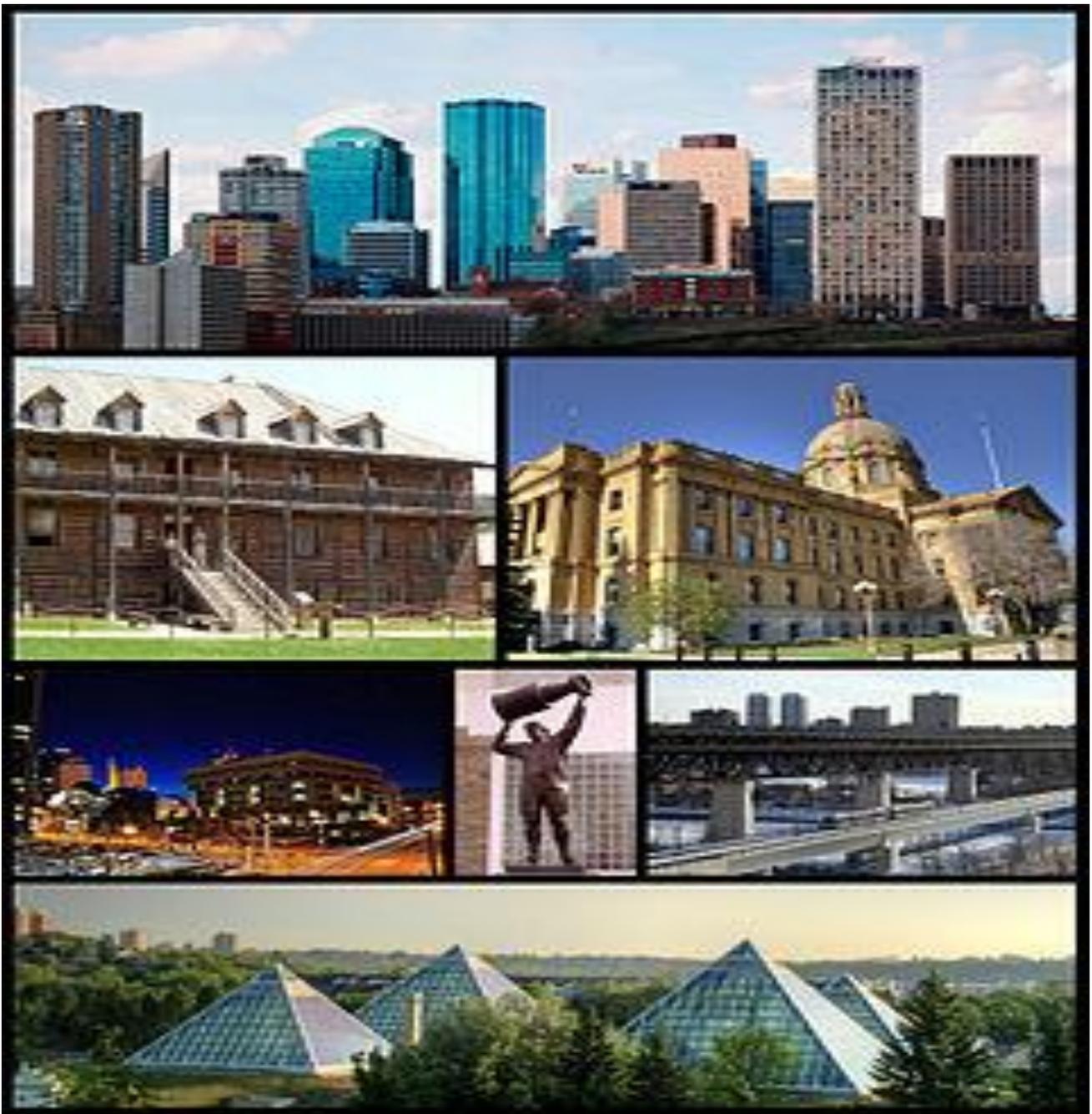
From top left: Downtown Edmonton, Fort Edmonton Park, Legislature Building, Law Courts, Rexall Place, High Level Bridge,Muttart Conservatory
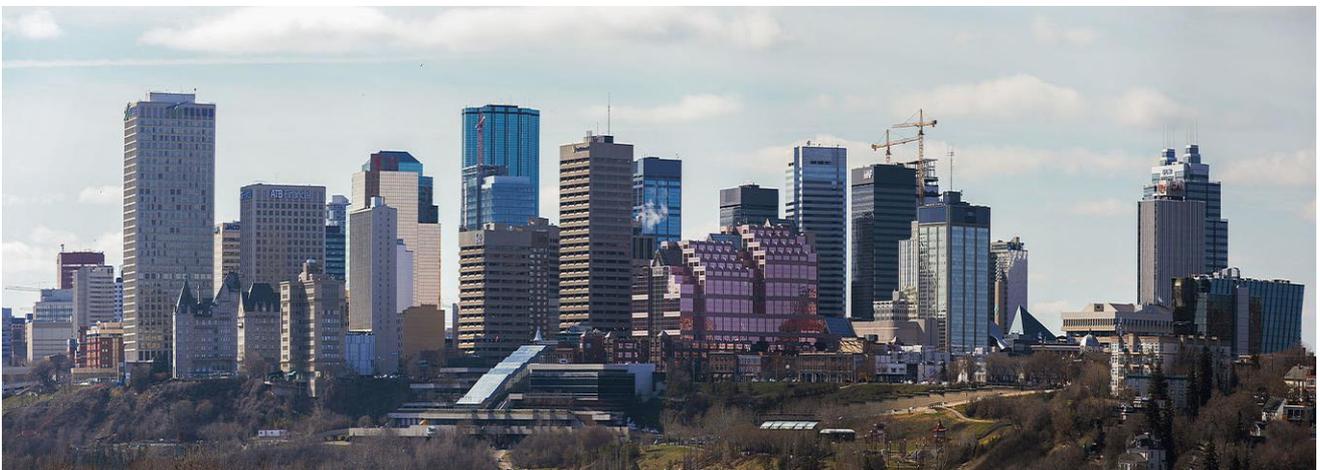
WINNIPEG

Winnipeg is the capital and largest city of the province of Manitoba in Canada. It is located near the longitudinal centre of North America, at the confluence of the Red and Assiniboine Rivers.

The city is named after the nearby Lake Winnipeg; the name comes from the Western Cree words for muddy or brackish water. The region was a trading centre for aboriginal peoples long before the arrival of Europeans. French traders built the first fort on the site in 1738.

A settlement was later founded by the Selkirk settlers of the Red River Colony in 1812, the nucleus of which was incorporated as the City of Winnipeg in 1873. As of 2011, Winnipeg is the seventh most populated municipality in Canada. Being located very far inland, the local climate is extremely seasonal even by Canadian standards with average January lows of around −21 °C (−6 °F) and average July highs of 26 °C (79 °F).

Known as the "Gateway to the West", Winnipeg is a railway and transportation hub with a diversified economy. This multicultural city hosts numerous annual festivals, including the Festival du Voyageur, the Winnipeg Folk Festival, the Jazz Winnipeg Festival, the Winnipeg Fringe Theatre Festival, and Folklorama. Winnipeg was the first Canadian host of the Pan American Games. It is home to several professional sports franchises, including the Winnipeg Blue Bombers (Canadian football), the Winnipeg Jets (ice hockey), Manitoba Moose (ice hockey) and the Winnipeg Goldeyes (baseball).

Winnipeg lies at the confluence of the Assiniboine and the Red River of the North, a location now known as "The Forks". This point was at the crossroads of canoe routes travelled by First Nations before European contact. Winnipeg is named after nearby Lake Winnipeg; the name is a transcription of the Western Cree words for muddy or brackish water.

The area was populated for several thousands of years by First Nations peoples. Evidence provided by archaeology, petroglyphs, rock art and oral history indicates that native peoples used the area in prehistoric times for camping, harvesting, hunting, tool making, fishing, trading and, farther north, for agriculture. Estimates of the date of first settlement in this area are varied and range from 11,500 years ago for a site southwest of the present city to 6,000 years ago at The Forks.

In 1805, Canadian colonists observed First Nations peoples engaged in farming activity along the Red River. The practice quickly expanded, driven by the demand by traders for provisions.

The rivers provided an extensive transportation network linking northern First Peoples with those to the south along the Missouri and Mississippi rivers. The Ojibwe made some of the first maps on birch bark, which helped fur traders navigate the waterways of the area.

Winnipeg lies at the bottom of the Red River Valley, a flood plain with an extremely flat topography. It is on the eastern edge of the Canadian Prairies in Western Canada and is known as the "Gateway to the West". Winnipeg is bordered by tallgrass prairie to the west and south and the aspen parkland to the northeast, although most of the native prairie grasses have been removed for agriculture and urbanization. It is relatively close to many large Canadian Shield lakes and parks, as well as Lake Winnipeg (the Earth's 11th largest freshwater lake). Winnipeg contains North America's largest extant mature urban elm forest. Winnipeg has four major rivers: the Red, Assiniboine, La Salle and Seine.

Thunderstorms are very common duruing summer, and sometimes severe enough to produce tornados. Winnipeg has a significant and increasing Aboriginal population, with both the highest percentage of Aboriginal peoples (11.7%) for any major Canadian city. More than a hundred languages are spoken in Winnipeg, of which the most common is English. Winnipeg is an economic base and regional centre. It has one of the country's most diversified economies with major employment in the trade (15.2%), manufacturing (9.8%), educational (7.7%), and health care and social assistance (15.2%) sectors. The Royal Canadian Mint, established in 1976, is where all circulating coinage in Canada is produced. The plant, located in southeastern Winnipeg, produces coins for other countries.

Exercise 1. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.
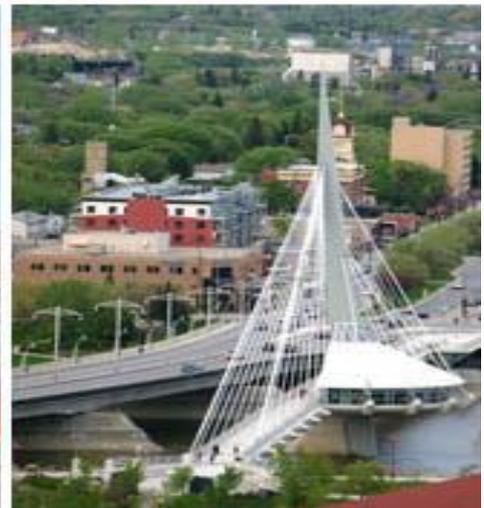
Clockwise from top: Downtown featuring the Canadian Museum for Human Rights, Investors Group Field, Saint Boniface and the Esplanade Riel bridge, Wesley Hall at the University of Winnipeg, Manitoba Legislative Building.

University of Manitoba's Administration Building

QUEBEC

Quebec City is the capital of the province of Quebec in Canada. In 2015 the city had a population of 540,994, and the metropolitan areahad a population of 806,400, making it the second most populous city in Quebec after Montreal, which is about 233 km (145 mi) to the southwest.

Founded in 1608 by Samuel de Champlain, Quebec City is one of the oldest cities in North America. The ramparts surrounding Old Quebec are the only fortified city walls remaining in the Americas north of Mexico, and were declared a World Heritage Site by UNESCO in 1985 as the "Historic District of Old Québec". According to the federal and provincial governments, *Québec* is the city's official name in both French and English, although Quebec City is commonly used, particularly to distinguish the city from the province. The city's famous landmarks include the Château Frontenac, a hotel which dominates the skyline, and La Citadelle, an intact fortress that forms the centre-piece of the ramparts surrounding the old city. The National Assembly of Quebec (provincial legislature), National Museum of Fine Arts of Quebec, *Museum of Civilization* are found within or near Vieux-Québec.

Throughout its over 400 years of existence, which were celebrated around the world, Quebec City has served as a capital. It was the capital of the Province of Quebec; the capital of Lower Canada; of the Province of Canada; and since 1867, it has been capital of the Province of Quebec.

The administrative region in which Quebec City is situated is officially referred to as Capitale-Nationale, and the term "national capital" is used to refer to Quebec City itself at provincial level.

Quebec City is located in the Saint Lawrence River valley, on the north bank of the Saint Lawrence River near its meeting with the St. Charles River. The region is low-lying and flat. The river valley has rich, arable soil, which makes this region the most fertile in the province. The Laurentian Mountains lie to the north of the city. The climate of Quebec City is classified as humid continental.

The vast majority of city residents are native French speakers. The English-speaking community peaked in relative terms during the 1860s, when 40% of Quebec City's residents were Anglophone.

Today, Anglophones make up only 1.5% of the population of both the city and its metropolitan area. Most jobs in Quebec City are concentrated in public administration, defence, services, commerce, transport and tourism. As the provincial capital, the city benefits from being a regional administrative and services centre: apropos, the provincial government is the largest employer in the city.

Around 10% of jobs are in manufacturing. Principal products include pulp and paper, processed food, metal/wood items, chemicals, electronics and electrical equipment, and printed materials. Tourist attractions located near Quebec City include Montmorency Falls, the Basilica of Sainte-Anne-de-Beaupré, the Mont-Sainte-Anne ski resort, and the Ice Hotel.

The zoo specialized in winged fauna and garden themes, but also presented several species of mammals. While it emphasized the indigenous fauna of Quebec, one of its principal attractions was the Indo-Australian greenhouse, featuring fauna and flora from these areas. There are a number of historic sites, art galleries and museums in Quebec City.

Much of the city's most notable architecture is located east of the fortification walls in Old Quebec and Place Royale. This area has a distinct European feel with its stone buildings and winding streets lined with shops and restaurants. Town is filled with original architecture and street designs, dating back to the city's beginnings. Murals and statues are also featured. The Lower Town is also noted for its wide variety of boutiques, many featuring hand-crafted goods.

As well as having a number of local sports teams, Quebec City has hosted a number of sporting events. The Special Olympics Canada National Winter Games was held in the city in 2008.

Quebec City co-hosted with Halifax, Nova Scotia, the 2008 IIHF World Championship. Regular sporting events held in the city, include Women's Tennis Association tournament; Crashed Ice, Quebec City International Pee-Wee Tournament, a minor hockey tournament.

Exercise 1. Make up some dialogues from the information above.

Clockwise from top left: Saint Louis Gate in the Ramparts; Parliament Hill and Bassin Louise waterfront area; Château Frontenac and Holy Trinity Cathedral in Vieux-Québec; Quebec National Assembly; Pierre Laporte Bridge with Quebec Bridge in the background

VICTORIA

Victoria is the capital city of British Columbia, Canada, and is located on the southern tip of Vancouver Island off Canada's Pacific coast. The city has a population of about 80,017, while the metropolitan area of Greater Victoria, has a population of 344,615, making it the 15th most populous Canadian urban region. Victoria is about 100 kim (60 miles) from BC's largest city of Vancouver on the mainland.

The city is about 100 km (62 mi) from Seattle by airplane, ferry, or the Victoria Clipper passenger-only ferry which operates daily, year round between Seattle and Victoria and 40 km (25 mi) from Port Angeles, Washington, by ferry *Coho* across the Strait of Juan de Fuca.

Named after Queen Victoria of the United Kingdom and, at the time, British North America, Victoria is one of the oldest cities in the Pacific Northwest, with British settlement beginning in 1843.

The city has retained a large number of its historic buildings, in particular its two most famous landmarks, Legislative buildings (finished in 1897 and home of the Legislative Assembly of British Columbia) and the Empress hotel (1908). The city's Chinatown is the second oldest in North America after San Francisco's.

The region's Coast Salish First Nations peoples established communities in the area long before non-native settlement, possibly several thousand years earlier, which had large populations at the time of European exploration. Victoria, like many Vancouver Island communities, continues to have a sizeable First Nations presence, composed of peoples from all over Vancouver Island and beyond.

Known as the "The Garden City", Victoria is an attractive city and a popular tourism destination with a thriving technology sector that has risen to be its largest revenue-generating private industry.

Victoria is in the top twenty of world cities for quality-of-life, according to Numbeo. The city has a large non-local student population, who come to attend the University of Victoria, Camosun College, Royal Roads University, the Victoria College of Art, the Sooke Schools International Programme and the Canadian College of Performing Arts. Victoria is very popular with boaters with its beautiful and rugged shorelines and beaches. Victoria is also popular with retirees, who come to enjoy the temperate and usually snow-free climate of the area as well as the usually relaxed pace of the city.

When news of the discovery of gold on the British Columbia mainland reached San Francisco in 1858, Victoria became the port, supply base, and outfitting centre for miners on their way to the Fraser Canyon gold fields, mushrooming from a population of 300 to over 5000 literally within a few days.

Victoria was incorporated as a city in 1862.

In 1865, Esquimalt was made the North Pacific home of the Royal Navy, and remains Canada's west coast naval base. In 1866 when the island was politically united with the mainland, Victoria was designated the capital of the newunited colony instead of New Westminster – an unpopular move on the Mainland – became the provincial capital when British Columbia joined the Canadian Confederation in 1871. The landscape of Victoria was formed by water in various forms.

Pleistocene glaciation put the area under a thick ice cover, the weight of which depressed the land below present sea level. Victoria's equable climate has also added to its reputation as the "City of Gardens". The city takes pride in the many flowers that bloom during the winter and early spring, including crocuses, daffodils, early-blooming rhododendrons, cherry and plum trees.

Every February there is an annual "flower count" in what for the rest of the country and most of the province is still the dead of winter. Due to its mild climate, Victoria and its surrounding area are also home to many rare, native plants found nowhere else in Canada.

By population, Greater Victoria is the 15th largest metropolitan area in Canada.

Victoria is known for its disproportionately large retiree population. Some 6.4 % of the population of Victoria and its surrounding area are more than 80 years of age – the highest proportion for any of Canada's metropolitan areas.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.
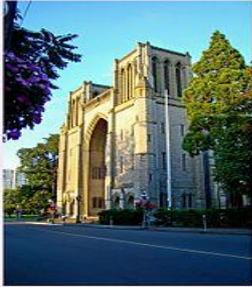
Clockwise from top left: The Inner Victoria Harbour, Statue of Queen Victoria, the Fisgard Lighthouse, Neo-Baroque architecture of the British Columbia Parliament Buildings, The British Columbia Parliament Buildings, The Empress Hotel, and The Christ Church Cathedral.

HAMILTON

Hamilton is a port city in the Canadianprovince of Ontario. Conceived by George Hamilton when he purchased the Durand farm shortly after the War of 1812, Hamilton has become the centre of a densely populated and industrialized region at the west end of Lake Ontario known as the Golden Horseshoe. In 2001, the new City of Hamilton was formed through the amalgamation of the former city and the other constituent lower-tier municipalities of the Regional Municipality of Hamilton-Wentworth with the upper-tier regional government. Residents of the old city are known as Hamiltonians.

Since 1981, the metropolitan area has been listed as the ninth largest in Canada and the third largest in Ontario. Hamilton is home to the Royal Botanical Gardens, the Canadian Warplane Heritage Museum, the Bruce Trail, McMaster University andMohawk College. McMaster University is ranked 4th in Canada and 94th in the world by Times Higher Education Rankings 2015-16 and has a well-known medical school. The Canadian Football Hall of Fame can be found downtown right beside Hamilton City Hall and across town to the east, the Canadian Football League's Hamilton Tiger-Cats began playing at the new Tim Hortons Field in 2014, which was built as part of the 2015 Pan American Games. Possibly because of its diverse environment, numerous TV and film productions have been filmed in Hamilton, regulated by the Hamilton Film and Television Office.

A growing arts and culture community garnered media attention in 2006 when the *Globe and Mail* published an article called "Go West, Young Artist" about Hamilton's growing art scene.

The article highlighted local art galleries,recording studios and independent film production.

Hamilton is located in Southern Ontario on the western end of the Niagara Peninsula and wraps around the western most part of Lake Ontario. Hamilton is situated in the geographic centre of the Golden Horseshoe and is roughly the midway point between Toronto and Buffalo, New York.

Hamilton Harbour is a natural harbour with a large sandbar called the Beachstrip. Hamilton's climate is humid-continental, characterized by changeable weather patterns.

According to the 2011 Canadian Census, more than 20 % of the local population was not born in Canada. This is the third highest such proportion in Canada after Toronto at 49%, and Vancouver at 39%. Between 2001 and 2006, the foreign-born population increased by 7.7% whiles the total population of the Hamilton census metropolitan area grew by 4.3%.

In February 2014, the city's council voted to declare Hamilton a sanctuary city, offering municipal services to undocumented immigrants at risk of deportation. Hamilton has a large French community for which provincial services are offered in French.

The top countries of birth for the newcomers living in Hamilton in the 1990s were: former Yugoslavia, Poland, India, China, the Philippines, and Iraq.

Children aged 14 years and under accounted for 17.8% of the population while those 65 years of age and older constituted 14.9%, resulting in an average age of 39.6 years.

The most described religion in Hamilton is Christianity although other religions brought by immigrants are also growing. The most important economic activity in Ontario is manufacturing, and the Toronto-Hamilton region is the most highly industrialized section of the country.

Hamilton's municipal government consists of one mayor, elected city wide, and 15 city councillors, elected individually by each of the city's wards, to serve on the Hamilton City Council.

Hamilton's municipal government consists of one mayor, elected city wide, and 15 city councillors, elected individually by each of the city's wards, to serve on the Hamilton City Council. Hamilton is home to several post-secondary institutions that have created numerous direct and indirect jobs in education and research. The Hamilton Conservatory for the Arts is home to many of the area's talented young actors, dancers, musicians, singers and visual artists. The school is equipped with a keyboard studio, spacious dance studios, art and sculpting studios, gallery space and a 300 seat recital hall.

Exercise 1. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.

Counter Clockwise from the Top: View of Downtown Hamilton from Sam Lawrence Park, Hamilton City Hall, Bayfront Park Harbour Front Trail, Historic Art Deco and Gothic Revival Pigott Building complex,Webster's Falls, Dundurn Castle

INTRODUCTION

The Great Lakes are estimated to have been formed at the end of the last glacial period (about 10,000 years ago), when the Laurentide ice sheetreceded.

Archeological and Aboriginal genetic evidence indicate that North and South America were the last continents into which humans migrated.During the Wisconsin glaciation, 50,000-17,000 years ago, falling sea levels allowed people to move across the Bering land bridge (Beringia), from Siberia into northwest North America. At that point, they were blocked by the Laurentide ice sheet that covered most of Canada, confining them to Alaska and the Yukon for thousands of years.

The exact dates and routes of the peopling of the Americas are the subject of an ongoing debate. By 16,000 years ago the glacial melt allowed people to move by land south and east out of Beringia, and into Canada. The Queen Charlotte Islands, Old Crow Flats, and Bluefish Caves contain some of the earliest Paleo-Indian archaeological sites in Canada. Ice Agehunter-gatherers of this period left lithic flake fluted stone tools and the remains of large butchered mammals.

The North American climate stabilized around 8000 B.C. (10,000 years ago). Climatic conditions were similar to modern patterns; however, the receding glacial ice sheets still covered large portions of the land, creating lakes of meltwater. Most population groups during the Archaic periodswere still highly mobile hunter-gatherers. However, individual groups started to focus on resources available to them locally; thus with the passage of time, there is a pattern of increasing regional generalization (i.e.: Paleo-Arctic, Plano and Maritime Archaic traditions).

Great Lakes area of the Hopewell Interaction Area

The Woodland cultural period dates from about 2000 B.C. to 1000 C.E. and includes the Ontario, Quebec, and Maritime regions. The introduction of pottery distinguishes the Woodland culture from the previous Archaic-stage inhabitants. The Laurentian-related people of Ontario manufactured the oldest pottery excavated to date in Canada.

The Hopewell tradition is an Aboriginal culture that flourished along American rivers from 300 B.C. to 500 C.E. At its greatest extent, the Hopewell Exchange System connected cultures and societies to the peoples on the Canadian shores of Lake Ontario. Canadian expression of the Hopewellian peoples encompasses the Point Peninsula, Saugeen, and Laurel complexes.

The eastern woodland areas of what became Canada were home to the Algonquian and Iroquoian peoples. The Algonquian language is believed to have originated in the western plateau of Idaho or the plains of Montana and moved eastward, eventually extending all the way from Hudson Bay to what is today Nova Scotia in the east and as far south as the Tidewater region of Virginia.

Pre-Columbian distribution of Algonquian languages in North America.

Speakers of eastern Algonquian languages included the Mi'kmaq and Abenaki of the Maritime region of Canada and likely the extinct Beothuk of Newfoundland. The Ojibwa and other Anishinaabe speakers of the central Algonquian languages retain an oral tradition of having moved to their lands around the western and central Great Lakes from the sea, likely the east coast. According to oral tradition, the Ojibwa formed the Council of Three Fires in 796 C.E. with the Odawa and the Potawatomi.

The Iroquois (Haudenosaunee) were centred from at least 1000 C.E. in northern New York, but their influence extended into what is now southern Ontario and the Montreal area of modern Quebec.[22] The Iroquois Confederacy, according to oral tradition, was formed in 1142 C.E.

On the Great Plains the Cree or *Nēhilawē* depended on the vast herds of bison to supply food and many of their other needs. To the northwest were the peoples of the Na-Dene languages, which include the Athapaskan-speaking peoples and the Tlingit, who lived on the islands of southern Alaska and northern British Columbia. The Na-Dene language group is believed to be linked to theYeniseian languages of Siberia. The Dene of the western Arctic may represent a distinct wave of migration from Asia to North America.

Pre-Columbian distribution of Na-Dene languages in North America

The Interior of British Columbia was home to the Salishan language groups. The inlets and valleys of the British Columbia Coast sheltered large, distinctive populations, sustained by the region's abundant salmon and shellfish. These peoples developed complex cultures dependent on the western red cedar that included wooden houses, seagoing whaling and war canoes and elaborately carved potlatch items and totem poles. In the Arctic archipelago, the distinctive Paleo-Eskimos known as Dorset peoples, whose culture has been traced back to around 500 B.C., were replaced by the ancestors of today's Inuit by 1500 C.E. This transition is supported by archaeological records and Inuit mythology that tells of having driven off the Tuniit or "first inhabitants".

Inuit traditional laws are anthropologically different from Western law. Customary law was non-existent in Inuit society before the introduction of the Canadian legal system.

International migration has always been a source of population growth for Canada. Indeed, many Canadian – born citizens can trace their immigrant origins within a few generations.

The contribution of immigrants to Canada's population growth has often fluctuated due to changes in annual immigration levels set by various governments.

The present level is set at about 250,000 people. In recent years however, the rate of natural increase (births minus deaths) in the population has dropped and the role of immigration has become increasingly important to population growth.

By 2030, natural increase is projected to be close to zero and at that point, immigration will be Canada's only source of population growth. Canada resettled almost one quarter of million refugees from 1947 to 1967. This is a conservative figure, as no distinction was made between refugees and other immigrants, except for clearly defined movements or where statistics were kept by international agencies transporting refugees to Canada. 95% of these refugees were from Eastern Europe.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords and phrases that best convey the gist of the information.

Canada has a population of about 34 million people. While the majority live in cities, Canadians also live in small towns, rural areas and everywhere in between.

Exercise 2. Read the article and give the main idea of it.

When Europeans explored Canada they found all regions occupied by native peoples they called Indians, because the first explorers thought they had reached the East Indies. The native people lived off the land, some by hunting and gathering, others by raising crops. The Huron-Wendat of the Great Lakes region, like the Iroquois, were farmers and hunters. The Cree and Dene of the Northwest were hunter-gatherers. The Sioux were nomadic, following the bison (buffalo) herd. The Inuit lived off Arctic wildlife. West Coast natives preserved fish by drying and smoking. Warfare was common among Aboriginal groups as they competed for land, resources and prestige.

The arrival of European traders, missionaries, soldiers and colonists changed the native way of life forever. Large numbers of Aboriginals died of European diseases to which they lacked immunity.

However, Aboriginals and Europeans formed strong economic, religious and military bonds in the first 200 years of coexistence which laid the foundations of Canada.

The Vikings from Iceland who colonized Greenland 1,000 years ago also reached Labrador and the island of Newfoundland. The remains of their settlement, l'Anse aux Meadows, are a World Heritage site. European exploration began in earnest in 1497 with the expedition of John Cabot, who was the first to draw a map of Canada's East Coast.

Exercise 3. Read the article and give the main idea of it.

Canadian society today stems largely from the English-speaking and French-speaking Christian civilizations that were brought here from Europe by settlers. English and French define the reality of day-to-day life for most people and are the country's official languages. The federal government is required by law to provide services throughout Canada in English and French.

Today, there are 18 million Anglophones – people who speak English as a first language – and 7 mln. Francophones – people who speak French as their first language. While the majority of Francophones live in the province of Quebec, one million Francophones live in Ontario, New Brunswick and Manitoba, with a smaller presence in other provinces. New Brunswick is the only officially bilingual province.

The ***Acadians*** are the descendants of French colonists who began settling in what are now the Maritime provinces in 1604. Between 1755 and 1763, during the war between Britain and France, more than two-thirds of the Acadians were deported from their homeland. Despite this ordeal, known as the "Great Upheaval", the Acadians survived and maintained their unique identity. Today, Acadian culture is flourishing and is a lively part of French-speaking Canada.

Quebecers are the people of Quebec, the vast majority French-speaking. Most are descendants of 8,500 French settlers from the 1600s and 1700s and maintain a unique identity, culture and language.

The House of Commons recognized in 2006 that the Quebecois form a nation within a united Canada. One million ***Anglo-Quebecers*** have a heritage of 250 years and form a vibrant part of the Quebec fabric. The basic way of life in English-speaking areas was established by hundreds of thousands of ***English, Welsh, Scottish*** and ***Irish*** settlers, soldiers and migrants from the 1600s to the 20th century. Generations of pioneers and builders of British origins, as well as other groups, invested and endured hardship in laying the foundations of our country. This helps explain why Anglophones (English speakers) are generally referred to as English Canadians.

Some Canadians immigrate from places where they have experienced warfare or conflict. Such experiences do not justify bringing to Canada violent, extreme or hateful prejudices. In becoming Canadian, newcomers are expected to embrace democratic principles such as the rule of law.

The great majority of Canadians identify as Christians. The largest religious affiliation is Catholic, followed by various Protestant churches. The numbers of Muslims, Jews, Hindus, Sikhs and members of other religions, as well as people who state "no religion" are also growing.

In Canada the state has traditionally partnered with faith communities to promote social welfare, harmony and mutual respect; to provide schools and health care; to resettle refugees; and to uphold religious freedom, religious expression and freedom of conscience.

Exercise 4. Remember the facts.

- The current population of **Canada** is **36,237,491** as of Wednesday, May 11, 2016, based on the latest United Nations estimates.
- Canada population is equivalent to **0.49%** of the total world population.
- Canada ranks number **38** in the list of countries by population.
- The population density in Canada is 4 per Km^2 (10 people per mi^2).
- The total land area is 9,071,595 Km2 (3,502,561 sq. miles)
- **81.7 %** of the population is **urban** (29,704,230 people in 2016)
- The **median age** in Canada is **40.8 years**.

The population of Canada represents 0.50 % of the world´s total population which arguably means that one person in every 202 people on the planet is a resident of Canada.

Exercise 5. Analyze the information and use it in practice.

Exercise 6. Make up a small report and give a talk in class.
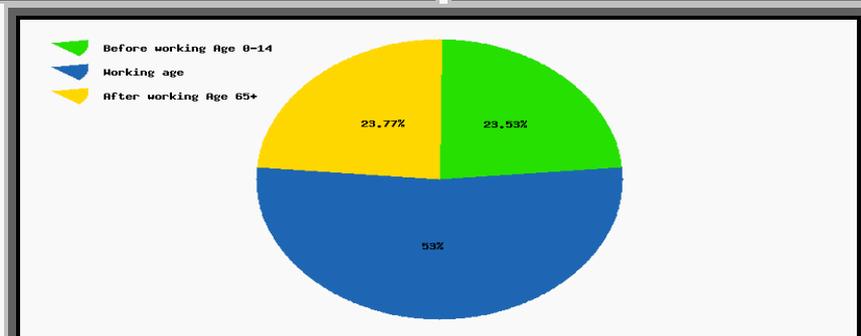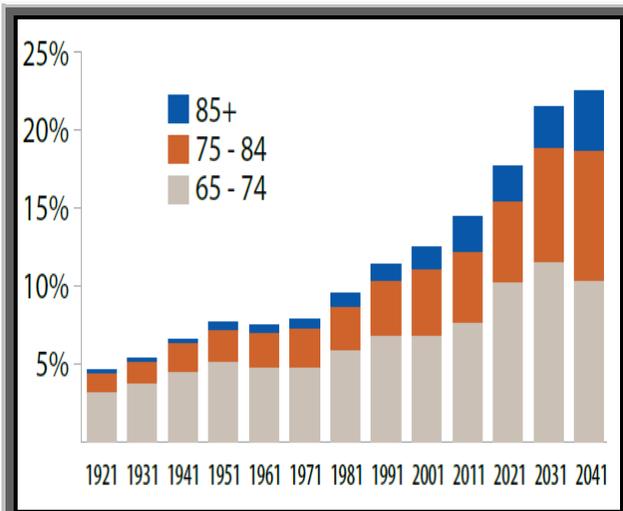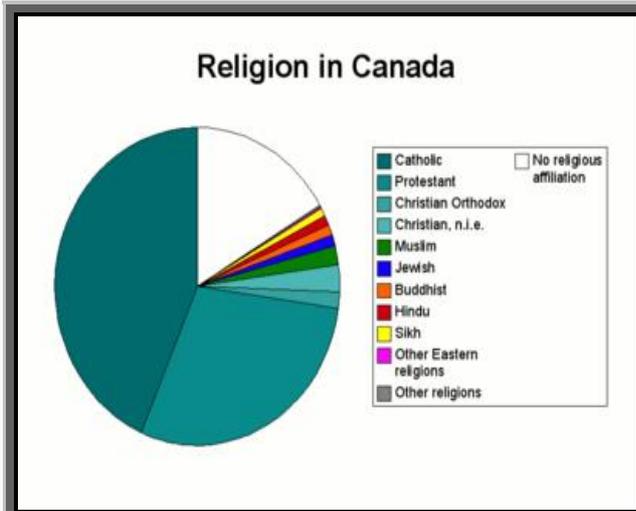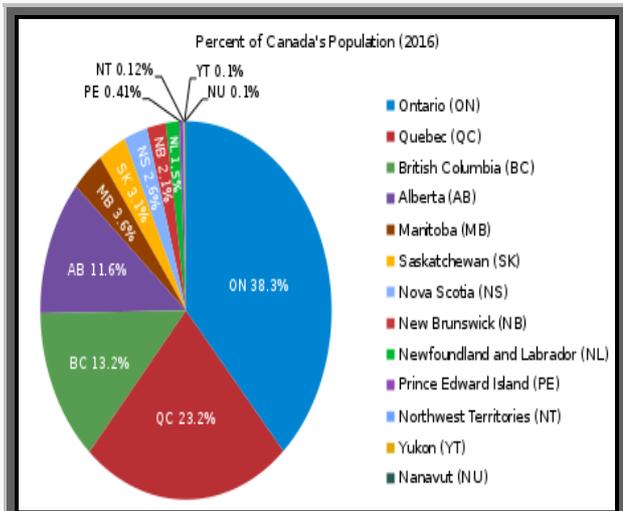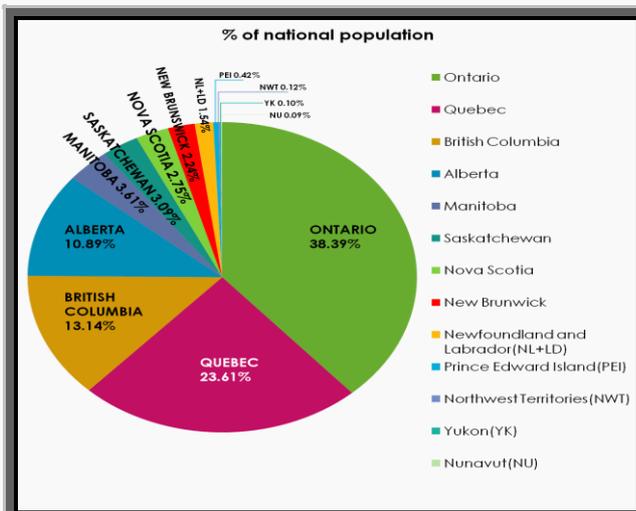
THE HISTORICAL GROWTH OF CANADA'S POPULATION

The historical growth of Canada's population is complex and has been influenced in many different ways, such as indigenous populations, expansion of territory, and human migration.

Being a new world country, Canada has been predisposed to be a very open society with regards to immigration, which has been the most important factor in its historical population growth.

Canadians comprise about 0.5% of the world's total population. With an estimate total population of 36,048,521 by the Q1 in 2016. Despite the fact that Canada's population density is low, many regions in the south such as Southern Ontario, have population densities higher than several European countries. The large size of Canada's north which is not arable, and thus cannot support large human populations, significantly lowers the carrying capacity. Therefore, the population density of the habitable land in Canada can be modest to high depending on the region.

As of 1 January 2016, the population of Canada was estimated to be 36 134 016 people.

This is an increase of 1.04 % (370 156 people) compared to population of 35 763 860 the year before. In 2015 the natural increase was positive, as the number of births exceeded the number of deaths by 130 180. Due to external migration, the population increased by 239 976. The sex ratio of the total population was 0.985 (985 males per 1 000 females) which is lower than global sex ratio.

The global sex ratio in the world was approximately 1 016 males to 1 000 females as of 2015.

Below are the key figures for Canada population in 2015:

- 391 614 live births.
- 261 434 deaths.
- Natural increase: 130 180 people.
- Net migration: 239 976 people.
- 17 927 179 males as of 31 December 2015.
- 18 206 837 females as of 31 December 2015.

During 2016 Canada population is projected to increased by 373 987 people and reach 36 508 003 in the beginning of 2017. The natural increase is expected to be positive, as the number of births will exceed the number of deaths by 131 528.

If external migration will remain on the previous year level, the population will be increased by 242 459 due to the migration reasons. It means that the number of people who move into Canada (to which they are not native) in order to settle there as permanent residents (immigrants) will prevail over the number of people who leave the country to settle permanently in another country (emigrants). According to our estimations, daily change rates of Canada population in 2016 will be the following:

- 1 084 live births average per day (45.17 in a hour).
- 724 deaths average per day (30.15 in a hour).
- 664 immigrants average per day (27.68 in a hour).

The population of Canada will be increased by 1 025 persons daily in 2016. Canada population density is 3.6 people per square kilometer as of May 2016. Density of population is calculated as permanently settled population of Canada divided by total area of the country. Total area is the sum of land and water areas within international boundaries and coastlines of Canada.

The total area of Canada is 9 984 670 km^2 according to the United Nations Statistics Division. As of the beginning of 2016 according to our estimates Canada had the following population age distribution:

15.7	68.5	15.9

☐	- percentage of population under 15
☐	- percentage of population between 15 and 64 years old
☐	- percentage of population 65+
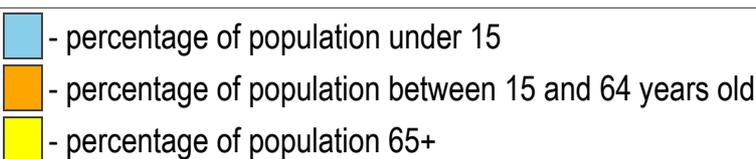
We prepared a simplified model of the population distribution pyramid which is broken down into 3 main age groups. The groups are the same as we used above: population under 15, between 15 and 64 and population which is over 65 year old.

	65+	
	15-64	
	0-14	
male		female
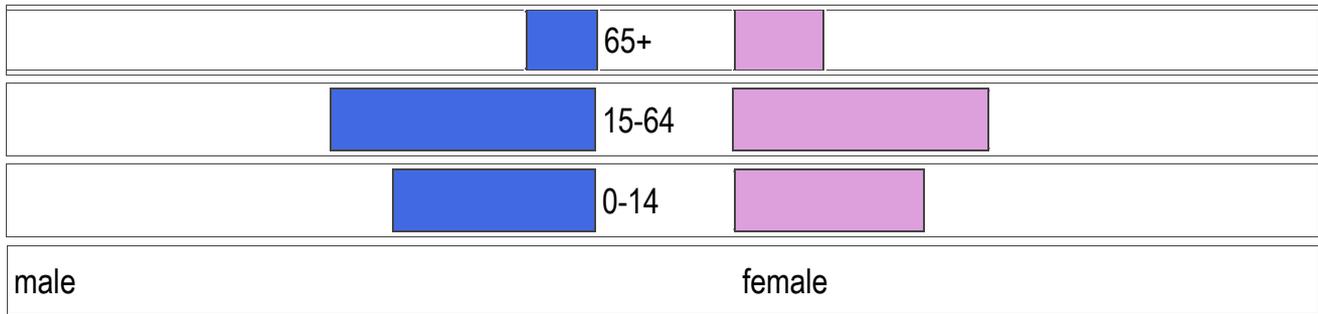
As we can see the Canada population pyramid has a contracting type. This type of pyramid is more common for highly developed countries with low birth and death rates. Usually countries with such kind of population age distribution model have long life expectancy, high level of education and good health care. Dependency ratio of population is a ratio of people who are generally not in the labor force (the dependents) to workforce of a country (the productive part of population).

The dependent part includes the population under 15 years old and people aged 65 and over.

The productive part of population accordingly consists of population between 15 and 64 years. This ratio shows the pressure on productive population produced by the dependent part of population.

The total dependency ratio of population in Canada is 46.1 %.

The value of 46.1 % is relatively low. It shows that the dependent part of population is less than a half of the working part. In other words the working population (labor force) in Canada must provide goods for itself and cover expenditure on children and aged persons.

This part of population is less than 50% of working population. The value of less than 50% means that the pressure on productive population in Canada is relatively low. Child dependency ratio is a ratio of people below working age (under 15) to workforce of a country.

Child dependency ratio in Canada is 22.9 %.

Aged dependency ratio is a ratio of people above working age (65+) to workforce of a country.

Aged dependency ratio in Canada is 23.2 %.

Life expectancy at birth is one of the most important demographic indicator. It shows the number of years a newborn infant would live assuming that birth and death rates will remain at the same level during the whole lifetime.

Total life expectancy (both sexes) at birth for Canada is 81.4 years.

This is above the average life expectancy at birth of the global population which is about 71 years (according to Population Division of the Department of Economic and Social Affairs of the UN).

Male life expectancy at birth is 78.8 years.

Female life expectancy at birth is 84.1 years.

Exercise 1. Make up a small report and give a talk in class.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	**When**	**where**	**Score**
1.				

Exercise 3. Read the article and give the main idea of the score.

In the 2006 census, Canadians could identify as being of one or more ethnicities. Percentages therefore add up to more than 100%. The most common response was "Canadian". As data is completely self-reported, and reporting individuals may have varying definitions of "Ethnic origin" (or may not know their ethnic origin), these figures should not be considered an exact record of the relative prevalence of different ethno-cultural ancestries but rather how Canadians self-identify.

Statistics Canada projects that, by 2031, approximately 28% of the population will be foreign-born. The number of people belonging to visible minority groups will double, and make up the majority of the population in Toronto and Vancouver. Counting both single and multiple responses, the most commonly identified ethnic origins were (2011): The most common ethnic origins per province are as follows (total responses; only percentages 10% or higher shown; ordered by percentage of "Canadian"):

- Quebec (7,723,525): ***Canadian*** (59.1%), ***French*** (29.1%)
- New Brunswick (735,835): ***Canadian*** (50.3%), French (27.2%), English (25.9%), Irish (21.6%), Scottish (19.9%)
- Newfoundland and Labrador (507,265): ***Canadian*** (49.0%), ***English*** (43.4%), Irish (21.8%)
- Nova Scotia (906,170): ***Canadian*** (39.1%), Scottish (31.2%), English (30.8%), Irish (22.3%), French (17.0%), German (10.8%)
- Prince Edward Island (137,375): ***Scottish*** (39.3%), Canadian (36.8%), English (31.1%), ***Irish*** (30.4%), French (21.1%)
- Ontario (12,651,795): ***Canadian*** (23.3%), English (23.1%), Scottish (16.4%), Irish (16.4%), French (10.8%)
- Alberta (3,567,980): ***English*** (24.9%), Canadian (21.8%), German (19.2%), Scottish (18.8%), Irish (15.8%), French (11.1%)
- Manitoba (1,174,345): ***English*** (21.8%), German (18.6%), Canadian (18.5%), Scottish (18.0%), ***Ukrainian*** (14.9%), Irish (13.2%), French (12.6%), North American Indian (10.6%)
- Saskatchewan (1,008,760): ***German*** (28.6%), English (24.9%), Scottish (18.9%), Canadian (18.8%), Irish (15.5%), Ukrainian (13.5%), French (12.2%), ***North American Indian*** (12.1%)
- British Columbia (4,324,455): ***English*** (27.7%), Scottish (19.3%), Canadian (19.1%), German (13.1%), ***Chinese*** (10.7%)
- Yukon (33,320): ***English*** (28.5%), Scottish (25.0%), Irish (22.0%), North American Indian (21.8%), Canadian (21.8%), German (15.6%), French (13.1%)
- Northwest Territories (40,800): ***North American Indian*** (37.0%), Scottish (13.9%), English (13.7%), Canadian (12.8%), Irish (11.9%), Inuit (11.7%)
- Nunavut (31,700): ***Inuit*** (85.4%)

Bold indicates either that this response is dominant within this province, or that this province has the highest ratio (percent). Statistics Canada identifies visible minorities in accordance with the Employment Equity Act. Statistics Canada states the "Employment Equity Act" defines visible minorities as "persons, other than Aboriginal peoples, who are non-Caucasian in race or non-white in colour.") of this response among provinces.

Language used most often at work:	**Languages used most often at home**:
- English: 78.3%	- English: 67.1%
- French: 21.7%	- French: 21.5%
- Non-official languages: 2%	- Non-official languages: 11.4%

Exercise 4. Analyze the whole information briefly in English.

ABORIGENS OF CANADA

First Nations (61%), Métis (32%), Inuit (4%), Multiple & non-Canadian North American aboriginals (3%).

The ancestors of Aboriginal peoples are believed to have migrated from Asia many thousands of years ago. They were well established here long before explorers from Europe first came to North America. Diverse, vibrant First Nations cultures were rooted in religious beliefs about their relationship to the Creator, the natural environment and each other.

Aboriginal and treaty rights are in the Canadian Constitution. Territorial rights were first guaranteed through the Royal Proclamation of 1763 by King George III, and established the basis for negotiating treaties with the newcomers – treaties that were not always fully respected.

From the 1800s until the 1980s, the federal government placed many Aboriginal children in residential schools to educate and assimilate them into mainstream Canadian culture.

The schools were poorly funded and inflicted hardship on the students; some were physically abused. Aboriginal languages and cultural practices were mostly prohibited. In 2008, Ottawa formally apologized to the former students.

In today's Canada, Aboriginal peoples enjoy renewed pride and confidence, and have made significant achievements in agriculture, the environment, business and the arts.

Today, the term *Aboriginal peoples* refers to three distinct groups:

Indian refers to all Aboriginal people who are not Inuit or Métis. In the 1970s, the term First Nations began to be used. Today, about half of First Nations people live on reserve land in about 600 communities while the other half live off-reserve, mainly in urban centres.

The **Inuit**, which means "the people" in the Inuktitut language, live in small, scattered communities across the Arctic. Their knowledge of the land, sea and wildlife enabled them to adapt to one of the harshest environments on earth.

The **Métis** are a distinct people of mixed Aboriginal and European ancestry, the majority of whom live in the Prairie provinces. They come from both French- and English-speaking backgrounds and speak their own dialect, Michif.

About 65% of the Aboriginal people are First Nations, while 30% are Métis and 4% Inuit.

John Buchan, the 1st Baron Tweedsmuir, was a popular Governor General of Canada (1935-40). Immigrant groups, he said, "should retain their individuality and each make its contribution to the national character". Each could learn "from the other, and … while they cherish their own special loyalties and traditions, they cherish not less that new loyalty and tradition which springs from their union".

Aboriginal peoples in present-day Canada include the First Nations, Inuit, and Métis, the latter being a mixed-blood people who originated in the mid-17th-century when First Nations and Inuit people married European settlers. The first inhabitants of North America migrated from Siberia by way of the Bering land bridge and arrived at least 15,000 years ago, though increasing evidence suggests an even earlier arrival. The Paleo-Indian archeological sites at Old Crow Flats and Bluefish Caves are two of the oldest sites of human habitation in Canada.

The characteristics of Canadian Aboriginal societies included permanent settlements, agriculture, complex societal hierarchies, and trading networks. Some of these cultures had collapsed by the time European explorers arrived in the late 15th and early 16th centuries and have only been discovered through archeological investigations. The aboriginal population at the time of the first European settlements is estimated to have been between 200,000 and two million, with a figure of 500,000 accepted by Canada's Royal Commission on Aboriginal Peoples. As a consequence of contact with European diseases, Canada's aboriginal peoples suffered from repeated outbreaks of newly introduced infectious diseases, such as influenza, measles, and smallpox, resulting in 40% to 80% population decrease in the centuries after the European arrival. Although not without conflict, European Canadians' early interactions with First Nations and Inuit populations were relatively peaceful.

The Crown and Aboriginal peoples began interactions during the European colonialization period, though, the Inuit, in general, had more limited interaction with European settlers. From the late 18th century, European Canadians encouraged Aboriginals to assimilate into their own culture.

These attempts reached a climax in the late 19th and early 20th centuries with forced integration and relocations. The first known attempt at European colonization began when Norsemen settled briefly at L'Anse aux Meadows in Newfoundland around 1000 A.D. No further European exploration occurred until 1497, when Italian seafarer John Cabot explored and claimed Canada's Atlantic coast in the name of King Henry VII of England. Then Basque and Portuguese Mariners established seasonal whaling and fishing outposts along the Atlantic coast in the early 16th century.

In 1534, French explorer Jacques Cartier explored the Saint Lawrence River, where, on July 24, he planted a 10-metre (33 ft) cross bearing the words "Long Live the King of France" and took possession of the territory (known as the colony of Canada) in the name of King Francis I.

In 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, by the royal prerogative of Queen Elizabeth I, founded St. John's, Newfoundland, as the first North American English colony. French explorer Samuel de Champlain arrived in 1603 and established the first permanent European settlements at Port Royal (in 1605) and Quebec City (in 1608). Among the colonists of New France, Canadiens extensively settled the Saint Lawrence River valley and Acadians settled the present-day Maritimes, while fur traders and Catholic missionaries explored the Great Lakes,Hudson Bay, and the Mississippi watershed to Louisiana. The Beaver Wars broke out in the mid-17th-century over control of the North American fur trade.

Roland G. Robertson suggests that during the late 1630s, smallpox killed over half of the Wyandot (Huron), who controlled most of the early North American fur trade in the area of New France. In 1871 there was an enumeration of the aboriginal population within the limits of Canada at the time, showing a total of only 102,358 individuals. According to the 2011 Canadian Census, Aboriginal people numbered at 1,400,685, or 4.3% of the country's total population.

New France

The European population grew slowly under French rule, thus remained relatively low as growth was largely achieved through natural births, rather than by immigration. Most of the French were farmers, and the rate of population growth among the settlers themselves was very high.

The women had about 30 % more children than comparable women who remained in France. Yves Landry says, "*Canadians had an exceptional diet for their time*".

The 1666 census of New France was the first census conducted in North America. It was organized by Jean Talon, the first Intendant of New France, between 1665 and 1666.

According to Talon's census there were 3,215 people in New France, comprising 538 separate families. The census showed a great difference in the number of men at 2,034 versus 1,181 women.

By the early 1700s the New France settlers were well established along the Saint Lawrence River and Acadian Peninsula with a population around 15,000 to 16,000. Mainly due to natural increase and modest immigration from Northwest France the population of New France increased to 55,000 according to the last French census of 1754. This was an increases from 42,701 in 1730.

British Canada

Distribution of the population in Canada for the years 1851, 1871, 1901, 1921 and 1941.

During the late 18th and early 19th century Canada under British rule experienced strong population growth. In the wake of the 1775 invasion of Canada by the newly formed Continental Army during the American Revolutionary War, approximately 50,000 of the 70,000 United Empire Loyalists fled to British North America, a large portion of whom migrated to Nova Scotia and New Brunswick in 1784: 20,000 to Nova Scotia and 14,000 to New Brunswick. The remainder went to England and the Caribbean. An additional 30,000 Americans, called "Late Loyalists", were lured into Ontario in the 1790s by the promise of land and swearing loyalty to the Crow.

Lower Canada's population had reached approximately 553,000, with Upper Canada reaching about 237,000 individuals by 1831. The Irish Potato Famine of the 1840s had significantly increased the pace of Irish immigration to Prince Edward Island and the Province of Canada.

By 1851, the population of the Maritime colonies also reached roughly 533,000. To the west British Columbia had about 55,000 individuals by 1851.

Beginning in the late 1850s, the immigration of Chinese into the Colony of Vancouver Island and Colony of British Columbia peaked with the onset of the Fraser Canyon Gold Rush.

By 1861, as a result of natural births and the Great Migration of Canada from the British Isles, the Province of Canada population increased to 2.5 million inhabitants. Newfoundland's population by 1861 reached approximately 125,000 individuals.

Post-Confederation

The population has increased every year since the establishment of the Dominion of Canada in 1867; however, the population of Newfoundland was not included in post-confederation tallies prior to its entry into confederation as Canada's tenth province in 1949. The first national census of the country was taken in 1871, with a population count around 3,689,000.[30] The year with the least population growth (in real terms) was 1882–1883, when only 30,000 new individuals were enumerated.

Births & immigration in Canada from 1850 to 2000

The 1911 census was a detailed enumeration of the population showing a count of 7,206,643 individuals.[31] This was an increase of 34% over the 1901 census of 5,371,315.

The year with the most population growth was during the peak of the Post-World War II baby boom in 1956-1957, when the population grew by over 529,000, in a single twelve-month period.

The Canadian baby boom defined from 1947 to 1966, saw more than 400,000 babies born.

The 1996 census attempted to count every person in the country, totaling a population count of 28,846,761. This was a 5.7% increase over the 1991 census of 27,296,859.

The 2001 census had a total population count of 30,007,094. In contrast, the official Statistics Canada population estimate for 2001 was 31,021,300. Canada's total population enumerated by the 2006 census was 31,612,897.

This count was lower than the official 1 July 2006 population estimate of 32,623,490 people.

90 % of the population growth in 2001-2006 was concentrated in the main metropolitan areas.

The 2011 census was the 15th decennial census with a total population count of 33,476,688 up 5.9% from 2006. On average, censuses have been taken every five years since 1905.

Censuses are required to be taken at least every ten years as mandated in section 8 of the Constitution Act, 1867. Canada's current annual population growth rate is 1.238%, or a daily increase of 1,137 individuals. Between 1867 and 2009 Canada's population grew by 979%.

It will have taken 144 years to do so. Canada had the highest net migration rate (0.61%) of all G-8 member countries between 1994 and 2004. Natural growth accounts for an annual increase of 137,626 persons, at a yearly rate of 0.413%. Between 2001 and 2006, there were 1,446,080 immigrants and 237,418 emigrants, resulting in a net migration of just over 1.2 million persons. Since 2001, immigration has ranged between 221,352 and 262,236 immigrants per annum.

Exercise 1. Digest the information and write a small essay on the topic.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Population	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

Exercise 3. Analyze the information, which is in the highlight, and use it in practice.

Irreligious Canadians include atheists, agnostics, and humanists. The surveys may also include those who are spiritual, deists, and pantheists. In 1991 they made up 12.3% of the Canadian population. In the 2001 census this number increased to 16.2% and increased again in 2011 to 23.9%.

Some non-religious Canadians have formed associations, such as the Humanist Association of Canada, Toronto Secular Alliance or the Centre for Inquiry Canada, as well as a number of University Campus Groups. Sikhs are the largest religious group among Indo-Canadians.

Census data showed Neopaganism grew by 281 per cent between 1991 and 2001, making it the fastest growing religion in Canada during that decade.

The first official Jain temple was established in Toronto in 1988.

There is a small, rapidly growing Buddhist community in Canada. At the 2001 census, 300,346 Canadians identified their religion as Buddhist, about 1% of the country's population.

Buddhism has been practiced in Canada for more than a century and in recent years has grown dramatically. Buddhism arrived in Canada with the arrival of Chinese laborers in the territories during the 19th century. Modern Buddhism in Canada traces to Japanese immigration during the late 19th century. The first Japanese Buddhist temple in Canada was built at the Ishikawa Hotel in Vancouver in 1905. Over time, the Japanese Jōdo Shinshū branch of Buddhism became the prevalent form of Buddhism in Canada and established the largest Buddhist organization in Canada.

Hindus in Canada generally come from one of two groups. The first is primarily made up of Indian immigrants who began arriving in British Columbiaabout 100 years ago and continue to immigrate today The second major group of Hindus immigrated from Sri Lanka, going back to the 1940s, when a few hundred Sri Lankan Tamils migrated to Canada.

Exercise 4. Analyze the figures on the chart.
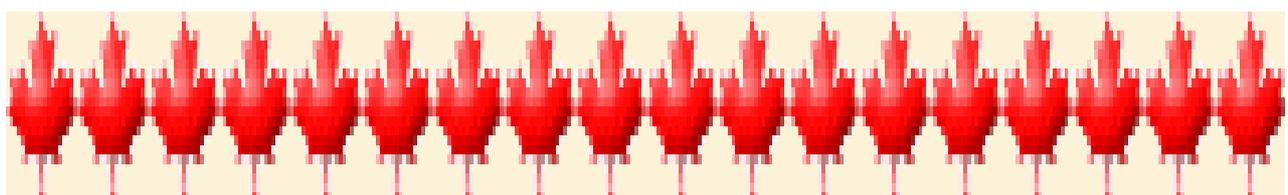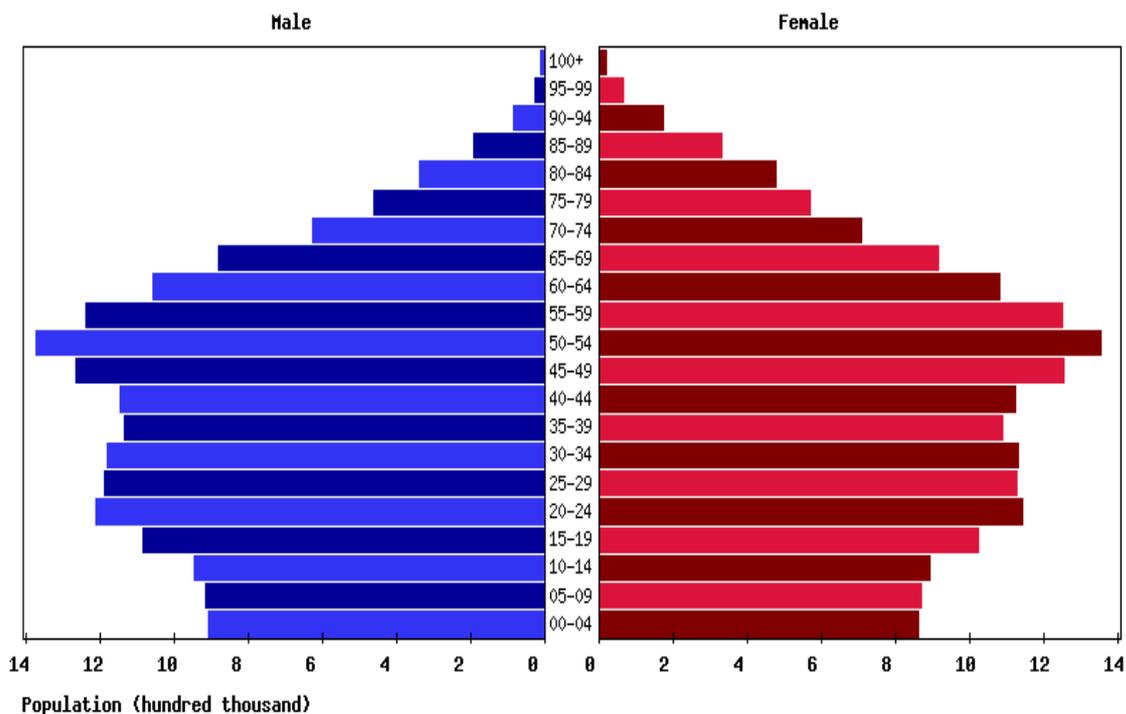
DEMOGRAPHY OF CANADA

Canada met a milestone that demographers have seen coming for a long time. In the year ended in July, the population of people 65 and older is now larger than the number of children under 15. There were 5,780,900 Canadians 65 and older on July 1.

That compares to an under-15 population of 5,749,400. In percentage terms, 16.1 % of Canadians were in the 65-and-over group in July, with under-15s accounting for just 16 % of the population.

The cohort of people 65 and up isn't just large in absolute terms, but their ranks are growing faster than the rest of us, too. The population growth rate for the over-64 set increased by 3.5 per cent during the year, four times faster than the population at large.

But by international standards, Canada's population of 65-and-overs is still relatively small, and lower than any other G7 nation. In Japan, for example, 26 % of the population is over age 64.

The bulge of aging baby boomers isn't increasing evenly across Canada, however. Provincially, New Brunswick had the highest proportion of over-64s, at 19 % of the province's total population. Conversely, the lowest proportion in Canada was in Nunavut, at 3.7 %. Of the provinces, Alberta had the lowest proportion at 11.6 %.

"You can't immigrate your way out of a demographic bubble", – Economist Mike Moffatt

Nationally, there were 1.01 seniors for every child in Canada under age 15 in July. The ratio was highest in Nova Scotia at 1.35 and lowest in Nunavut at 0.12. Across all age groups, four provinces are making up a bigger and bigger share of Canada's total population. In July, 86.3 % of people in Canada lived in Ontario, Quebec, British Columbia and Alberta. That breaks down as follows: Ontario, 38.5 %, Quebec, 23 %. B.C., 13.1 %, Alberta, 11.7 %.

Ontario is still Canada's most populous province, with 13,792,100 people, Statistics Canada said. Quebec is the second most populated province at 8,263,600 people.

The implications of the demographic rebalancing underway are massive, assistant professor Mike Moffatt of the Richard Ivey School of Business in London, said: "Immigration helps a little bit on the margins, but overall the aging is going to happen". Moffatt said. "You can't immigrate your way out of a demographic bubble." The economic impacts of that bubble are already being felt. The number of Canadian women in the workforce into their late 60s has tripled in the last 15 years, Moffatt notes, something that's already changing the makeup of the workforce in other developed countries.

Fortunately, Canada is experiencing the baby boomer bulge comparatively late, so we can learn from the experiences of other countries in how to deal with accompanying problems.

"As the Canadian population gets older, we've got more and more retired people," Moffatt warns. "That puts pressure on the health system and pension system because there's a smaller cohort of working age people to support that."

According to the 2011 census, the country's largest self-reported ethnic origin is Canadian (accounting for 32% of the population), followed by English(21%), French (15.8%), Scottish (15.1%), Irish (13.9%), German (10.2%), Italian (4.6%), Chinese (4.3%), First Nations (4.0%), Ukrainian (3.9%), and Dutch (3.3%). There are 600 recognized First Nations governments or bands, encompassing a total of 1,172,790 people. Canada's aboriginal population is growing at almost twice the national rate, and four % of Canada's population claimed aboriginal identity in 2006. Another 16.2 % of the population belonged to a non-aboriginal visible minority.

In 2011, the largest visible minority groups were South Asian (4.0%), Chinese (3.9%) and Black (2.5%). Between 2001 and 2011, the visible minority population rose by 27.2 %.

In 1961, less than 2 % of Canada's population (about 300,000 people) were members of visible minority groups. By 2011, almost one in five (19.8%) were foreign-born, with nearly 60 % of new immigrants coming from Asia (including the Middle East). The leading sources of immigrants to Canada were China, the Philippines and India. According to Statistics Canada, visible minority groups could account for a third of the Canadian population by 2031.

PAST WORLD WAR II CHANGES IN DEMOGRAPHY

When Canadians move from one province to another, it tends to be directly related to economic conditions. This was most apparent from 1977-1981 when the resource boom in Alberta caused a large influx there from other provinces. But falling international oil prices in the early 1980s led to a reversal of this trend as Canadians moved east, especially to Ontario. In recent years, those moving to another province have tended to head to British Columbia.

Changes in the size and age structure of Canada's population are a combination of birth rates, death rates and net migration (immigration minus emigration).

These changes can have both long- and short-term effects on society, altering things like the demand for education, housing, health-care services and age-related products (tennis and golf equipment).

Estimates of these changes show social and economic planners how many worker (and consumers and taxpayers) will be available in the coming years.

Canada's population future is expected to be one of slow growth and an aging population. This is in part because the birth rate in Canada (the number of births per 1,000 people) has been declining steadily since the 1950s. (In 1954 there were 28,5 births per 1,000; in 1996, there were 12.7).

At the same time, the death rate in Canada has remained relatively steady, but is expected to climb as a larger percentage of the population (the Baby Boomers) grows older.

Although the benefits of good healthcare mean that Canadians are living longer, by the year 2016, the birth and death rates are expected to be so close that the natural increase (the difference between births and deaths 0 will only be 0.9%. By 2030 natural increase is expected to drop to 0, and in the years following 2030 the number of deaths may exceed the number of births.

In 1993, the median age of the population (the point in the age distribution where half of the population is older and the other half is younger) was 33.9 years; by 2016 the median age will be 40,4 years. As the population ages, any benefits of an older, experienced and stable workforce will give way to a growing ratio of seniors to working-age Canadians.

This could mean that a smaller proportion of the population will be producing income to support both economic growth and social programs. Planners are already making changes in some programs in order to lessen the pressure of increased demands in the coming years.

As population growth due to natural increase slows, international migration will become an important source (if not the only source) of growth. The number of immigrants as a percentage of the total population has fluctuated over the years – in 1961, it was 4% in 1981 5% and by the 1990s the figure was closer to 8%. In 1992 and 1993, the increase in population through net migration was actually higher than growth due to natural increase.

These population trends, particularly the aging population and the possible increased need for migration, will be major factors in planning Canada's social and economic future in the 21st century.

A 1994 survey of   families and children revealed that the majority of Canadian children get a healthy start in life. Almost all mothers received some prenatal care, with 93% under the supervision of a doctor. Most women avoided known risk behaviours during pregnancy (smoking, drinking and use of over-the-counter or prescription drugs), although 20% smoked throughout their pregnancies.

Only 18% of newborns needed special medical care immediately after birth, and for the majority of them (82%), the care ended within 7 days. In addition, 75% of the children under 2 in the survey were or had been breastfed by their mothers, a practice that boosts the babies' immune systems.

"Life expectancy at birth" is average number of years a person is likely to live, based on age and gender specific death rates. Between 1931 and 1978, the life expectancy of Canadian men and women increased, however Canadian women made faster gains than men.

In 1931, Canadian women could expect to live approximately 2.1 years longer than men; by 1978, the gap in the life expectancy of Canadian men and women has narrowed. By 1995, women expected to outlive men by only 5.9 years.

The difference in life expectancy is a result of a combination of biological, social and behavioural circumstances. In most animal species, females tend to outlive males. Human beings are no different, except in societies where women's situation is much poorer than men's. Women's biological advantage is further improved by social factors and behaviour. Traditionally, men have had more dangerous occupation, engaged in riskier behaviours and tended to smoke and drink more than women.

In addition, women have generally been more likely to take care of their health.

Social and behaviour changes in the last 20 years mean that some of these assumptions are no longer valid. An increase in smoking among women has led to a corresponding increase in deaths from heart disease and lung cancer, and a higher percentage of women than men are overweight.

In addition accidents in occupations such as mining, construction and transportation have decreased over time, enhancing the longevity of the men who hold those types of jobs.

This decrease in the life expectancy or mortality gap between men and women is happening not only in Canada, but also throughout the industrialized world.

Statistics Canada did a survey of people "living with relatives" and found that in 1991 nearly one million people did so. Many lived with a parent, a sibling or a child and were considered to be an economic but not a nuclear or census family. Immigrants in general and older immigrant women in particular were more likely to have this type of living arrangements: 5% of them lived with relatives compared to 3% of the Canadian – born population.

A comparison of average family income over the past three years shows little or no real growth after adjustment for inflation. A modest increase of almost $1,000 between 1993 and 1994 was not matched in 1995 when the average family income stayed at $ 55,247. Inflation – adjusted figures from family income since 1978 show that the peak year for average family income was 1989 ($ 58,024). Family incomes dropped until 1993 when the small 1993 – 4 increases occurred.

The accepted definition for unpaid work is "unpaid activities that produce goods and services that could be exchanged in the market place". This type of activity includes domestic chores (cooking, cleaning, laundry, repairs and maintenance etc.); looking after children or adults; shopping and household management; volunteer work; helping friends, relatives and others; and transportation to and from these activities. Attempts have been made to value this unpaid work for inclusion in national statistics such as the System of National Accounts, as well as to acquire sufficient data to adjust taxation, pension or income support programs to recognize the contribution of unpaid work to the social and economic well-being of Canadians.

The 1992 survey found that adult Canadians spent 25 billion hours a year in unpaid work. (1,164 hours per adult). On average, women spent 78% more time on unpaid work than men did.

Factors affecting trends in unpaid work included fewer people in the household, although the houses themselves tended to be bigger and there was more income to manage.

Surprisingly, the increase in labour-saving appliances has not resulted in a decrease in time spent on the household work – higher standards of cleanliness mean that we tend to wash clothes and linens more often now that it's easier. Job sharing is defined as an arrangement in which employees (usually two), with the approval of their employer, share a single job on a continuing basis.

The arrangement is usually a voluntary one initiated by the employees.

While the concept has been around since the 1970s and is more popular in Europe, Statistics Canada has found that the job sharing option is an attractive one for women in the part-time workforce.

Shared jobs differed from regular part-time jobs in that they were more likely to be permanent and unionised, and often had more benefits and higher pay than regular part-time positions.

The people who shared jobs were more likely than not to be university-educated, work in a profession (40% and have children at home. Indeed, employees noted that the primary appeal of job sharing was a decrease in stress and a better balance between work and family duties.

The low income cut-off level is set by Statistics Canada, using a standard that families or individuals who spend 54.7% or more of their pre-tax income on food, clothing and shelter are in financial difficulty. The minimum income level necessary to avoid financial hardship varies according to changes in the cost of living, family size and place of residence. For instance, in 1995 the poverty line for a family of 3 living in Vancouver was $26232; for a family of 3 living in a rural area it was $18129.

While there is no official definition of "poverty line" there is another way of defining low income (or the poverty line) is to take 50% of the median family income considered to be necessary to cover a family's needs. Defining a family's "needs" is not easy. Statistics Canada reports that gender difference continue to persist in the world of work as women choose very different occupations from men and tend to cluster in a smaller number of occupations.

In 1993, over 80% of all female full time paid employees were in one of six types of occupations: clerical (32%); management and administration (16%); nursing and therapy (11%); services other than protective services (10%); teaching (8%); and sales (6%).

Men's occupations were more diversified: only 60% occupied the top six in 1993, and only two of the top six types of work were shared with women. The breakdown was: management and administration (18%); product fabricating and repair (14%); sales (8%) natural sciences, math or computer systems (7%); transportation equipment operation (7%); and construction (7%). In addition, men were more likely than women to have supervisory or managerial positions.

As social values changed over more than 50 years, Canada became a more flexible and open society. Many took advantage of expanding secondary and postsecondary educational opportunities and a growing number of women entered the professional work force.

Most Canadians of Asian descent had in the past been denied the vote in federal and provincial elections. In 1948 the last of these, the Japanese-Canadians, gained the right to vote. Aboriginal people were granted the vote in 1960. Today every citizen over the age of 18 may vote.

Canada welcomed thousands of refugees from Communist oppression, including about 37,000 who escaped Soviet tyranny in Hungary in 1956. With the Communist victory in the Vietnam War in 1975, many Vietnamese fled, including over 50,000 who sought refuge in Canada.

The idea of multiculturalism, as a result of 19th- and 20th-century immigration, gained a new impetus. By the 1960s, one-third of Canadians had origins that were neither British nor French, and took pride in preserving their distinct culture in the Canadian fabric. Today, diversity enriches Canadians' lives, particularly in our cities.

Immigration to Canada by Province, July 2015 − July 2016
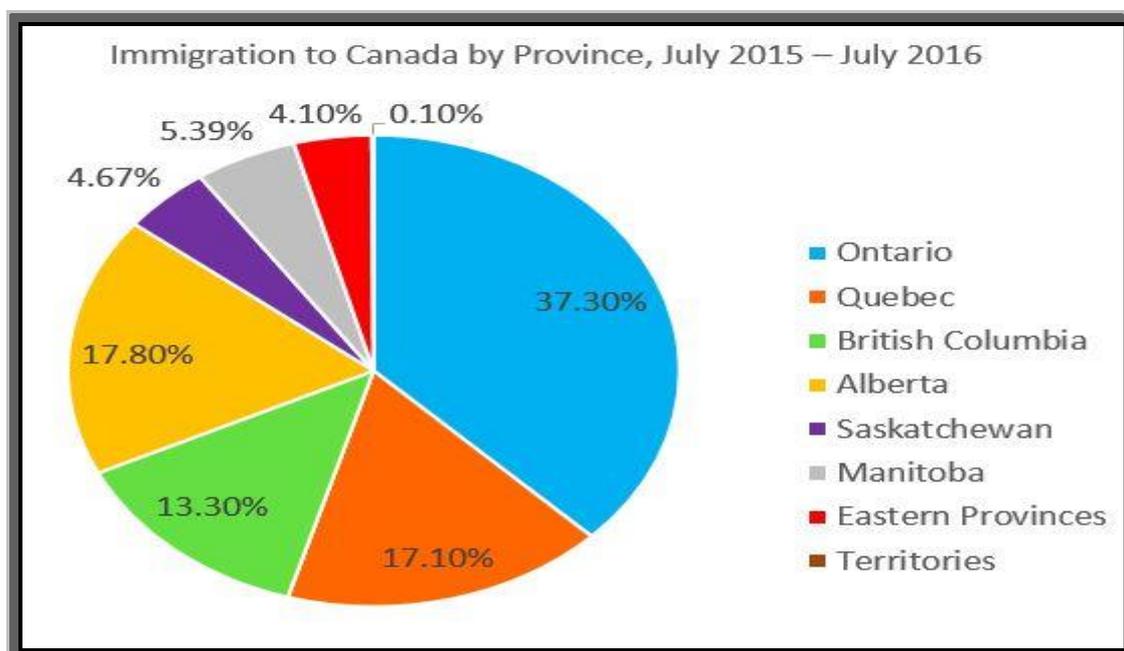
THE EQUALITY OF WOMEN & MEN

In Canada, men and women are equal under the law. Canada's openness and generosity do not extend to barbaric cultural practices that tolerate spousal abuse, "honour killings," female genital mutilation, forced marriage or other gender-based violence. Those guilty of these crimes are severely punished under Canada's criminal laws. In Canada, rights come with responsibilities. These include:

▪ *Obeying the law* – One of Canada's founding principles is the rule of law. Individuals and governments are regulated by laws and not by arbitrary actions. No person or group is above the law.

▪ *Taking responsibility for oneself and one's family* – Getting a job, taking care of one's family and working hard in keeping with one's abilities are important Canadian values. Work contributes to personal dignity and self-respect, and to Canada's prosperity.

▪ *Serving on a jury* – When called to do so, you are legally required to serve. Serving on a jury is a privilege that makes the justice system work as it depends on impartial juries made up of citizens.

▪ *Voting in elections* –The right to vote comes with a responsibility to vote in federal, provincial or territorial and local elections.

▪ *Helping others in the community* – Millions of volunteers freely donate their time to help others without pay – helping people in need, assisting at your child's school, volunteering at a food bank or other charity, or encouraging newcomers to integrate. Volunteering is an excellent way to gain useful skills and develop friends and contacts.

▪ *Protecting and enjoying our heritage and environment* – Every citizen has a role to play in avoiding waste and pollution while protecting Canada's natural, cultural and architectural heritage for future generations.

Canada is known around the world as a strong and free country. Canadians are proud of their unique identity. We have inherited the oldest continuous constitutional tradition in the world. We are the only constitutional monarchy in North America. Our institutions uphold a commitment to *Peace, Order, and Good Government*, a key phrase in Canada's original constitutional document in 1867, the *British North America Act*.

A belief in ordered liberty, enterprise, hard work and fair play have enabled Canadians to build a prosperous society in a rugged environment from our Atlantic shores to the Pacific Ocean and to the Arctic Circle – so much so that poets and songwriters have hailed Canada as the **Great Dominion.**

The 2011 Canadian census counted a total population of 33,476,688, an increase of around 5.9 % over the 2006 figure. By December 2012, Statistics Canada reported a population of over 35 million, signifying the fastest growth rate of any G8 nation. Between 1990 and 2008, the population increased by 5.6 million, equivalent to 20.4 % overall growth.

The main drivers of population growth are immigration and, to a lesser extent, natural growth. Canada has one of the highest per-capita immigration rates in the world, driven mainly by economic policy and, to a lesser extent family reunification. The Canadian public as-well as the major political parties supports the current level of immigration.

In 2010, a record 280,636 people immigrated to Canada. The Canadian government anticipated between 280,000 and 305,000 new permanent residents in 2016, a similar number of immigrants as in recent years. New immigrants settle mostly in major urban areas like Toronto, Montreal and Vancouver.

Canada also accepts large numbers of refugees, accounting for over 10 % of annual global refugee resettlements.

Exercise 1. Demonstrate the past World War II changes.

Exercise 2. Differentiate the equality of women and men.

Exercise 3. Compare Canada population history.

CANADA POPULATION HISTORY

Year	Population	Growth Rate	Year	Population	Growth Rate
			1988	26 730 509	1.40 %
1961	18 102 577	2.25 %	1989	27 107 777	1.41 %
1962	18 477 793	2.07 %	1990	27 479 479	1.37 %
1963	18 833 484	1.92 %	1991	27 838 271	1.31 %
1964	19 178 326	1.83 %	1992	28 183 973	1.24 %
1965	19 521 442	1.79 %	1993	28 517 382	1.18 %
1966	19 867 272	1.77 %	1994	28 838 372	1.13 %
1967	20 215 226	1.75 %	1995	29 147 650	1.07 %
1968	20 564 238	1.73 %	1996	29 445 215	1.02 %
1969	20 914 130	1.70 %	1997	29 731 022	0.97 %
1970	21 264 214	1.67 %	1998	30 008 120	0.93 %
1971	21 614 769	1.65 %	1999	30 282 682	0.91 %
1972	21 966 168	1.63 %	2000	30 561 060	0.92 %
1973	22 315 371	1.59 %	2001	30 846 624	0.93 %
1974	22 656 008	1.53 %	2002	31 139 958	0.95 %
1975	22 981 941	1.44 %	2003	31 442 583	0.97 %
1976	23 290 275	1.34 %	2004	31 757 588	1.00 %
1977	23 581 871	1.25 %	2005	32 087 458	1.04 %
1978	23 859 375	1.18 %	2006	32 433 885	1.08 %
1979	24 126 271	1.12 %	2007	32 796 856	1.12 %
1980	24 386 691	1.08 %	2008	33 172 766	1.15 %
1981	24 642 157	1.05 %	2009	33 554 908	1.15 %
1982	24 893 013	1.02 %	2010	33 936 366	1.14 %
1983	25 145 079	1.01 %	2011	34 313 039	1.11 %
1984	25 409 696	1.05 %	2012	34 684 028	1.08 %
	25 697 455	1.13 %	2013	35 049 382	1.05 %
1986	26 014 758	1.23 %	2014	35 409 203	1.03 %
1987	26 361 662	1.33 %	2015	35 763 860	1.00 %

RELIGIONS

The early French settlers brought the Roman Catholic faith to Canada, and Catholics are the nation's largest religious group today. Canada is almost exclusively a Christian country. Catholics in 1981 formed 47.3% of the population, compared with 41.2% for Protestants.

The remaining population was divided among those with no religious preference (7.4%), Eastern Orthodox (1.5%), Jewish (1.2%), and other small groups (1.3%). While Catholics make up the single largest denomination, only two provinces were predominately Catholic – Quebec with 88.2% of its population and New Brunswick with 53.9%. All other provinces had a Protestant majority.

People with no religious preference formed a tally high percentage throughout western Canada – 11.7% in Alberta, 20.9% in British Columbia, and 20.3% in the Yukon.

The 1981 census data indicated that nearly 50% of all Catholics in the country lived in Quebec. Similarly, approximately 50% of ail Protestants, Eastern Orthodox, and Jews, as well as one third of those professing no religion, lived in Ontario.

British Columbia had about 32% of all those people with no religious preference. The largest single Protestant denominations were the United Church of Canada (3.8 million) and the Anglican Church (2.4 million). Over 40% of both of these groups lived in the province of Ontario. Other major Protestant groups in Canada include Presbyterians, Lutherans, and Baptists. Canada also has about 300,000 Jews, about 100,000 Muslims, and growing numbers of Buddhists, Hindus, and Sinks.

Christianity is the largest religion in Canada, with the Catholic Church having the most adherents.

Christians, representing 67.3% of the population, are followed by people having no religion with 23.9% of the total population. Islam is the second largest religion in Canada, practised by 3.2% of the population. Rates of religious adherence are steadily decreasing.

The preamble to the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms refers to God and the monarch carries the title of "Defender of the Faith". However, Canada has no official religion, and support for religious pluralism and freedom of religion is an important part of Canada's political culture.

Before the European colonization Aboriginal religions were largely animistic, including an intense reverence for spirits and nature. The French colonization beginning in the 17th century established a Roman Catholic francophone population in Acadia and in New France later Lower Canada, now Nova Scotia and Quebec. It has been followed by a British colonization that brought Anglicans and other Protestants to Upper Canada, now Ontario.

With Christianity in decline after having once been central and integral to Canadian culture and daily life, Canada has become a post-Christian, secularstate.The majority of Canadians consider religion to be unimportant in their daily lives, but still believe in God. The practice of religion is now generally considered a private matter throughout society and the state.

Canada today has no official church, and the government is officially committed to religious pluralism. While the Canadian government's official ties to religion, specifically Christianity are few, the Preamble to the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms make reference to "the supremacy of God".The national anthem in both official languages also refers to God.

Nevertheless, the rise of irreligion within the country and influx of non-Christian peoples has led to a greater separation of government and religion, demonstrated in forms like "Christmas holidays" being called "winter festivals" in public schools. Some religious schools are government-funded as per Section 29 of the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms.

Canada is a Commonwealth realm in which the head of state is shared with 15 other countries.

As such Canada follows the United Kingdom's succession laws for its monarch which bar Roman Catholics from inheriting the throne. Within Canada, the Queen's title includes the phrases "By the Grace of God" and "Defender of the Faith." Christmas and Easter are nationwide holidays, and while Jews, Muslims, and other religious groups are allowed to take their holy days off work, they do not share the same official recognition.

In 1957, the Parliament declared Thanksgiving "a day of general thanksgiving to almighty God for the bountiful harvest with which Canada has been blessed".

In some parts of the country Sunday shopping is still banned, but this is steadily becoming less common. There was an ongoing battle in the late 20th century to have religious garb accepted throughout Canadian society, mostly focused on Sikh turbans. Eventually the Royal Canadian Mounted Police, the Canadian Armed Forces and other federal government agencies accepted members wearing turbans.

Canada is religiously diverse, encompassing a wide range of beliefs and customs. Canada has no official church, and the government is officially committed to religious pluralism. Freedom of religion in Canada is a constitutionally protected right, allowing individuals to assemble and worship without limitation or interference. The practice of religion is now generally considered a private matter throughout society and the state. With Christianity in decline after having once been central and integral to Canadian culture and daily life, Canada has become a post-Christian, secular state.

The majority of Canadians consider religion to be unimportant in their daily lives, but still believe in God. According to the 2011 census, 67.3% of Canadians identify as Christian; of these, Roman Catholics make up the largest group, accounting for 38.7% of the population.

The largest Protestant denomination is the United Church of Canada (accounting for 6.1% of Canadians), followed by Anglicans (5.0%), and Baptists(1.9%). Secularization has been growing since the 1960s. In 2011, 23.9% declared no religious affiliation, compared to 16.5% in 2001.

The remaining 8.8% are affiliated with non-Christian religions, the largest of which are Islam (3.2%) and Hinduism (1.5%).In the Canada 2011 National Household Survey, 67% of the Canadian population list Roman Catholicism or Protestantism or another Christian denomination as their religion, considerably less than 10 years before in the Canada 2001 Census, where 77% of the population listed a Christian religion. Representing one out of three Canadians, the Roman Catholic Church in Canada is by far the country's largest single denomination. Those who listed no religion account for 24% of total respondents. In 2001 in British Columbia, however, 35% of respondents reported no religion – more than any single denomination and more than all Protestants combined. In the recent years there have been substantial rises in non-Christian religions in Canada. From the 1991 to 2011, Islam grew by 316%, Hinduism 217%, Sikhism 209%, and Buddhism124%.

The growth of non-Christian religions expressed as a percentage of Canada's population rose from 4% in 1991 to 8% in 2011. In terms of the ratio of non-Christians to Christians, it rose from 21 Christians (95% of religious population) to 1 non-Christian (5% of religious population) in 1991 to 8 Christians (89%) to 1 non-Christian (11%) in 2011, a rise of 135% of the ratio of non-Christians to Christians, or a decline of 6.5% of Christians to non-Christians, in 20 years.

Religion in Canada (2011) (National Household Survey)
Roman Catholicism (38.7%)
Other Christian (28.5%)
Non-religious (23.9%)
Islam (3.2%)
Hinduism (1.5%)
Sikhism (1.4%)
Buddhism (1.1%)
Judaism (1.0%)
Other religions (0.6%)

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords and phrases that best convey the gist of the information.
Exercise 2. Conclude the religious expansion in Canada.

Exercise 3. Remember the facts.

About four-fifths of the population lives within 150 kilometres (93 mi) of the contiguous USA border. Approximately 50 % of Canadians live in urban areas concentrated along the Quebec City – Windsor Corridor, with an additional 30 % living along the British Columbia Lower Mainland, and the Calgary – Edmonton Corridor in Alberta. Canada spans latitudinally from the 83rd parallel north to the 41st parallel north, and approximately 95% of the population is found below the 55th parallel north.

In common with many other developed countries, Canada is experiencing a demographic shift towards an older population, with more retirees and fewer people of working age.

In 2006, the average age was 39.5 years; by 2011, it had risen to approximately 39.9 years. As of 2013, the average life expectancy for Canadians is 81 years. The majority of Canadians (69.9%) live in family households, 26.8% report living alone, and those living with unrelated persons reported at 3.7%. The average size of a household in 2006 was 2.5 people.

Exercise 4. Read the article on diversity in Canada.

The majority of Canadians were born in this country and this has been true since the 1800s.

However, Canada is often referred to as a *land of immigrants* because, over the past 200 years, millions of newcomers have helped to build and defend our way of life.

Many ethnic and religious groups live and work in peace as proud Canadians. The largest groups are the English, French, Scottish, Irish, German, Italian, Chinese, Aboriginal, Ukrainian, Dutch, South Asian and Scandinavian. Since the 1970s, most immigrants have come from Asian countries.

Non-official languages are widely spoken in Canadian homes. Chinese languages are the second most-spoken at home, after English, in two of Canada's biggest cities. In Vancouver, 13% of the population speak Chinese languages at home; in Toronto, the number is 7%.
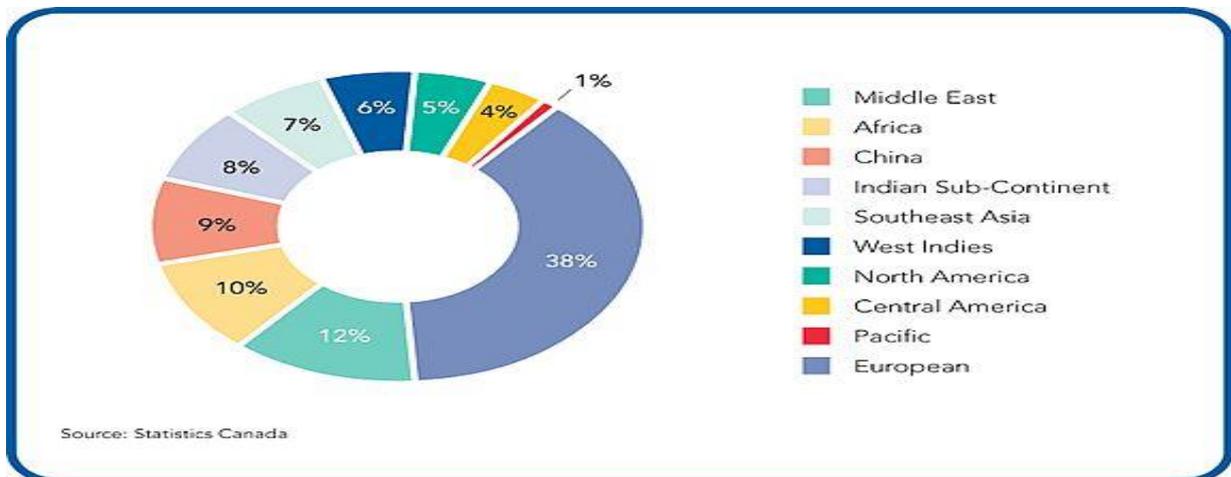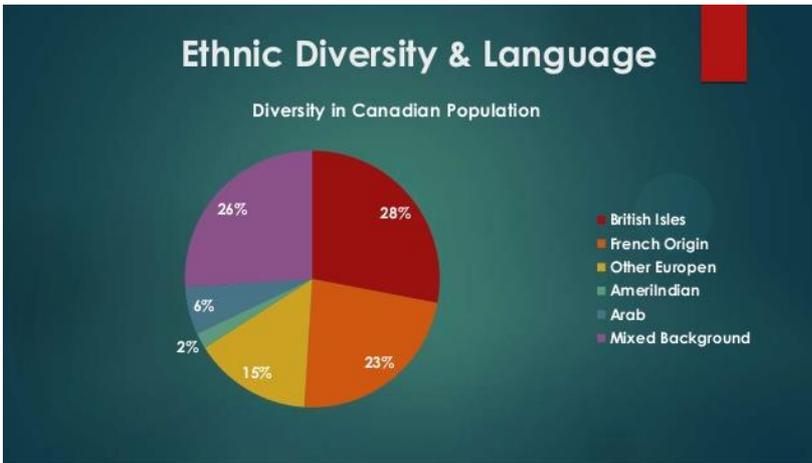
Immigrants, by place of birth, 2016

Exercise 5. Analyze the figures in the table.

Province/Territory	Christians	Province/Territory	Muslims
Yukon	46.16%	Ontario	3.1%
Quebec	82.27%	Alberta	1.6%
Prince Edward Island	84.16%	Quebec	1.5%
Ontario	64.55%	British Columbia	1.4%
Nunavut	85.99%	Manitoba	0.4%
Nova Scotia	78.19%	Northwest Territories	0.4%
Northwest Territories	66.30%	Nova Scotia	0.3%
Newfoundland and Labrador	93.19%	Saskatchewan	0.2%
New Brunswick	83.84%	Yukon	0.2%
Manitoba	68.43%	New Brunswick	0.1%
British Columbia	44.64%	Nunavut	0.1%

Exercise 6. Render the score of the passage.

A multitude of languages are used by Canadians, with English and French (the official languages) being the mother tongues of approximately 60% and 20% of Canadians respectively.

Nearly 6.8 million Canadians listed a non-official language as their mother tongue. Some of the most common non-official first languages include Chinese (mainly Cantonese; 1,072,555 first-language speakers), Punjabi (430,705), Spanish(410,670), German (409,200), and Italian (407,490).

Canada's federal government practices official bilingualism, which is applied by the Commissioner of Official Languages in consonance with Section 16 of the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms and the Federal Official Languages Act. English and French have equal status in federal courts, parliament, and in all federal institutions. Citizens have the right, where there is sufficient demand, to receive federal government services in either English or French and official-language minorities are guaranteed their own schools in all provinces and territories.

The 1977 Charter of the French Language established French as the official language of Quebec. Although more than 85 % of French-speaking Canadians live in Quebec, there are substantial Francophone populations in New Brunswick, Alberta, and Manitoba; Ontario has the largest French-speaking population outside Quebec. New Brunswick, the only officially bilingual province, has a French-speaking Acadian minority constituting 33 % of the population.

There are also clusters of Acadians in southwestern Nova Scotia, on Cape Breton Island, and through central and western Prince Edward Island. Other provinces have no official languages as such, but French is used as a language of instruction, in courts, and for other government services, in addition to English. Manitoba, Ontario, and Quebec allow for both English and French to be spoken in the provincial legislatures, and laws are enacted in both languages.

In Ontario, French has some legal status, but is not fully co-official. There are 11 Aboriginal language groups, composed of more than 65 distinct dialects. Of these, only the Cree, Inuktitut and Ojibway languages have a large enough population of fluent speakers to be considered viable to survive in the long term. Several aboriginal languages have official status in the Northwest Territories. Inuktitut is the majority language in Nunavut, and is one of three official languages in the territory.

CANADA'S OFFICIAL LANGUAGES

English and French are the two official languages and are important symbols of identity. English speakers (Anglophones) and French speakers (Francophones) have lived together in partnership and creative tension for more than 300 years. You must have adequate knowledge of English or French to become a Canadian citizen. Adult applicants 55 years of age and over are exempted from this requirement.

Parliament passed the *Official Languages Act* in 1969. It has three main objectives:

- Establish equality between French and English in Parliament, the Government of Canada and institutions subject to the Act;
- Maintain and develop official language minority communities in Canada;
- Promote equality of French and English in Canadian society.

The Northwest Territory has 8 official spoken languages: Chipewyan, Cree, Dogrib, English, French, Gwich'in, Inuktitut, (including Inuvialuktun and Inuinnaqtun) and Slavey (including North and South Slavey).
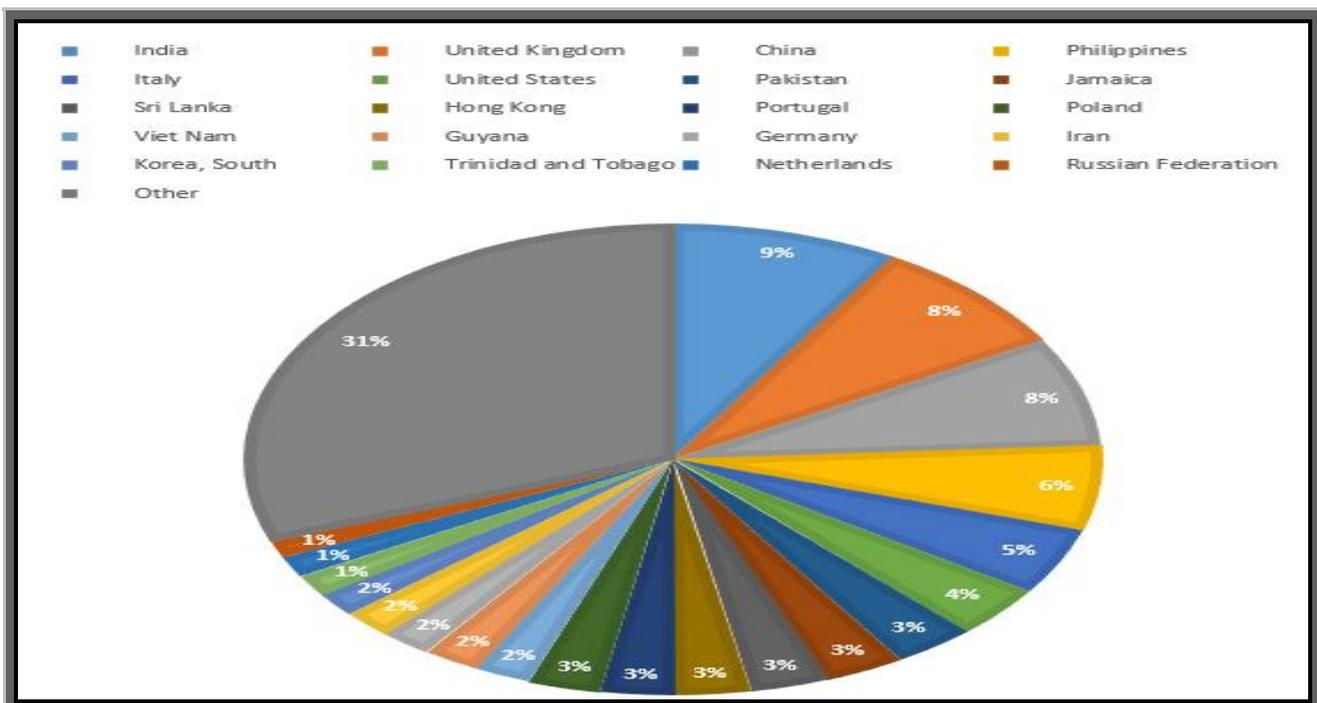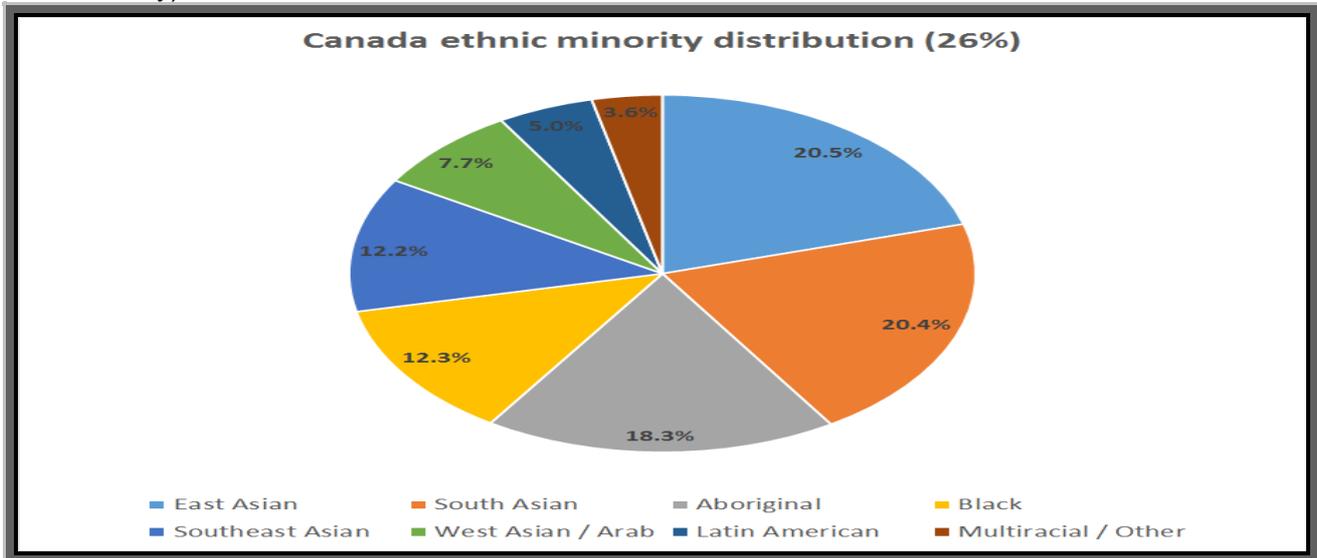
Canada's immigrant-population 2016

CANADA'S CULTURE

Canada's culture draws influences from its broad range of constituent nationalities, and policies that promote a "just society" are constitutionally protected. Canada has placed emphasis on equality and inclusiveness for its entire people. Multiculturalism is often cited as one of Canada's significant accomplishments, and a key distinguishing element of Canadian identity.

In Quebec, cultural identity is strong, and many commentators speak of a culture of Quebec that is distinct from English Canadian culture. However, as a whole, Canada is in theory acultural mosaic – a collection of several regional, aboriginal, and ethnic subcultures.

Canada's approach to governance emphasizing multiculturalism, which is based on selective immigration, social integration, and suppression of far right politics, has wide public support.

Government policies such as publicly funded health care, higher taxation to redistribute wealth, the outlawing of capital punishment, strong efforts to eliminate poverty, strict gun control, and the legalization of same-sex marriage are further social indicators of Canada's political and cultural values. Canadians also identify with the countries institutions of health care, peacekeeping, theNational park system and the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms.

Historically, Canada has been influenced by British, French, and aboriginal cultures and traditions.

Through their language, art and music, aboriginal peoples continue to influence the Canadian identity. During the 20th-century Canadians with African, Caribbean and Asian nationalities have added to the Canadian identity and its culture. Canadian humour is an integral part of the Canadian Identity and is reflected in its folklore, literature, music, art and media.

The primary characteristics of Canadian humour are irony, parody, and satire. Many Canadian comedians have archived international success in the American TV and film industries and are amongst the most recognized in the world.

Canada has a well-developed media sector, but its cultural output; particularly in English films, television shows, and magazines, is often overshadowed by imports from the USA.

As a result, the preservation of a distinctly Canadian culture is supported by federal government programs, laws, and institutions such as the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation (CBC), the National Film Board of Canada (NFB), and the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC).

Bill Reid's 1980 sculpture Raven and The First Men. The Raven is a figure common to many of Canada's Aboriginal mythologies

CHAPTER II. POLITICAL SYSTEM
UNIT I. POLITICS

INTRODUCTION

Canada is a federation composed of ten provinces and three territories. In turn, these may be grouped into four main regions: Western Canada, Central Canada, Atlantic Canada, and Northern Canada (Eastern Canada refers to Central Canada and Atlantic Canada together).

Provinces have more autonomy than territories, having responsibility for social programs such as health care, education, and welfare. Together, the provinces collect more revenue than the federal government, an almost unique structure among federations in the world.

Using its spending powers, the federal government can initiate national policies in provincial areas, such as the Canada Health Act; the provinces can opt out of these, but rarely do so in practice.

Equalization payments are made by the federal government to ensure that reasonably uniform standards of services and taxation are kept between the richer and poorer provinces.

Canada has a parliamentary system within the context of a constitutional monarchy, the monarchy of Canada being the foundation of the executive, legislative, and judicial branches.

The sovereign is Queen Elizabeth II, who is also monarch of 15 other Commonwealth countries and each of Canada's 10 provinces. As such, the Queen's representative, the Governor General of Canada (at present David Johnston), carries out most of the federal royal duties in Canada.

The direct participation of the royal and viceroyal figures in areas of governance is limited. In practice, their use of the executive powers is directed by the Cabinet, a committee of ministers of the Crown responsible to the elected House of Commons and chosen and headed by the Prime Minister of Canada (at present Justin Trudeau), the head of government.

The governor general or monarch may, though, in certain crisis situations exercise their power without ministerial advice. To ensure the stability of government, the governor general will usually appoint as prime minister the person who is the current leader of the political party that can obtain the confidence of a plurality in the House of Commons.

The Prime Minister's Office (PMO) is thus one of the most powerful institutions in government, initiating most legislation for parliamentary approval and selecting for appointment by the Crown, besides the aforementioned, the governor general, lieutenant governors, senators, federal court judges, and heads of Crown corporations and government agencies. The leader of the party with the second-most seats usually becomes the Leader of Her Majesty's Loyal Opposition and is part of an adversarial parliamentary system intended to keep the government in check.

Each of the 338 members of parliament in the House of Commons is elected by simple plurality in an electoral district or riding. General elections must be called by the governor general, either on the advice of the prime minister, within four years of the previous election, or if the government loses a confidence vote in the House. The 105 members of the Senate, whose seats are apportioned on a regional basis, serve until age 75. Five parties had representatives elected to the federal parliament in the 2015 election: the Liberal Party of Canada, the Conservative Party of Canada (governing party and soon to be Official Opposition), the New Democratic Party, the Bloc Québécois, and the Green Party of Canada. The list of historical parties with elected representation is substantial.

Canada's federal structure divides government responsibilities between the federal government and the ten provinces.

Provincial legislatures areunicameral and operate in parliamentary fashion similar to the House of Commons. Canada's three territories also have legislatures, but these are not sovereign and have fewer constitutional responsibilities than the provinces.

The territorial legislatures also differ structurally from their provincial counterparts. The Bank of Canada is the central bank of the country. In addition, the Minister of Finance and Minister of Industry utilize the Statistics Canada agency for financial planning and economic policy development. The Bank of Canada is the sole authority authorized to issue currency in the form of Canadian bank notes.

The bank does not issue Canadian coins; they are issued by the Royal Canadian Mint.

The Constitution of Canada is the supreme law of the country, and consists of written text and unwritten conventions. The Constitution Act, 1867 (known as the British North America Actprior to 1982), affirmed governance based on parliamentary precedent and divided powers between the federal and provincial governments. The Statute of Westminster 1931 granted full autonomy and the Constitution Act, 1982, ended all legislative ties to the UK, as well as adding a constitutional amending formula and the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms.

The Charter guarantees basic rights and freedoms that usually cannot be over-ridden by any government – though a notwithstanding clause allows the federal parliament and provincial legislatures to override certain sections of the Charter for a period of five years.

The Indian Act, various treaties and case laws were established to mediate relations between Europeans and native peoples. Most notably, a series of eleven treaties known as the Numbered Treaties were signed between Aboriginals in Canada and the reigning Monarch of Canada between 1871 and 1921. These treaties are agreements with the Canadian Crown-in-Council, administered by Canadian Aboriginal law, and overseen by the Minister of Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development.

The role of the treaties and the rights they support were reaffirmed bySection Thirty-five of the Constitution Act, 1982. These rights may include provision of services, such as health care, and exemption from taxation. The legal and policy framework within which Canada and First Nations operate was further formalized in 2005, through the First Nations–Federal Crown Political Accord.

Canada's judiciary plays an important role in interpreting laws and has the power to strike down Acts of Parliament that violate the constitution.

The Supreme Court of Canada is the highest court and final arbiter and has been led since 2000 by the Chief Justice Beverley McLachlin (the first female Chief Justice). Its nine members are appointed by the governor general on the advice of the prime minister and minister of justice.

All judges at the superior and appellate levels are appointed after consultation with non-governmental legal bodies. The federal Cabinet appoints justices to superior courts in the provincial and territorial jurisdictions. Common law prevails everywhere except in Quebec, where civil law predominates. Criminal law is solely a federal responsibility and is uniform throughout Canada.

Law enforcement, including criminal courts, is officially a provincial responsibility, conducted by provincial and municipal police forces. However, in most rural areas and some urban areas, policing responsibilities are contracted to the federal Royal Canadian Mounted Police.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Events	When	Where	Score
1.				

FOREIGN RELATIONS & MILITARY

Canada is recognized as a middle power for its role in international affairs with a tendency to pursue multilateral solutions. Canada's foreign policy based on international peacekeeping and security is carried out through coalitions and international organizations, and through the work of numerous federal institutions. Canada's peacekeeping role during the 20th century has played a major role in its global image. The strategy of the Canadian government's foreign aid policy reflects an emphasis to meet the Millennium Development Goals, while also providing assistance in response to foreign humanitarian crises. Canada was a founding member of the UN and has membership in the WTO, the G20 and the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD). Canada is also a member of various other international and regional organizations and forums for economic and cultural affairs. Canada acceded to the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights in 1976.

Canada joined the Organization of American States (OAS) in 1990 and hosted the OAS General Assembly in 2000 and the 3rd Summit of the Americas in 2001. Canada seeks to expand its ties to Pacific Rim economies through membership in the Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation forum (APEC). Canada and the USA share the world's longest undefended border, co-operate on military campaigns and exercises, and are each other's largest trading partner.

Canada nevertheless has an independent foreign policy, most notably maintaining full relations with Cuba since, and declining to officially participate in the2003 invasion of Iraq. Canada maintains historic ties to the United Kingdom and France and to other former British and French colonies through Canada's membership in theCommonwealth of Nations and the Francophonie.

Canada is noted for having a positive relationship with the Netherlands, owing, in part, to its contribution to the Dutch liberation during World War II.

Canada's strong attachment to the British Empire and Commonwealth led to major participation in British military efforts in the Second Boer War, World War I and World War II. Since then, Canada has been an advocate for multilateralism, making efforts to resolve global issues in collaboration with other nations. During the Cold War, Canada was a major contributor to UN forces in the Korean War and founded the North American Aerospace Defense Command (NORAD) in co-operation with the USA to defend against potential aerial attacks from the Soviet Union.

During the Suez Crisis of 1956, future Prime Minister Lester B. Pearson eased tensions by proposing the inception of the United Nations Peacekeeping Force, for which he was awarded the 1957 Nobel Peace Prize. As this was the first UN peacekeeping mission, Pearson is often credited as the inventor of the concept. Canada has since served in over 50 peacekeeping missions, including every UN peacekeeping effort until 1989, and has since maintained forces in international missions in Rwanda, the former Yugoslavia, and elsewhere; Canada has sometimes faced controversy over its involvement in foreign countries, notably in the 1993 Somalia Affair.

In 2001, Canada deployed troops to Afghanistan as part of the US stabilization force and the UN-authorized, NATO-led International Security Assistance Force. In February 2007, Canada, Italy, the United Kingdom, Norway, and Russia announced their joint commitment to a $1.5-billion project to help develop vaccines for developing nations, and called on other countries to join them.

In August 2007, Canada's territorial claims in the Arcticwere challenged after a Russian underwater expedition to the North Pole; Canada has considered that area to be sovereign territory since 1925. Canada currently employs a professional, volunteer military force of 92,000 active personnel and approximately 51,000 reserve personnel. The unified Canadian Forces (CF) comprises the Canadian Army, Royal Canadian Navy, and Royal Canadian Air Force. In 2013, Canada's military expenditure totalled approximately C$19 billion, or around 1% of the country's GDP.

Exercise 1. Render the contents of the passage in English.

Exercise 2. Add some information, make up a small report and give a talk in class.

A map of Canada exhibiting its ten provinces and three territories, and their capitals.

CONSTITUTION OF CANADA

Canadian citizens have rights and responsibilities. These come to us from our history, are secured by Canadian law, and reflect our shared traditions, identity, and values. Canadian law has several sources, including laws passed by Parliament and the provincial legislatures, English common law, the civil code of France and the unwritten constitution that we have inherited from Great Britain.

Together, these secure for Canadians an 800-year old tradition of ordered liberty, which dates back to the signing of **Magna Carta** in 1215 in England (the Great Charter of Freedoms), including:

- Freedom of conscience and religion.
- Freedom of thought, belief, opinion, expression, speech and the press.
- Freedom of peaceful assembly.
- Freedom of association.

The Canadian Constitution dates back to Confederation. In 1867, the British Parliament passed the British North America Act, the founding document of Canada as an independent nation. Drafted by Canadians who became known as the Fathers of Confederation, the document stated that "The Executive Government and Authority of and over Canada is hereby declared to continue and be vested in The Queen". In 1982, the Canadian Parliament passed the Constitution Act 1982, which provided, for the first time in country's history, a way of amending or changing the Constitution without having to obtain the approval of the British Parliament each time a change was required.

This patriation or "bringing home" of the Canadian Constitution did not alter the Queen's status in Canada as Head of State. Her personal representative in Canada remains the Governor General, whose powers and authorities are detailed in the "Letters Patent Constituting the Office of the Governor General of Canada" (1947). The Constitution of Canada was amended in 1982 to entrench the *Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms*, which begins with the words, "Whereas Canada is founded upon principles that recognize the supremacy of God and the rule of law". This phrase underlines the importance of religious traditions to Canadian society and the dignity and worth of the human person.

The Charter attempts to summarize fundamental freedoms while also setting out additional rights. The most important of these include:

- *Mobility Rights* – Canadians can live and work anywhere they choose in Canada, enter and leave the country freely, and apply for a passport.

- *Aboriginal Peoples' Rights* – The rights guaranteed in the Charter will not adversely affect any treaty or other rights or freedoms of Aboriginal peoples.

- *Official Language Rights* and *Minority Language Educational Rights* – French and English have equal status in Parliament and throughout the government.

- *Multiculturalism* – A fundamental characteristic of the Canadian heritage and identity. Canadians celebrate the gift of presence and work hard to respect pluralism and live in harmony.
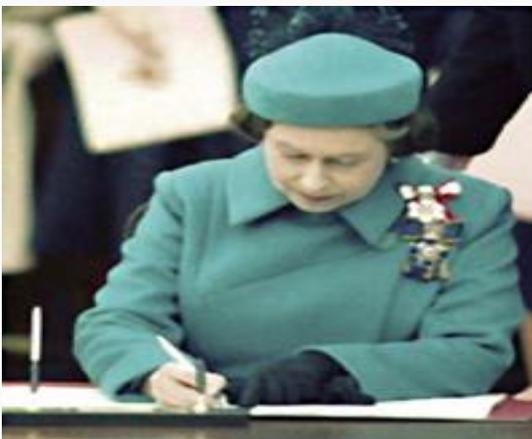
Queen Elizabeth II proclaiming the amended Constitution, Ottawa, 1982.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Make up some dialogues from the information above.

Exercise 3 Remember the facts.

Constitutional history

- Bill of Rights (1689)
- Act of Settlement (1701)
- Treaty of Paris (1763)
- Royal Proclamation (1763)
- Quebec Act (1774)
- Constitution Act (1791)
- Act of Union (1840)
- Constitution Act (1867)
- British North America Acts (1867–1975)
- Statute of Westminster (1931)
- Succession to the Throne Act (1937)
- Letters Patent (1947)
- Canada Act (1982)
- Constitution Act (1982)

- **Document list**
- Amendments
- Unsuccessful amendments
- **Constitutional law**
- Constitutional debate
- Patriation
- Charter of Rights and Freedoms
- Canadian federalism
- Law of Canada
- Canadian Bill of Rights
- Implied Bill of Rights
- Canadian Human Rights Act

PARLIAMENTARY DEMOCRACY & FEDERAL STATE

In Canada's parliamentary democracy, the people elect members to the House of Commons in Ottawa and to the provincial and territorial legislatures. These representatives are responsible for passing laws, approving and monitoring expenditures, and keeping the government accountable. Cabinet ministers are responsible to the elected representatives, which mean they must retain the "confidence of the House" and have to resign if they are defeated in a non-confidence vote.

Parliament has three parts: the **Sovereign** (Queen or King), the **Senate** and the **House of Commons**. Provincial legislatures comprise the Lieutenant Governor and the elected Assembly.

In the federal government, the **Prime Minister** selects the Cabinet ministers and is responsible for the operations and policy of the government. The **House of Commons** is the representative chamber, made up of members of Parliament elected by the people, traditionally every four years.

Senators are appointed by the Governor General on the advice of the Prime Minister and serve until age 75. Both the House of Commons and the Senate consider and review **bills** (proposals for new laws). No bill can become law in Canada until it has been passed by both chambers and has received royal assent, granted by the Governor General on behalf of the Sovereign.

There are federal, provincial, territorial and municipal governments in Canada.

The responsibilities of the federal and provincial governments were defined in 1867 in the British North America Act, now known as the Constitution Act, 1867.

In the federal state, the federal government takes responsibility for matters of national and international concern. These include defence, foreign policy, interprovincial trade and communications, currency, navigation, criminal law and citizenship. The provinces are responsible for municipal government, education, health, natural resources, property and civil rights, and highways.

The federal government and the provinces share jurisdiction over agriculture and immigration.

Federalism allows different provinces to adopt policies tailored to their own populations, and gives provinces the flexibility to experiment with new ideas and policies. Every province has its own elected Legislative Assembly, like the House of Commons in Ottawa. The three northern territories, which have small populations, do not have the status of provinces, but their governments and assemblies carry out many of the same functions.

Exercise 1. Retell in your on words the information.

Exercise 2. Explain the score of the constitutional monarchy.

CONSTITUTIONAL MONARCHY

As a *constitutional monarchy*, Canada's **Head of State** is a hereditary Sovereign (Queen or King), who reigns in accordance with the Constitution: the rule of law.

The Sovereign is a part of Parliament, playing an important, non-partisan role as the focus of citizenship and allegiance, most visibly during royal visits to Canada. Her Majesty is a symbol of Canadian sovereignty, a guardian of constitutional freedoms, and a reflection of our history.

The British monarch (since June 2, 1953 Queen Elizabeth II) is Canada's official head of state through which the entire authority of government is set in motion and in whose name laws are enacted.

The Queen's role is set out in the Constitution Act, 1867, and that same act gives the monarch ultimate authority over Canada's armed forces. In practice, however, the Queen has little or no part to play in Canadian government. She appoints the Governor General, but does so only on the Prime Minister's recommendation. Once appointed, it is the Governor General who performs the monarch's duties, and these duties have been mainly ceremonial for many years.

Only during royal visits does the Queen carry out those functions normally performed in her name by the Governor General, such as the opening of Parliament.

The Royal Family's example of lifelong service to the community is an encouragement for citizens to give their best to their country. As Head of the Commonwealth, the Sovereign links Canada to 53 other nations that cooperate to advance social, economic and cultural progress.

Other constitutional monarchies include Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Australia, New Zealand, The Netherlands, Spain, Thailand, Japan, Jordan and Morocco.

There is a clear distinction in Canada between the *head of state* – the Sovereign – and the *head of government* – the Prime Minister, who actually directs the governing of the country.

The Sovereign is represented in Canada by the *Governor General*, who is appointed by the Sovereign on the advice of the Prime Minister, usually for five years. In each of the ten provinces, the Sovereign is represented by the *Lieutenant Governor*, who is appointed by the Governor General on the advice of the Prime Minister, also normally for five years.The interplay between the three branches of government – the Executive, Legislative and Judicial – which work together but also sometimes in creative tension, helps to secure the rights and freedoms of Canadians. Each provincial and territorial government has an elected legislature where provincial and territorial laws are passed.

The members of the legislature are called members of the Legislative Assembly (MLAs), members of the National Assembly (MNAs), members of the Provincial Parliament (MPPs) or members of the House of Assembly (MHAs), depending on the province or territory. In each province, the *Premier* has a role similar to that of the Prime Minister in the federal government, just as the Lieutenant Governor has a role similar to that of the Governor General. In the three territories, the *Commissioner* represents the federal government and plays a ceremonial role.

The term "Dominion" is also used to distinguish the federal government from the provinces, though after the Second World War the term "federal" had replaced "dominion".
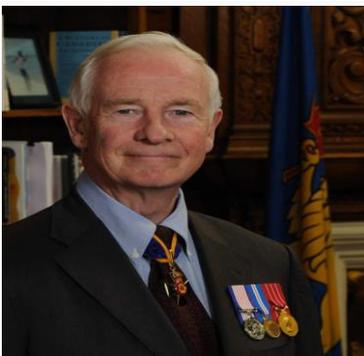
David Johnston - Governor General   Elizabeth II   Prime Minister Justin Trudeau

THE GOVERNOR GENERAL

The Governor General is selected by the Prime Minister and formally appointed by the Queen to act as her representative in Canada. The appointment is usually for five years but has sometimes been extended to seven. Bills passed in the House of Commons and Senate do not become law until the Governor General has given them royal assent. He executes all orders-in-council and other state documents, appoints all superior court judges (on the advice of Cabinet) and summons, prorogues and dissolves Parliament (on the advice of the Prime Minister).

Also the Governor General invites the leader of the political party with the most support in the House of Commons to form a government. Thus, that leader becomes Prime Minister.

The Imperial Conferences of 1926 and 1930 established that the Governor General was not the representative or agent of the British government and should act only on the advice of the Canadian Prime Minister and Cabinet. Therefore, the Governor General is obliged to respect the principle of responsible government and to follow the wishes of Canada's elected representatives.

Because of this, the role of the Governor General has become largely symbolic, with duties that are chiefly ceremonial. Two members of the Royal Family have held the post: the Duke of Connaught (1911-16) and the Earl of Athone (1940-46). The first Canadian Governor General was Vincent Massey (1952-59). In the dominion, executive power rests in the hands of the governor-general, who represents the king of Great Britain, and is appointed by the British government, on the recommendation of, or with the concurrence of, the Canadian government. The governor-general, however, acts only on the advice of the Prime Minister and his colleagues in the Cabinet, who are at the same time members of the King's Privy Council for Canada and sit in the dominion parliament.

As a member of the Commonwealth, and a former member of the British realm, Canada's ties to the monarchy are steeped in history. For more than 500 years (since 1497) Canada has been a monarchy. Her Majesty, Queen Elizabeth II, represented by the Governor General of Canada, thereby establishing the bills as Acts of Parliament (the Laws of Canada).

The Governor General is actually picked by the serving Prime Minister and recommended to the Queen, who appoints that person to the office. The Governor General also summons; prorogues (ends a session) and dissolves Parliament (ends Parliament until a new one is sworn in after an election); delivers the Speech from the Throne at the opening of sessions (outlining the Government's plans for legislation) and signs State documents (documents requiring and authorizing particular appointments and actions, such as Orders-in-Council, commissions, and pardons).The Governor General acts on the Queen's behalf in all matters of interest to the monarch.

THE QUEEN'S ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA

Some personal Royal links to Canada are long standing. Queen Elizabeth, the Queen Mother first visited Canada in 1939 - her last visit being in 1989 to mark the 50th anniversary of her first visit here. As Princess Elizabeth, The Queen with The Duke of Edinburgh first visited Canada in 1951.

Since then, they have visited all the provinces in Canada including the following: in 1959, The Queen opened the new St Lawrence Seaway and visited many outlying districts never before seen by a reigning monarch. The Queen and The Duke attended the 100th anniversary of the Confederation in 1967, and in 1976 they attended, with The Prince of Wales, Prince Andrew and Prince Edward, the Olympic Games in Montreal (Princess Anne competed as a member of the British equestrian team).

In 1977 The Queen and The Duke of Edinburgh visited Canada as part of the Silver Jubilee tour, and The Queen was in Ottawa for the ceremony marking the Patriation of the Canadian Constitution in April 1982. The Queen and The Duke also toured Canada in 1997, when they visited Newfoundland (to mark its 500-year-old link with Britain), then Ontario and Ottawa (to mark Canada Day on 1 July). In 2005 the Queen and Duke of Edinburgh visited Saskatchewan and Alberta for the Centennial celebrations of those two Provinces. In all, the Queen has visited Canada 22 times.

GOVERNMENT OF CANADA

Canada is a constitutional monarchy and a federal state with a democratic parliament. As in many constitutional monarchies, there is a clear separation in roles between the Head of State and the Head of Government. The Governor General is appointed by The Queen (on the advice of the Canadian Prime Minister). Canada's Head of Government is the Prime Minister who is an elected representative of the people of Canada and head of his political party.

The central government of Canada exercises all powers not specifically assigned to the provinces.

It has exclusive jurisdiction over administration of the public debt, currency and coinage, taxation for general purposes, organization of national defense, fiscal matters, banking, fisheries, commerce, navigation and shipping, energy policy, agriculture, postal service, census, statistics, patents, copyright, naturalization, aliens, indigenous peoples affairs, marriage, and divorce. Among the powers assigned to the provincial governments are education, hospitals, provincial property and civil rights, taxation for local purposes, the regulation of local commerce, and the borrowing of money.

With respect to certain matters, such as immigration, the federal and provincial governments possess concurrent jurisdiction. The nominal head of the government is the governor-general, the representative of the British crown, who is appointed by the reigning monarch on the recommendation of the Prime Minister of Canada. The governor-general adheres to the advice of the majority in the House of Commons (the lower chamber of the legislature) in appointing the Prime Minister, who is the effective head of government, and follows the Prime Minister's wishes in appointing the Cabinet.

The Cabinet consists of as many as 40 members, most of whom are ministers presiding over departments of the federal government. The cabinet has no formal legal power but submits its decisions to Parliament. Canada is an independent, self-governing democracy whose form of government is a constitutional monarchy. There are three types of government power: legislative, executive and judicial. In Canada the legislative and executive powers are joined, while the judiciary remains separate. The executive proposes legislation, presents budgets and implements laws; the legislature adopts laws and votes on recommendations for taxes or other revenue; the judiciary interprets the laws.

Canada's Governmental System
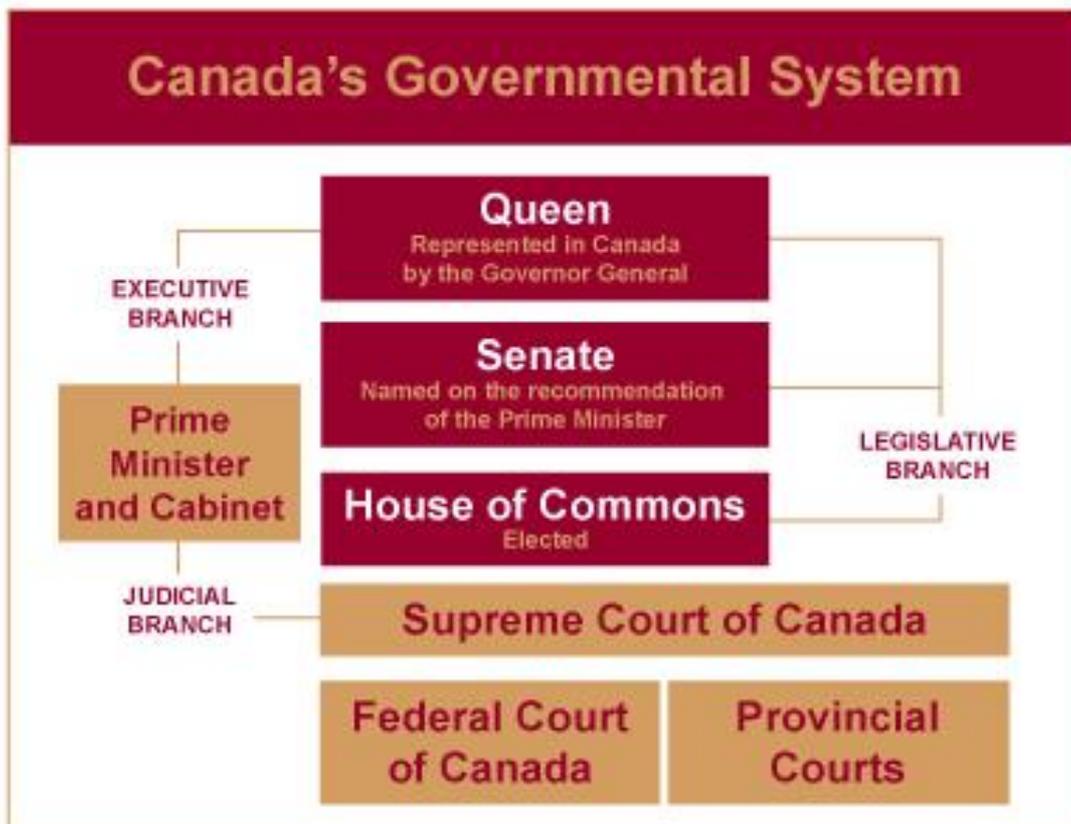
WHAT IS A MINORITY GOVERNMENT?

A minority government is a situation in which no one party has more than 50 % of the seats in the House of Commons. With 308 ridings electing MPs this time, a party would need 155 to form what's called a majority government.

If no party wins 155 seats, the leader of the ruling party (the Liberals in this case) gets first crack at convincing the Governor General that he can form a government, even if the other parties win more ridings. That's because the prime minister remains the prime minister until his government is defeated by another party that wins a majority of seats in a general election, he resigns, or his government loses a vote of confidence on a major motion in the House of Commons (for example, on the vote to accept a budget).

With all the other parties combined holding more seats and thus votes than the ruling party, this is the usual way a minority government comes to an end.

The day of defeat can be staved off for months, or even years, if the governing party strikes a pact with one or more small parties to support it on parliamentary votes. The usual payoff is a promise that the ruling party will introduce legislation that accomplishes some of the planks in the minor party's platform. At some point, however, the relationship falls apart over some deep disagreement on policy or an itch to get back to the polls to ask voters for a more stable majority government.

Governor General Adrienne Clarkson would come into the picture if our next government falls on a confidence vote. She would go to the party with the best chance of forming a different minority government with the same group of 308 MPs sitting in the House of Commons.

In the 2004 election the Liberals won 135 seats and the Conservatives 99, with the other parties racking up 74 between them. If Liberal Leader Paul Martin's attempt at a minority government (with an alliance with the New Democratic Party) fell, Clarkson would ask Conservative Leader Stephen Harper if he was prepared to form a government. If he could then form an alliance with another party, he could then rule for as long as that friendship stayed intact (or until the natural end of the government's five-year mandate). But that coalition too would likely fall apart before long and the Conservatives would lose a vote of confidence.

If no party is prepared to form a government, the Governor General will dissolve Parliament and call a another general election, in which all the parties get a chance to win more than half the seats and form a majority government. That is not a guaranteed result after a minority government falls in Canada, it should be noted. Liberal Lester B. Pearson led two back-to-back minority governments following elections in 1963 and 1965. He was the first prime minister in Canadian history to never win a majority government. In 2006 and again in 2008 – a Conservative Minority Government was elected.
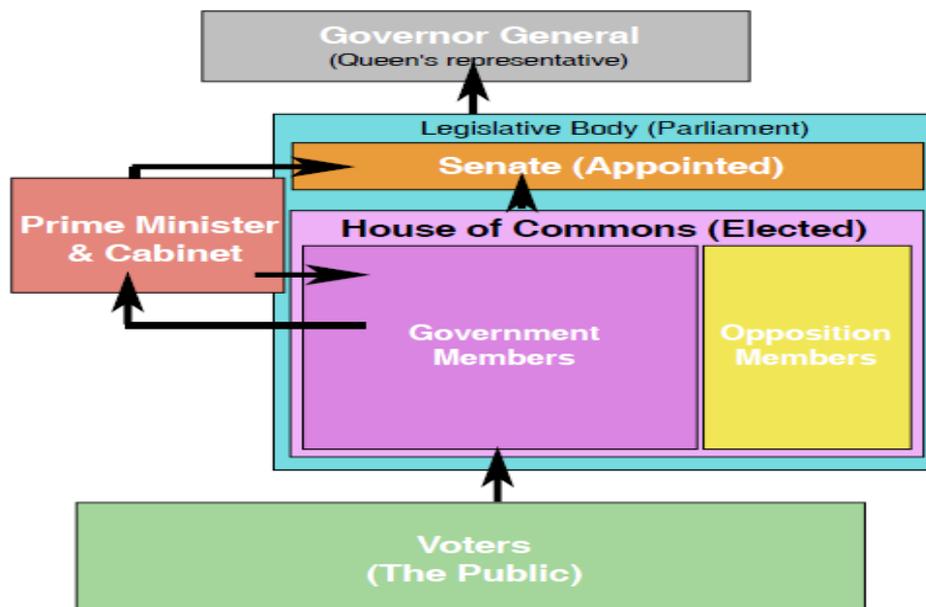
THE LEGISLATURE

The Canadian Parliament consists of two houses, the Senate and the House of Commons. Senators are appointed by the governor-general on the advice of the Prime Minister to terms that last until the age of 75. There are normally 104 senators (6 from Newfoundland; 10 each from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick; 4 from Prince Edward Island; 24 each from Quebec and Ontario; 6 from Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, and British Columbia; and 1 each from the Northwest Territories and Yukon Territory). In 1990 the Conservative federal government found that proposed legislation was being held up by the Liberal-controlled Senate. Invoking a measure in Canada's constitution that had never been used before, Prime Minister Brian Mulroney added 8 new senators, there by increasing the total number of senators to 112 and achieving a Conservative majority.

The number of senators has since returned to 104. Members of the House of Commons are elected in 295 federal electoral districts whose boundaries are periodically adjusted to reflect population growth or redistribution. Each district contains, on average, about 100,000 constituents.

Federal elections are held at the Prime Minister's discretion, but must be called within a five-year period; in practice, they are called about every four years.

Laws are first debated in the House of Commons, but must also be approved by the Senate and signed by the governor-general before coming into effect. The Prime Minister is the leader of the majority party in the House of Commons; if no majority exists; the party with the most seats in Parliament leads a "*minority government*".' Canada's legislature or Parliament consists of the Queen, an upper house, known as the Senate, and the House of commons. Senators are appointed by the Governor General on the advice of the Prime Minister; the seats in the Senate are distributed on a regional basis; originally, there were 72 senators, but through the years the Senate has increased as the number of provinces and the population has grown.

In 1975 the Senate was increased to 104 members; in 1990 Prime Minister Brian Mulroney employed a never-before-used section of the Constitution Act to increase the number to temporarily 112. The House of Commons is an elected assembly in which each member represents one of 295 electoral districts distributed according to population.

How a Bill becomes Law – **The Legislative Process**

STEP 1 First Reading – The bill is considered read for the first time and is printed.

STEP 2 Second Reading – Members debate the bill's principle.

STEP 3 Committee Stage – Committee members study the bill clause by clause.

STEP 4 Report Stage – Members can make other amendments.

STEP 5 Third Reading – Members debate and vote on the bill.

STEP 6 Senate – The bill follows a similar process in the Senate.

STEP 7 Royal Assent – The bill receives royal assent after being passed by both Houses.

Living in a democracy, Canadian citizens have the right and the responsibility to participate in making decisions that affect them. It is important for Canadians aged 18 or more to participate in their democracy by voting in federal, provincial or territorial and municipal elections.

How a Bill Becomes Law

First Reading
The bill is considered read for the first time and is printed

Second Reading
Members debate the bill's principle

Committee Stage
Committee members study the bill clause by clause

Report Stage
Members can make other amendments

Third Reading
Members debate and vote on the bill

**Senate**
The bill follows a similar process in the Senate

Royal Assent
The bill receives Royal Assent after being passed by both Houses

Bill
Introduction

Committee
Action

House
Vote

Senate
Vote

Conference
Action

President's
Signature

MUST LEGISLATION BE APPROVED BY THE SENATE?

CAN THE SENATE PROPOSE LEGISLATION?

Every system needs checks and balances, and the legislative system is no exception. One house may have passed legislation too quickly, or certain concerned groups may feel they did not get a chance to be heard. That's why Canada's Constitution states that both the Senate and the House of Commons must approve bills separately in order for them to become law.

Legislative basics

The lawmaking process starts with a bill – a proposal to create a new law, or to change an existing one. Most of the bills considered by Parliament are public bills, meaning they concern matters of public policy such as taxes and spending, health and other social programs, defence and the environment. A bill can be introduced in the House of Commons (C-bills) or the Senate (S-bills), but most public bills get their start in the Commons. A bill goes through certain formal stages in each house. These stages include a series of three readings during which parliamentarians debate the bill.

Prior to third and final reading, each house also sends the bill to a committee where members examine the fine points of the legislation. Committee's members listen to witnesses give their opinions on the bill, and then subject it to clause-by-clause study based on the testimony.

Either house can do four things with a bill: pass it; amend it; delay it; or defeat it. Sometimes, one house refuses changes or amendments made by the other, but they usually both agree eventually.

All laws of Canada are formally enacted by the Sovereign, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate and House of Commons. Once both houses have approved a bill, it is presented for Royal Assent and becomes law.

The legislative process "How does a bill become law?"

- Passage through first house (sometimes the Senate, usually the House of Commons).
- Passage through the second house (the Senate, sometimes the House of Commons).
- Royal Assent given by the Governor General (with the consent of both houses).

Passage through a house

- First reading (the bill proposing a law is received and circulated);
- Second reading (the principle of the bill is debated: does the bill represent good policy?)

Committee stage

- members of the public appear as witnesses to comment;
- committee members study the bill in detail, clause-by-clause;
- the committee adopts a report, with or without amendments;

Report stage (the committee report is considered by the whole house).

- Third reading (final approval of the bill).
- The bill is either re-sent to the other house or is set aside for Royal Assent.

Taking the legislative initiative

When senators see a need for a law, they can respond individually by introducing bills of their own. The bill may or may not make it through all the stages and become law. Even if it does not, a bill can still give visibility to an issue and so encourage debate and action. Here is an example of a Senate bill that did become law: In late November 2005, Parliament passed Senator Jean-Robert Gauthier's Bill S-3's, *An Act to amend the Official Languages Act*, into law. Bill S-3s amendments to the *Official Languages Act* have given it teeth by allowing Canadians to take the federal government to court if it does not live up to its obligation to protect and promote both French and English minorities in Canada. The government can now be held to account for its progress, or lack of progress, in fulfilling our national objective of bilingualism.

The government can introduce its bills in the Senate and frequently takes advantage of this option. Doing so takes pressure off the House of Commons' timetable.

A bill that is complex and technical rather than partisan is a perfect candidate for initial review by the Senate. Bills to implement income tax treaties are a good example. The Senate can also pre-study bills that have been introduced in the House of Commons but have not yet reached the Senate, when it considers this to be a useful initiative.

Private bills are introduced on the petition of a citizen and address the needs of a single person, company or institution, rather than applying to the general public, and are usually initiated in the Senate. In the 19th century, private bills were popular to incorporate and regulate the railroad companies and religious organizations that opened the West. For the greater part of the twentieth century, divorces in certain provinces were granted by private bill introduced in the Senate.

More recent private bills have authorized marriages otherwise prohibited by law, revived companies, allowed companies to change jurisdiction, and incorporated and regulated charitable and other non-profit organizations. Private bills are valuable because they can point to weaknesses in the general law. The only bills that cannot be initiated in the Senate are money bills.

Money bills collect or disburse public funds. They must always be proposed by the government and considered first in the House of Commons. Only then can a money bill be submitted to the Senate for its consideration. The Senate can pass or defeat a money bill and can also amend it, but only to reduce taxes or expenditures.

Amending legislation

The Senate plays a key role in amending bills passed by the House of Commons. Senators have the expertise to put a bill under the microscope and examine it in detail, and the Senate timetable is flexible enough to allow longer periods of study. The end product is a more effective and long-lasting piece of legislation.From April 2003 to March 2009, a period that covers seven sessions of Parliament, the Senate recommended amendments to 37 of the 300 bills that made it to the committee stage of consideration. That means that the Senate proposed amendments on 12 per cent of the bills it studied.

On June 22, 2006, Bill C-2 arrived in the Senate. The first Act of Parliament of a recently-elected government, it was a massive and complex bill aimed at improving government accountability.

The Senate's Committee on Legal and Constitutional Affairs examined the bill. It held over 100 hours of meetings, hearing 168 witnesses. Based on witnesses' testimony, the committee proposed an unprecedented 156 amendments to the bill. After debating the bill for 14 more hours and proposing 106 additional amendments, senators finally passed it with a total of 158 changes. It had undergone what may have been the most comprehensive legislative review in Senate history.

After lengthy back-and-forth between the Senate and the House of Commons, the bill finally passed with roughly 90 Senate amendments. Even when the Commons takes the step of refusing a Senate amendment, the amending process draws attention to the contentious issue. Those aspects of the bill obviously deserve – and usually get – closer scrutiny by the government, the media or both.

Defeating bills

Canada's Constitution gives both houses of Parliament the power to defeat proposed legislation sent to it by the other house. This is called the veto power. While the Senate does not oppose the will of the Commons very often, senators have rejected bills. Senators have considered this possibility on occasions when they felt the government did not have an electoral mandate for a measure opposed by the public, when the bill was obviously outside the constitutional authority of Parliament, or under other extraordinary circumstances. The Senate can defeat government bills without the dramatic political fallout that would occur if the House of Commons did the same thing. If the House of Commons defeats a major piece of legislation, the government usually resigns and an election is called. If a bill is defeated in the Senate, the government can go back to the drawing board and submit a new bill.

In 1998, after extensive hearings and consultation with a broad range of witnesses, the Legal and Constitutional Affairs Committee opposed the enactment of Bill C-220. The bill, although not a government bill, which was passed by the House of Commons, would have provided the government with the power to censor publications written by persons convicted of crimes where the publication in question was based substantially on the crime for which the conviction was entered.

Senators on the Committee believed that the bill was a direct violation of section 2 of the *Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms* which guarantees freedom of expression. The Senate agreed with the Committee's recommendation, and the bill was rejected.

Delaying bills

The Senate can delay a bill, or decide not to act on it. Without being formally rejected, a delayed bill dies at the end of the session. In certain circumstances, Senate action or inaction can persuade a government that it needs to go to the people for a new mandate.

In 1988, Canadians got to vote on the free trade agreement with the USA because the Senate delayed Bill C-130, to implement the agreement. The government called an election on the issue. As soon as it was re-elected, the government submitted a similar bill that Parliament passed expeditiously. In other cases, the Senate can delay a bill in order to give it more careful scrutiny that it received in the House of Commons and to draw greater public attention to the issue at hand.

Constitutional amendments

Parliament can make constitutional amendments on its own by passing a bill, but only if the amendments operate within the federal sphere of power. The Senate has a veto power over these amendments, just as it has over all bills proposed to Parliament.

Other kinds of constitutional amendments affect both federal and provincial powers. Because the legislatures of affected provinces must agree to these, both the Senate and the provinces speak for the regions on such amendments. When the Senate and the provinces do not agree on an amendment, the Constitution favours the provinces. The amendment may be made without Senate approval if the required number of provinces authorizes it and if the House of Commons re-affirms its support for the amendment after the Senate concerns become apparent. However, the Commons must wait for six months from when it first approved the amendment before approving it a second time.

This Senate power to require the Commons and the provinces to reflect for six months is sometimes described as its suspensive veto.
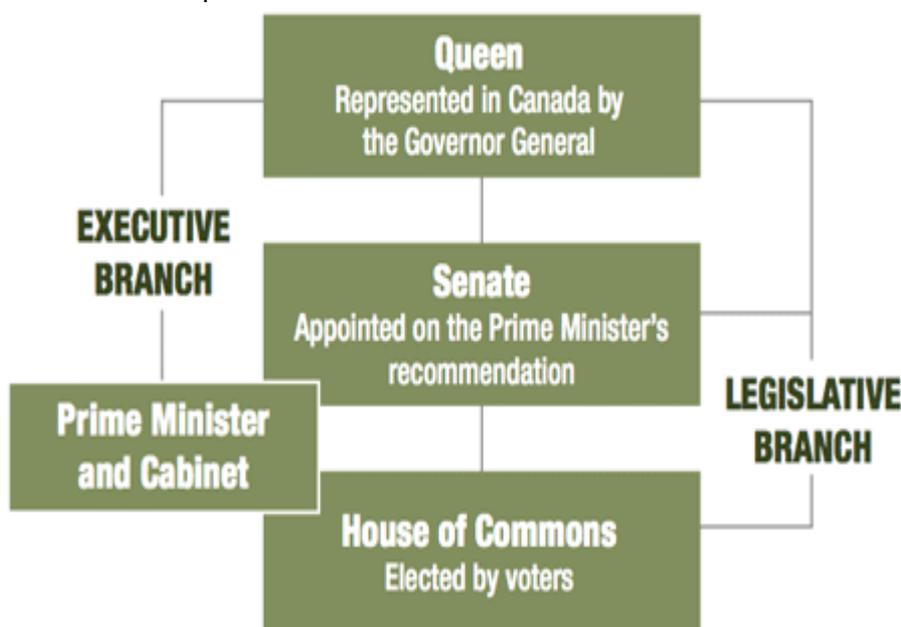
THE PARLIAMENTARY SYSTEM

The roots of Canada's parliamentary system lie in Britain. In keeping with traditions handed down by the British Parliament, the Canadian Parliament is composed of the Queen (who is represented in Canada by the Governor General), the Senate and the House of Commons.

The Senate, also called the Upper House, is patterned after the British House of Lords. Its 105 members are appointed, not elected, and are divided essentially among Canada's four main regions of Ontario, Quebec, the West and the Atlantic Provinces. The Senate has the same powers as the House of Commons, with a few exceptions.

What is a "Senator"? A Senator is a member of the Upper House of the Canadian Parliament, the Senate. There are ordinarily 105 Senators appointed by the Governor General on the advice of the Prime Minister. Senators are chosen to represent the various provinces and territories of Canada and are appointed until the age of 75.

The House of Commons is the major law-making body. It has 301 members, one from each of the 301 constituencies or electoral districts. The Canadian Constitution requires the election of a new House of Commons at least every five years. As in the United Kingdom and the USA, in Canada voters simply elect a single member for their electoral constituency, in one round of balloting.

What is a "Member of Parliament"? Although any person appointed to the Senate or elected to the House of Commons is considered a Member of Parliament, the term is more commonly used to refer to a person elected to a seat in the House of Commons as a representative of one of the 301 electoral districts into which Canada is divided. In debate, Members are identified not by their own names but by the names of their electoral districts.

In each constituency, the candidate who gets the largest number of votes is elected, even if his or her vote is less than half the total. Candidates usually represent a recognized political party – although some run as independents – and the party that wins the largest number of seats ordinarily forms the government. Its leader is asked by the Governor General to become Prime Minister.

The real executive authority is in the hands of the Cabinet, under the direction of the Prime Minister. In general, the Prime Minister is the leader of the party with the largest number of seats in the House of Commons, and is vested with extensive powers. In general, it is the Prime Minister who chooses the ministers from among the members of Parliament in the governing party.

Strictly speaking, the Prime Minister and Cabinet are the advisers of the monarch. De facto power, however, lies with the Cabinet, and the head of state (the Governor General) acts on its advice.

Cabinet develops government policy and is responsible to the House of Commons.

The Government of Canada, headed by some 25 ministers, performs its duties through the intermediary of the federal departments, special boards, commissions and state-owned corporations.

Canada, which had been a self-governing colony in 1867, rose to the status of an independent state after its participation in World War I and achieved de jure independence with the Statue of Westminster in 1931. The Constitution of 1867 had one serious flaw: it contained no general formula for constitutional amendment. It was necessary to address the British Parliament in London each time the founding statute needed change. An amending formula should have been included in the Constitution at the time of the coming into force of the Statute of Westminster in 1931, but it was not until November 1981, after numerous attempts, that the federal government and the provinces (except Quebec) agreed to the amending formula that is now part of the Constitution Act, 1982. Since that time, the Constitution can be amended only in Canada.

The Canadian constitutional system has been changed over the years, sometimes quite extensively, but always peacefully and gradually. In the 1980s and 1990s, two major efforts were made at reform. The 1987 Meech Lake Accord sought to bring Quebec back into Canada's constitutional family by meeting five constitutional conditions set out by Quebec.

The conditions centred on a provincial participation in the appointment of Supreme Court judges and senators, the Constitution's amending formula, increased powers for the provinces in immigration matters, some reduction in federal spending powers, and a constitutional declaration that Quebec is a "distinct society". However, the Meech Lake Accord was not implemented because it did not obtain the legislative consent of all provinces and the federal government, as required under the 1982 amending formula.

In 1991-92, another round of constitutional reform was initiated, leading to the Charlottetown Agreement. The Agreement, which was supported by the Prime Minister, the 10 provincial premiers, the two territorial leaders and four national Aboriginal leaders, provided for a reformed Senate and changes to the division of legislative powers between the federal and provincial governments.

It also supported the right of Canada's Aboriginal people to inherent self-government, and recognized Quebec as a distinct society. The Agreement, however, was rejected by Canadians in a national referendum held on October 26, 1992. Today, the parliamentary system is still the form of government that is the choice of Canadians. The federal structure, with the sharing of powers it entails, is the one formula that can take into account Canada's geographical realities, the diversity of its cultural communities and its dual legal and linguistic heritage. Canada's first minority government was in 1921 under Liberal Mackenzie King. Then in the 1950s and 1960s, Canadians were governed by four minority governmnts in a row. John Diefenbaker failed to get majorities in 1957 and 1962.

Lester Pearson won the election in 1963, but with a minority, and did the same in 1965. Pearson was the only Prime Minister so far never to head a majority government.
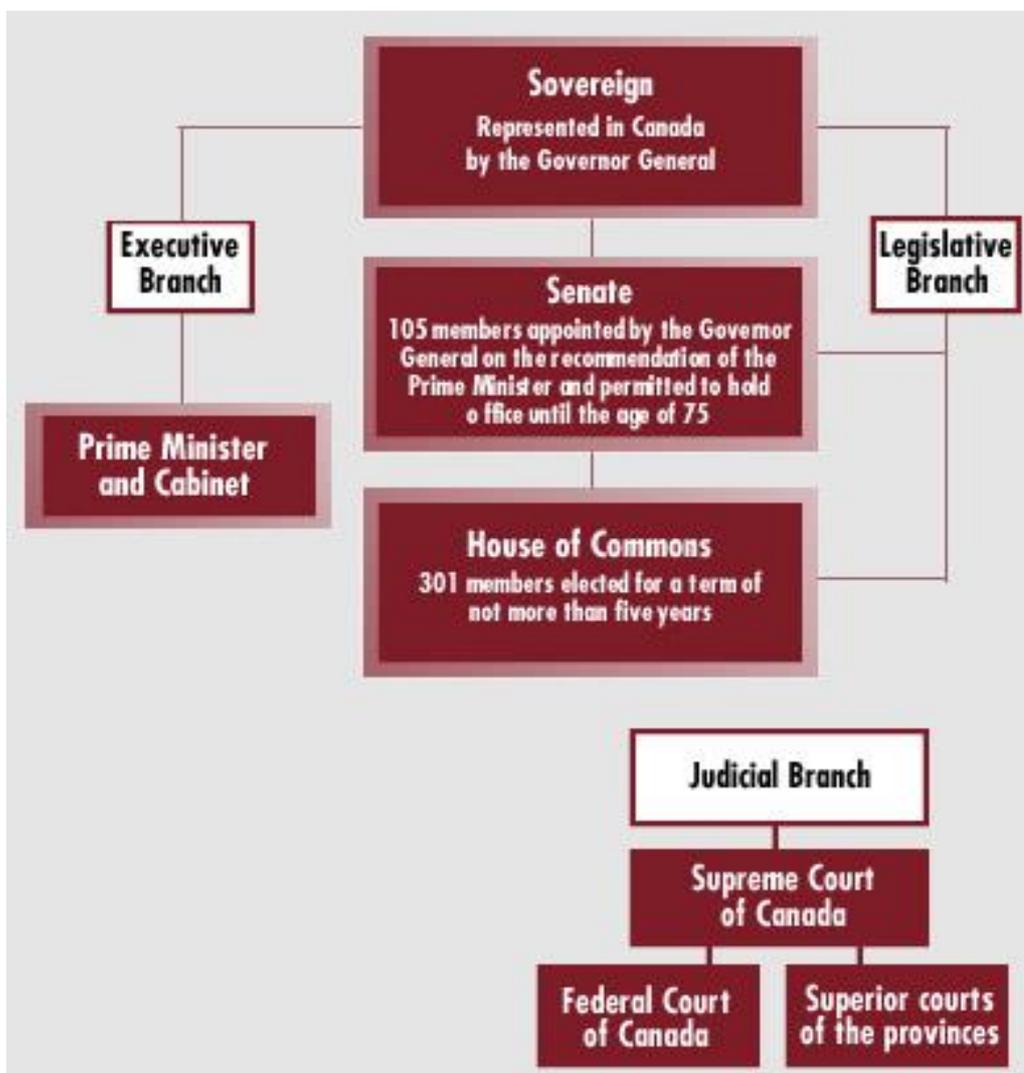
THE SENATE

The Senate is the Upper House of the Canadian Parliament through which all legislation must pass before it becomes law. Its members, appointed by the Governor General on the recommendation of the Prime Minister, hold office until age 75. (If appointed before June 1965 they hold office for life).

After 1975, there were 104 Senate seats apportioned on a regional basis: 24 from the Maritime Provinces; 24 from the Western provinces; 6 from Newfoundland; 24 from Quebec; 24 from Ontario; 1 from the Northwest Territories and Yukon. To the eligible for Senate appointment, a person must be a Canadian citizen, at least 30 years old, a resident of the province for which he or she is appointed, posses land in that province with an unencumbered value of $4000 and have a net estate of $4000.

A Senator for Quebec must either is resident in the division for which he or she is appointed, or have property qualification there. Technically, the Senate's legislative powers are equal to those of the House of Commons with two restrictions: first, on certain constitutional amendments, the Senate may delay resolutions of the House of Commons for up to 180 days, but cannot defeat them; second, the Senate cannot initiate money bills. In practice, however, the Senate's chief role is to provide technical reviews of legislation proposed in the House of Commons rather than to initiate political action.

These reviews are done by Senate committees, which inspect each bill clause-by clause and hear evidence from groups or individuals, who may be affected by the proposed legislation.

Historically, the Senate rarely used its powers to impede legislation originating from the elected House of Commons. From 1984 to 1990, however, the Liberal-dominated Senate attempted several times to stall or block legislation approved by the Conservative majority in the House of Commons.

In 1990, when the Senate blocked his government's goods and services tax. Mulroney temporarily increased the size of the Senate and added eight new Conservatives, ensuring that the measure would be made law. In recent years, there have been repeated calls, especially from the West, for constitutional reform, which would include an elected Senate with more representation from the Western provinces and Newfoundland. Plans for discussions leading to a Senate overhaul are now part of other constitutional discussions.

The Senate

THE HOUSE OF COMMONS

The House of Commons is Canada's 295-member elected federal assembly. Its members are chosen in general elections held at least once every five years. By-elections are held if a member dies or resigns between general elections. All bills governing matters within federal jurisdiction must be passed by a majority of members of Parliament to become law.

Members of Parliament usually belong to a political party and will normally vote with that party on any proposed legislation. Occasionally, members will break with their party on a vote and will sometimes leave the party they were affiliated with when elected to sit as independents or to join another political party within the House. Members of Parliament can also be elected as independent candidates who do not belong to a political party.

The Prime Minister is the leader of the political party able to command the support of a majority of the members of the House of Commons. If no party holds a clear majority of seats, a "majority government" is formed, usually led by the party with the most seats in Parliament, provided it has enough support from the other parties to enable it to pass legislation.

When the House of Commons is in session it convenes at two o'clock daily and 11 o'clock on Fridays when the Speaker of the House takes the chair. After the mace is laid on the table in front of the Speaker and the daily prayer is read, business commences.

Members of the government sit to the Speaker's right and the Oppositions sits on the left.

The leaders of other opposition parties sit on the left farther away from the Speaker's chair.

An important feature of Parliament is the daily question period at which time members question Cabinet ministers about their policies and actions. But most of Parliament's time is spent discussing proposed legislation introduced as "*bills*". Any member may introduce a bill, although this is usually done by a member of Cabinet. After readings in the House and detailed examination in committee, the bill will go for "third reading" in the House and if passed, will be forwarded to the Senate.

When a major piece of legislation introduced by the government is defeated in the House of Commons, the government is obliged to resign. The Governor General may then call on the leader of the Opposition to form a government but, in most cases, will call a general election so that the electorate can decide which party has the most public support for its policies.

Canada is one of the five self-governing dominions of the British Empire, fit the Imperial conference of 1926 Canada and the other dominions were declared to be "equal in status" with the mother country; and in 1931 the seal of legislative enactment was placed on this equality of.

This act described the British crown as "the symbol of the free association of the members of the British Common-wealth of Nations". It removed a number of disabilities in legislation from which dominion parliaments had suffered; and in general it paper led to remove from the dominions imperial sovereignty, It didn't, however, completely abolish all vestiges of Canada's former colonial status; for the appointment of the governor-general remained in the hands of the British government, and no provision was made for the amendment of the British North America act (which is the fundamental law of the Canadian constitution), save by enactment of the British Parliament.

The many unwritten convention of the British constitution hold good in Canada; but there is an important difference between the British and Canadian constitutions, in that the Canadian is federal.

The Federal Agreement of 1862 is embodied in the British North America Act which lays down, in sections 91-93, the subjects of legislation, which are assigned respectively to the dominion and the provinces. The former has exclusive legislative authority in all matters relating to the Legislative power.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Make up some dialogues from the information above.

House of Commons in session

The Speaker holds the position of highest authority in the House and sits in a raised chair at the north end of the Chamber. It is the Speaker's duty to maintain order and enforce the rules of procedure impartially. The Speaker represents the House in dealings with the Senate and the Crown, and protects the rights and privileges, the most important of which is the right to freedom of speech.

The Speaker is also responsible for the administration of the House of Commons.

The House employs first-year university students to work as pages. They sit below the Speaker and carry messages, deliver reading materials and make photocopies for Members.
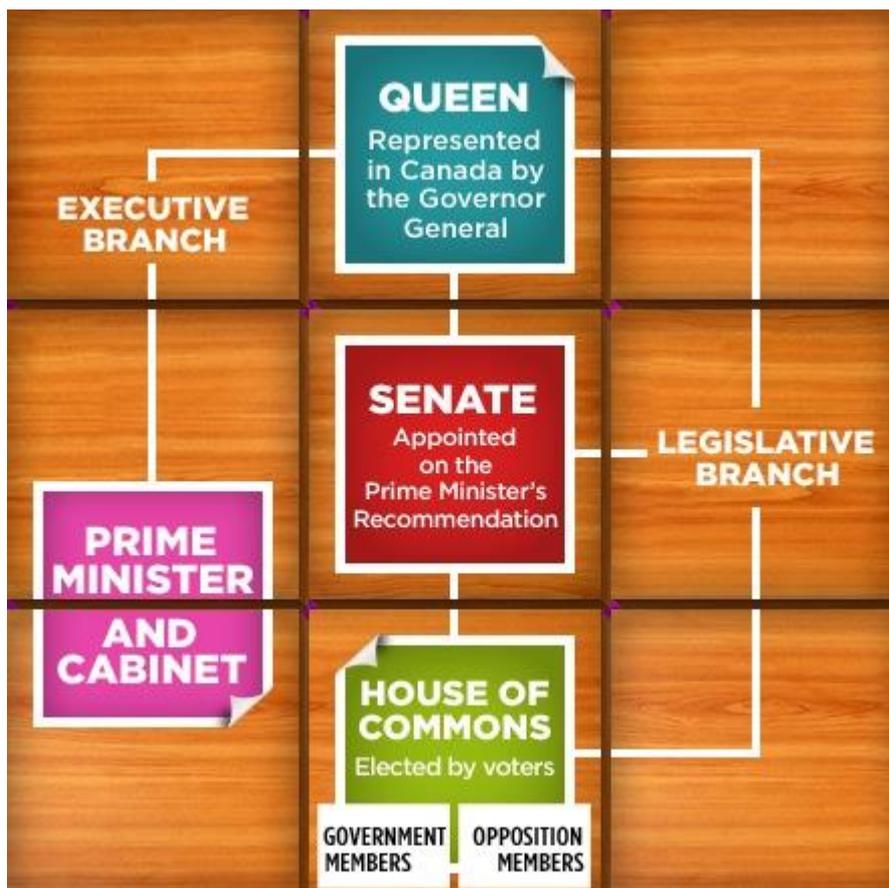
THE PRIME MINISTER

The Prime Minister is the pre-eminent figure in Canadian politics. The power and authority of the office come from the fact that the Prime Minister is the leader of the party (or group of parties) that has control of, if not a clear majority of seats in the House of Commons, at least more seats than any of the other parties. The Prime Minister is an elected Member of Parliament as well as national party leader and as such has a mandate to govern via programs and policies and to speak on behalf of Canada. The Prime Minister has control over appointments, including appointing cabinet members, senior staff in the public service and parliamentary secretaries; and appointing senators, judges, lieutenant governors, privy councillors, provincial administrators, and speakers of the senate.

In addition, the Prime Minister has the authority to dissolve parliament and can therefore control the timing of an election. The Prime Minister also controls the organization of government, including the power to: create or shut down crown corporations; create, modify or merge cabinet portfolios and bureaucratic agencies; and appoint royal commissions.

The Cabinet is a group of government ministers who, chosen and led by the Prime Minister, determines executive policies and is responsible for them to the House of Commons.

Cabinet members are usually given responsibility for heading specific areas of the government such as finance or foreign policy and will introduce legislation pertaining to them in the House of Commons. They will also explain or defend government actions when questioned in the House.

Cabinet ministers are generally chosen from members of the government's party in the House of Commons, although Senators are sometimes appointed to provide Cabinet representation from all parts of the country. When Senators join the Cabinet they do not usually head a government department because a Senator is constitutionally forbidden to introduce tax or 'money bill' legislation.

There are five categories of cabinet ministers:

- Department minister assumes responsibility for running government departments.
- Ministers with special parliamentary responsibilities.
- Ministers without portfolios who do not have responsibility for running a department and are often appointed to balance regional representation in the cabinet.
- Ministers of state for designated purposes that formulate and develop new policies outside normal departmental responsibilities.
- Other ministers of state who may assist departmental ministers, though the departmental minister remains legally responsible for the duties and functions performed by the minister of state.

Thinking about Prime Minister Justin Trudeau, do the following statements describe him very well, somewhat, not much, or not at all?

Statement	Very well	Somewhat	Not much	Not at all
Understands young people in Canada	34%	48%	13%	5%
Inspires young Canadians to care about Canadian politics	37%	43%	14%	6%
Is honest and trustworthy	29%	49%	16%	6%
Makes me proud to be Canadian	34%	39%	19%	8%
Is a political leader I can relate to	23%	43%	23%	11%

THE CABINET & THE MINISTERS

Cabinet ministers work with their staff to determine policies relating to their individual ministry and are responsible for presenting (or determining) those policies and the activities of their ministry in the House of Commons. Cabinet members are also responsible for pieces of legislation related to their ministries – bringing the bills before the House and monitoring them as progress through readings and committee stages before being voted into law. There is a look at the major ministries and their responsibilities.

Agriculture and Agriculture-Food: responsible for nearly all aspects of production, processing, marketing and protection of crops and livestock, including research and technology; soil conservation; food processing and inspection; and trade policies and support programs.

Canadian Heritage: responsible for both Canada's natural heritage (parks) and our historic and cultural heritage, including the arts, sports and multicultural programs.

Citizenship & Immigration: responsible for the administration of citizenship and immigration procedures and policies.

Finance: provides the federal government with an annual budget, research and advice on financial issues and monitors the performance of Canada's economy on a regular basis.

Fisheries & Oceans: responsible for the management of Canada's resources in the water, particularly in the ocean. That is not the responsibility of other jurisdictions. (Includes coastal and inland fisheries as well as public harbours.)

Foreign Affairs & International Trade: advises on foreign policy and enacts any policy decisions.

The ministry is also responsible for promoting and protecting Canada's interests abroad, including everything from assisting business wishing to export their products to managing our embassies and diplomatic staff and ensuring that Canadian citizens are treated fairly under the laws of foreign countries.

Health: responsible for funding and policy (including setting and enforcing standards) for a national health care system.

Human Resources Development: responsible for assisting in the development of Canada's human resources, including fostering and educated and mobile workforce, with income supports provided as necessary to seniors, the unemployed and the disabled.

Indian Affairs & Northern Development: responsible for meeting the federal government's treaty obligations to Inuit and First Nations people, including provision of basic services; also responsible for negotiating and overseeing the implementation of claims settlements.

Justice: responsible for providing legal services to all government departments and agencies and for supervising the administration of justice.

National Defence: responsible for the management of Canada's armed forces as well as all issues related to the defence of citizens at home and participation in Canada's military obligations abroad.

National Revenue: responsible for the administration of the Custom and Excise Acts, as well as import and export taxes and permits.

Natural Resources: responsible for planning and proposing national policies dealing with energy, mines and resources (renewable and non-renewable), including the research of conservation and development strategies.

Solicitor general: responsible for everything within the jurisdiction of Canada's parliament that is not by law assigned somewhere else, including prisons, the parole process and parole boards, the RCMP and CSIS.

Transport: responsible for overseeing national transportation policies for a competitive, safe and environmentally sustainable transportation system.

Exercise 1. Design the Cabinet of ministers in Canada.

Exercise 2. Compare the Cabinet of ministers in Canada and Ukraine.

THE PRIVY COUNCIL OFFICE

The Privy Council office is directed by the senior member of the public service, the Clerk of the Privy Council, who also serves as the Secretary to the cabinet. As part of the executive branch of government, the Office staffs the cabinet secretariat and provides services to ensure the smooth functioning of the Cabinet and cabinet meetings. In its advisory capacity, the Privy Council Office advises the Prime Minister on government appointments, relations with Parliament and the Monarchy, the roles and responsibilities of ministers and the organization of government.

The Office assists in the co-ordination of policy, ensuring that new proposals are compatible both with existing policy and the government's objectives.

During a transition period between governments, the Privy Council Office assists in the winding down of outgoing administrations and the start-up of the newly elected government.

The Privy Council Office's primary responsibilities are to ensure the smooth functioning of the machinery of government and the decision-making process, provide support to the Cabinet, monitor developments throughout the government, and act a broker to resolve governmental problems.

Privy Council Chamber

Structure of the Executive Branch

Prime Minister

Cabinet

Cabinet Committees

Treasury Board

Central Agencies

Finance	Privy Council Office	Treasury Board Secretariat
• Fiscal Policy • Tax Policy • Federal Budget	• Department of the Prime Minister • Government's Policy Agenda	• Management Office • Budget Office • People Management

Departments

5

Three Branches of Government

⭐1 What branch can declare laws unconstitutional?

⭐2 To whom do cabinet members report?

⭐3 What branch of government initiates and approves laws?

Legislative (makes laws)

Executive (carries out laws)

Judicial (evaluates laws)

Senate — House of Representatives

President

Supreme Court

Vice President — Cabinet

Other Federal Courts

THE TREASURY BOARD

This is a Cabinet Committee that manages the government's financial and administrative duties. The president of the Treasure Board works with the financial minister and four other ministers.

In the new government, those members are the ministers of National Defence, Justice, Public Works and Government services, and veterans Affairs. The board makes recommendations to cabinet on the allocation of funds for approved programs and is also responsible for, among other things, negotiating contracts with the public service employees.

The Treasury Board is a committee of the Privy Council that reviews planned expenditures and programs proposed by the various government departments, and assigns priorities to each.

The Board is responsible for preparing a long-range and comprehensive fiscal plan that projects government income and expenses for up to four years; it also prepares operational plans for departmental programs. The Board's estimates of the costs of existing programs, major statutory payments (such as transfer payments) and public debt charges from the basis of the main estimates, which are tabled by the first of March each year for review by various House committees.

The Treasury Board is also responsible for administrative policy; organization of the public service; and financial, expenditure and personnel management.

In 1988, the Board was also given responsibility for the policies and programs of the Official Languages Act. The Board's Secretariat negotiates collective agreements with the federal public service, acting as employer on the government's behalf.

Legislation and government policies are administered through departments, departmental branches and corporations, corporations owned or controlled by the government. Departments and departmental corporations are accountable to a Cabinet minister and ultimately to Parliament; they perform research, administrative, advisory, supervisory or regulatory roles. Crown corporations usually operate in a competitive or commercial environment and some are accountable to Parliament through a minister as well.

JUSTICE SYSTEM

Scales of Justice, The blindfolded Lady Justice symbolizes the impartial manner in which our laws are administered: blind to all considerations but the facts

The Canadian justice system guarantees everyone due process under the law. Our judicial system is founded on the *presumption of innocence* in criminal matters, *meaning everyone is innocent until proven guilty.* Canada's legal system is based on a heritage that includes the rule of law, freedom under the law, democratic principles and due process. Due process is the principle that the government must respect all of legal rights a person is entitled to under the law.

Canada is governed by an organized system of laws. These laws are the written rules intended to guide people in our society. They are made by elected representatives. The courts settle disputes and the police enforce the laws. The law in Canada applies to everyone, including judges, politicians and the police. Our laws are intended to provide order in society and a peaceful way to settle disputes, and to express the values and beliefs of Canadians.

The **police** are there to keep people safe and to enforce the law. You can ask the police for help in all kinds of situations – if there's been an accident, if someone has stolen something from you, if you are a victim of assault, if you see a crime taking place or if someone you know has gone missing.

There are different types of police in Canada.

There are provincial police forces in Ontario and Quebec and municipal police departments in all provinces. The Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP) enforces federal laws throughout Canada, and serves as the provincial police in all provinces and territories except Ontario and Quebec, as well as in some municipalities. Remember, the police are there to help you. Almost all police forces in Canada have a process by which you can bring your concerns to the police and seek action.

Lawyers can help you with legal problems and act for you in court. If you cannot pay for a lawyer, in most communities there are legal aid services available free of charge or at a low cost.

The legal system in Canada is derived from English common law, except in Quebec, where the provincial system of civil law is based on the French Code Napoleon. The federal judiciary is headed by the Supreme Court of Canada, made up of a chief justice and eight associate judges, three of whom must come from Quebec. It sits in Ottawa and is the final Canadian appellate court for all civil, criminal, and constitutional cases. The next leading tribunal, the Federal Court of Canada, is divided into a Trial Division and an Appeal Division and has jurisdiction over a small range of specialized areas: such as admiralty law, income tax, patents and customs. Once called the Exchequer Court, the Federal Court is administered by and deals with matters concerning the federal government.

It hears a variety of cases, notably involving claims against the federal government. Provincial courts are established by the provincial legislatures, and, although the names of the courts are not uniform, each province has a similar three-tiered court system. Judges of the Supreme Court and the Federal Court and almost all judges of the higher provincial courts are appointed and paid by the federal government and may hold office until age 75.

In most provinces there is an appeal court and a trial court, sometimes called the Court of Queen's Bench or the Supreme Court. There are also provincial courts for lesser offences, family courts, traffic courts and small claims courts for civil cases involving small sums of money.

Under the B.N. act, the administration of justice, including the constitution of the provincial courts, comes within the jurisdiction of the provincial legislatures: with this exception that the criminal law comes within the Jurisdiction of the dominion parliaments.

The judges of the provincial courts are. However, appointed by the dominion government; and are removable by the governor-general only on address of the senate and the House of Commons.

Since 1625 Canada has had a supreme court; and both from this court and from the provincial courts there may be, in certain cases, an appeal to the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council in England.

Exercise 1. Illustrate with the help of diagram the score of the Canadian Court System.

Exercise 2. Generate the functions of the courts.

Outline of Canada's Court System
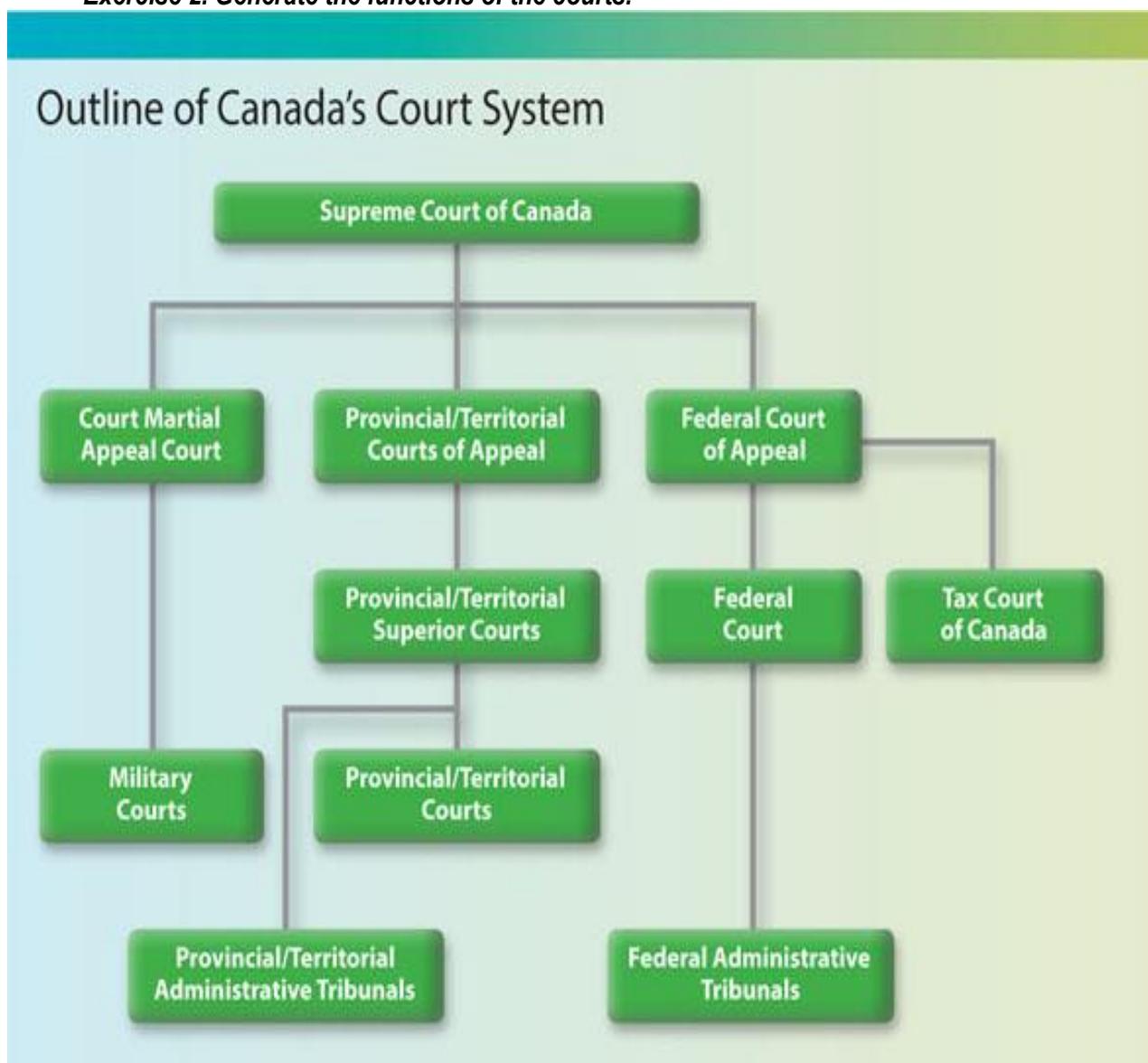
THE SUPREME COURT OF CANADA

The Supreme Court of Canada is Canada's highest court of law. It was created by federal statute in 1875. Originally, Supreme Court decisions could be appealed to a special tribunal in England, but such appeals were abolished for criminal cases in 1933 and for civil cases in 1949.

Since then, the Supreme Court of Canada has been the court of the last resort for every case – criminal or civil- commenced in a Canadian court. The Supreme Court has jurisdiction to hear appeals from the courts of appeal of each province, as well as from the Federal Court of Canada. The Court is also empowered to consider questions referred to it by the federal cabinet, and to rule on the legality of bills submitted by the government. The Constitution Act, 1982, with its new Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms, has expanded the role of the courts in general and of the Supreme Court in particular.

Though it has always been within the power of Canadian courts to declare laws or other government actions invalid, this power had narrow limits prior to 1982. Legislation could only be struck down if the government introducing it had exceeded its legislative authority as defined in the Constitution Act, 1867. In other words, the federal government was not permitted to legislate on matters within provincial legislative authority, and the provincial governments were not permitted to legislate on matters within federal legislative authority. As long as the legislation satisfied that test, it was valid.

But since the Constitution Act became law in 1982, the courts have had the power to strike down legislation or invalidate other government actions if they infringe or deny any of the fundamental rights and freedoms recognized by the Charter of Rights and Freedoms.

This new power has made Supreme Court judges the watchdogs of Parliament and, ultimately, the guardians of the constitutionally guaranteed rights. As the highest court in the land, it is the Supreme Court of Canada that has the final word on whether laws violate the Constitution.

The Supreme Court consists of 9 judges, including the Chief Justice. Three of the judges must be appointed from Quebec. By convention 3 have usually been appointed from Ontario, 2 from the West and one from Atlantic Canada.

Exercise 1. Differentiate the functions of the Supreme Court.

Exercise 2. Describe the history of the court system in Canada.
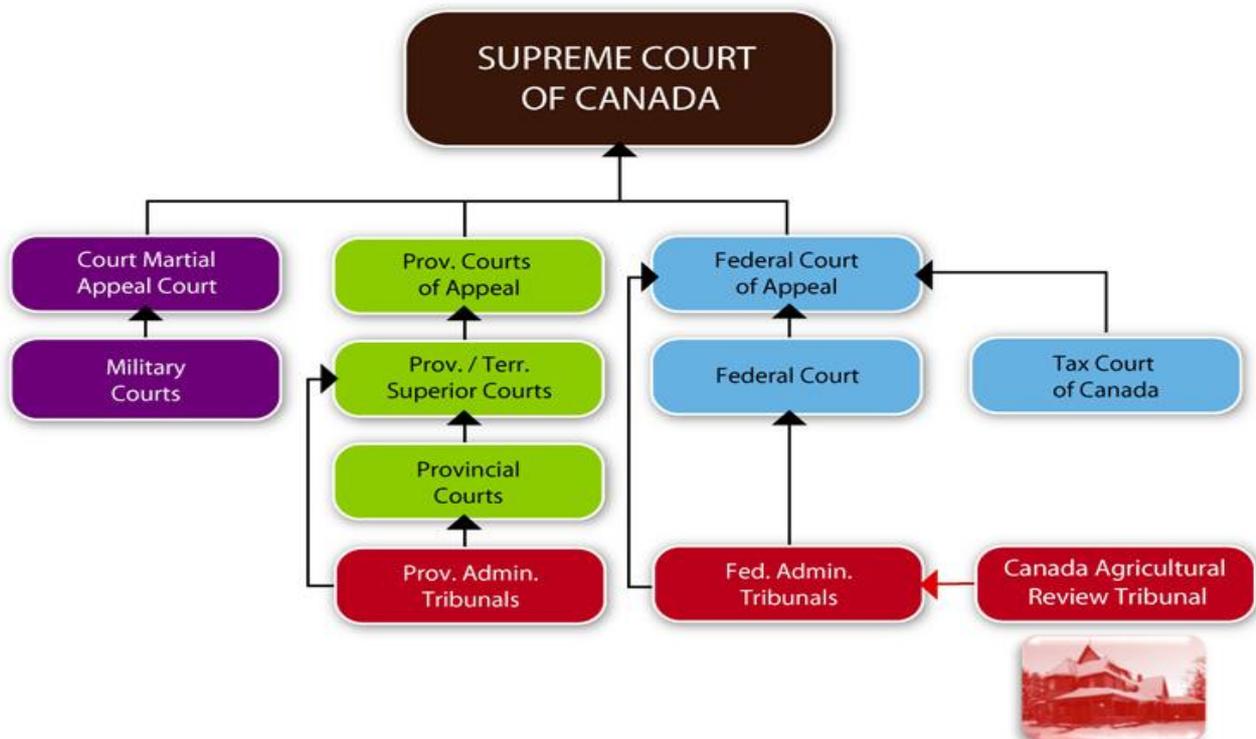
THE SCORE OF THE COURT SYSTEM

Appellate Courts

When a decision of the provincial superior courts is to be appealed, these courts hear the appeal and decide upon it. An appeal is not a new trial; there are rarely any witnesses called and the judges do not rehear the whole case. Instead, they examine written transcripts of the trial and listen to legal arguments presented by the party's lawyers.

The appellate courts are provincial institutions and are called the Court of Appeal, the Supreme Court Appeal Division or Appellate Division, the judges are appointed by the federal government.

The Superior Court of Original Jurisdiction

This is the highest court at the provincial level, with jurisdiction to hear all civil and criminal cases, unless a statute specifically says otherwise. The name of the superior court differs among provinces. It can be called the Court of Queen's Bench, the High Court or the Supreme Court Trial Division. The judges of these courts are appointed and paid by the federal government.

District or County Courts

These trial courts hear all but the most serious criminal matters and civil matters up to a certain dollar value. The judges of these courts are also appointed by the federal government.

Provincial Courts

This is the lowest ring of the judicial ladder. The jurisdiction of the provincial courts is limited by statute to the less serious criminal matters and civil cases involving relatively small sums of money.

These judges are appointed and paid by the province in which they serve.

Canada's Constitution establishes Parliament's authority and sets out its powers for making laws. Parliament is composed of the Queen, the Senate and the House of Commons. The Queen is the formal head of state in Canada and is represented by the Governor General. No bill can become law without the Royal assent given by the Queen or her representative.

The Senate is an appointed upper chamber of 104 Members who examine legislation introduced by the House of Commons and initiate their own bills. The House of Commons consists of 295 elected Members and is responsible for most of the legislation introduced in Parliament.

Two of key features of the system of government are that it is responsible and representative.

The Cabinet has executive council of ministers with specific duties is responsible to the House of Commons for the way it runs the government.

If the House of Commons indicates by a vote that it does not have confidence in the Cabinet's ability.

The Cabinet must either resign (the Governor General will ask the Leader of the Opposition to form a new government) or the Prime Minister will ask that Parliament be dissolved and an election held. The representative government is one which is elected by the people to act on their behalf regulation of trade and commerce, military and naval defence, navigation and shipping, banking and currency, marriage and divorce; the latter in all matters relating to education, municipal government, property and civil rights within the province, licences and etc.

It seems to have been the original intention of the framers of the constitution to invest the dominion parliament with an overriding legislative authority; but the Judicial interpretation of the act has to some extend nullified this intention, and the provincial legislatures have been pronounced to be sovereign within the sphere assigned to them. As a result, Federal control of social welfare, for example, has been rendered difficult by the decisions of the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council.

Exercise 1. Specify the various courts.

Exercise 2. Compare the Court system in Canada and Ukraine.

Exercise 3. Make up some dialogues from the information above.

GOVERNMENT & OPPOSITION PARTIES

Provincial & Territorial Government

The government of each of Canada's ten provinces is in theory headed by a lieutenant governor, who represents the sovereign of Great Britain and is appointed by the governor-general on the advice of the federal Prime Minister. Like the governor-general, however, the lieutenant governor has little actual power, and in practice the chief executive of each province is the premier, who is responsible to a unicameral provincial legislature. Yukon Territory and the Northwest Territories are both governed by federally appointed commissioners, assisted in the Northwest Territories by a legislative assembly and in Yukon Territory by an elected council and legislature.

A third territory, Nunavut, will be formally created in 1999 and will have a similar governmental makeup to the other two territories. The House of Commons is a rectangular room divided by a central aisle. The Government sits on the Speaker's right and the Opposition on the left.

In eight out of the nine provinces the legislature is unicameral, being composed of a legislative assembly, elected by the people for a term of four years. Only in Quebec is there a second chamber styled a legislative council and composed of nominees of the provincial Government.

The strongest national political parties in Canada during the 20th century traditionally have been the Liberal Party and the Progressive Conservative Party, also known as Tories.

However, a voter backlash in the early 1990s has resulted in great upheaval in the Canadian political picture, and established groups such as these two parties have lost much of their powers.

Although they agree on many issues, the Liberals have generally supported government intervention to promote the general welfare, while the Conservatives have favored free enterprise and the limited state. The smaller New Democratic Party, by contrast, endorsed social democracy and the rights of organized labor, and found support in Ontario and the western provinces.

The new Alberta-based Reform Party has become an increasingly significant vehicle of conservative sentiment in English Canada, outside the Maritime Provinces.

The Bloc Quebecois, a splinter from the Conservatives, has risen in prominence by espousing Quebec sovereignty. To a degree, this party acts as the federal arm of the Party Quebecois, a Quebec-based party that held power in the province from 1976 to 1985.

Major Political Parties

Party and Party Leaders are (left to right):
Conservative Party of Canada – The Right Honourable Stephen Harper, Prime Minister of Canada
New Democratic Party – Mr. Thomas Mulcair
Leader of the Official Opposition in Parliament
Liberal Party of Canada – Mr. Justin Trudeau
Bloc Quebecois Party – Ms. Pauline Marois
Green Party – Ms. Elizabeth May

THE BREAKDOWN OF THE NUMBER OF SEATS FOR EACH PARTY IN THE HOUSE OF COMMONS

TOTAL COMMONS SEATS = 308		
Conservative Party = 164	New Democratic Party = 100	Liberal Party = 35
Bloc Quebecois = 5	Green Party = 1	Independant = 2	Vacant = 1

The 308 (336) House of Commons seats is divided amongst the Provinces and Territories, based on a population, as follows:

Note: figures in the brackets show proposed increased number of seats for 2016.

British Columbia 36 (42) Alberta 28 (34) Saskatchewan 14 Manitoba 14 Ontario 106 (119) Quebec 75 (78) New Brunswick 10 Nova Scotia 11 Prince Edward Island 4 Newfoundland & Labrador 7 Yukon Territory 1 Northwest Territories 1 Nunavut Territory 1

Exercise 1. Intepret the political programm of each party.

Exercise 2. Find out the add information and make a report in class.

Major political parties in Canada

THE NATIONAL FLAG

Fired, 11-pointed maple leaf appears on a white field; fit each end is a broad, vertical red stripe. The maple leaf is a national emblem. The National Flag was adopted by Parliament October 22, 1964 and proclaimed by Queen Elizabeth II. It was inaugurated on February 15, 1965.

It is a red flag of the proportions two by length and one by width, containing in its centre a white square, the width of the flag, bearing a single, red, stylised maple of the leaf.

The red-white-red pattern comes from the flag of the Royal Military College, Kingston, founded in 1876. Red and white had been colours of France and England since the Middle Ages and the national colours of Canada since 1921. The Union Jack is our official Royal Flag. The Canadian Red Ensign served as the Canadian flag for about 100 years. The provinces and territories also have flags that embody their distinct traditions.

The National Flag is to be flown daily at all federal government building, airports and military bases and establishments within and outside Canada.

When flown with other flags, it should be given a place of honour.

The maple leaf has been looked upon as an emblem of Canada since the early 1700s. Red and white were declared Canada's official colours by King George V November 21, 1921.

The maple leaf is Canada's best-known symbol. Maple leaves were adopted as a symbol by French-Canadians in the 1700s, have appeared on Canadian uniforms and insignia since the 1850s, and are carved into the headstones of our fallen soldiers buried overseas and in Canada.

It is said that the lily flower ("fleur-de-lys") was adopted by the French king in the year 496. It became the symbol of French royalty for more than a thousand years, including the colony of New France. Revived at Confederation, the fleur-de-lys was included in the Canadian Red Ensign. In 1948 Quebec adopted its own flag, based on the Cross and the fleur-de-lys.

The Crown has been a symbol of the state in Canada for 400 years. Canada has been a constitutional monarchy in its own right since Confederation in 1867 during Queen Victoria's reign. Queen Elizabeth II who has been Queen of Canada since 1952, marked her Golden Jubilee in 2002, and celebrates her Diamond Jubilee (60 years as Sovereign) in 2012. The Crown is a symbol of government, including Parliament, the legislatures, the courts, police services and the Canadian Forces. The Canadian Red Ensign served as the national flag for 100 years, and has been carried officially by veterans since 2005.

Exercise 1. Review the history of establishment of the national flag.

Exercise 2. Describe the sense of the Canadian flag.

"THE CANADIAN COAT OF ARMS"

As an expression of national pride after the First World War, Canada adopted an official coat of arms and a national motto, *A Mari Usque Ad Mare*, which in Latin means "from sea to sea". The arms contain symbols of England, France, Scotland and Ireland as well as red maple leaves. Today the arms can be seen on dollar bills, government documents and public buildings.

Canada received the coat of arms in 1921. The creation of coats of arms dates back to the Middle Ages. Centuries ago few could not read, nor did they have access to print material, pictures or the other means we now use to identify people. Heraldry was developed as a form of picture – writing, used in the Middle Ages to create visual emblems that identified individuals or members of a community or nation, particularly on the field of battle.

Over time, the development of such symbols became quite sophisticated; a coat of arms could identify not only the individual but tell if his father was still alive, his birth order, whether or not he was married, and the prestige of his branch of the family. In war, the device was painted on a shield; in peace, it would be embroidered on a coat or banner. Because of its significance, heraldry came to be carefully regulated: colleges of arms controlled the grant and use of them.

At the time of Confederation, Canada did not have a coat of arms, and used the Royal Arms of the United Kingdom to identify the officers of the Government of Canada. By 1868 however, a Great Seal was required and the government adopted a design that was also used as the Arms of Canada.

The design showed the emblems of the original four provinces of the federation – Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Quebec and Ontario – on a shield.

When new province joined the federation, their emblems were added to the shield and the design became fragmented and confusing as the provinces multiplied.

In 1919, the governor general convened a special committee to study the question of a Canadian coat of arms; a request for a grant of arms was later submitted to the sovereign.

Canada's Coat of Arms was granted by royal proclamation of King George V on November 21, 1921. Although simplified in faithful to that original design.

The most important part of the design is the shield, which shows the emblems of the Irish founding peoples (English, Scottish, Irish and French) with an added sprig of distinctly Canadian maple leaves. The shield is supported on one side by the lion of England holding the Royal Union flag and the unicorn of Scotland holding a banner of royalist France on the other.

A royal helmet and mantle sit above the shield, with a crest showing a royal lion holding a maple leaf on top of the helmet. (The crest is the symbol used on the Governor General's standard.)

The imperial crown above the crest represents the monarch as Canada's head of state.

Below the shield is Canada's motto, "A Mari usque ad Mare" (from sea to sea) which is based on a verse from Psalm 72 of the Bible: "He shall have domination from sea to sea and from the river unto the ends of the earth". The floral emblems of the four founding nations are found at the base of the design: the English rose, the Scottish thistle, the French fleur-de-lis and the shamrock of Ireland.

It includes three red maple leaves below the royal arms of England, Scotland, Ireland, and France. The shield bears the royal arms of England (upper left); Scotland (upper right); Ireland (lower left); and France (lower right), of British lion holds the Union Jack.

Its unicorn holds the fleur-de-lis of France. Canada's coat of arms represents national sovereignty and is used on federal government property such as buildings, official seals, money, passports, proclamations and publications as well as badges of some members of the armed forces. This national symbol is protected from unauthorized commercial use by the *Trade Marks Act*.

The towers, arches, sculptures and stained glass of the Parliament Buildings embody the French, English and Aboriginal traditions and the Gothic Revival architecture popular in the time of Queen Victoria. The buildings were completed in the 1860s. The Centre Block was destroyed by an accidental fire in 1916 and rebuilt in 1922.

The Library is the only part of the original building remaining. The Peace Tower was completed in 1927 in memory of the First World War. The Memorial Chamber within the Tower contains the Books of Remembrance in which are written the names of soldiers, sailors and airmen who died serving Canada in wars or while on duty. The provincial legislatures are architectural treasures.

The Quebec National Assembly is built in the French Second Empire style, while the legislatures of the other provinces are Baroque, Romanesque and neoclassical, reflecting the Greco-Roman heritage of Western civilization in which democracy originated.

The National Ahthem: O CANADA!

"O Canada" was proclaimed as the National Anthem in 1980. It was first sung in Québec City in 1880. French and English Canadians sing different words to the National Anthem.

The Royal Anthem of Canada, "God Save the Queen (King)", can be played or sung on any occasion when Canadians wish to honour the Sovereign.

O Canada

O Canada! Our home and native land!
True patriot love in all thy sons command
With glowing hearts we see thee rise
The true North strong and free!
From far and wide, O Canada we stand on guard for thee
God keep our land glorious and free!
O Canada, we stand on guard for thee
O Canada, we stand on guard for thee

God Save the Queen

God Save our gracious Queen!
Long live our noble Queen!
God save The Queen!
Send her victorious,
Happy and glorious,
Long to reign over us,
God save The Queen!

The music of "O *Canada!*" was composed by Calixa Lavallee and the lyrics were written in French by Adolphe Basile Routhier in Quebec City. Originally called *Chant National,* it was first performed at a banquet in Quebec City on June 24, 1880. The anthem grew in popularity in Quebec but was not heard in English until the early 1900s. There have been several English versions of the work, the most popular of which was written in 1908 by Robert Stanley Weir.

In 1967 a Special Joint Committee of the Senate and the House of Commons was formed to recommend official versions of Canada's National and Royal Anthems. With a few minor changes, the official English version of O *Canada* is based on Weir's lyrics.

On June 27, 1980 the House of Commons passed Bill C-36 designating both the music and lyrics of O *Canada* as Canada's national anthem. It was proclaimed July 1, 1980.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Make up a small report and give a talk in class.

POLITICS & ELECTIONS
REGISTERED FEDERAL POLITICAL PARTIES

Federal political parties can only be registered at election time, when they qualify for registration by fielding at least 50 candidates by the nomination deadline in a forthcoming election.

In between elections, parties can be founded and organized and apply for registration to the Chief Electoral Officer at Elections Canada.

Bloc Quebecois – leader: Gilles Dieppe.
Canadian Action Party – leader: Paul Heller.
Christian Heritage Party of Canada – leader: Ronald Gary.
Liberal Party of Canada – leader: The Right Hon, Jean Chertier.
Marxist – Leninist Party of Canada
Natural Law Party of Canada – leader: Nell Paterson.
New Democratic Party – leader: Alexia McDonough.
Progressive Conservative Party of Canada – leader: Jean Chariest.
Reform Party of Canada – leader: E. Preston Manning.
The Green Party of Canada – leader: Joan Russo.

POPULATION
FEDERAL ELECTIONS: EARLY FACTS & FIGURES

Total number of eligible voters: 19249300

Total number of candidates: 1672

Total number of ballots rejected: 187559

Total number of registered parties: 10

Highest percentage of rejected ballots: 35(Quebec)

Total number of ballots cast: Lowest percentage of rejected ballots: 23 (Alberta) 12984069

The candidates:

- 24,4% were women;
- 95,5% belonged to a registered political party;
- 45 candidates ran as independents and 31 ran for parties that were not officially registered.

The parties failed to field 50 candidates and lost or did not achieve registered party status:

- Communist Party of Canada
- Libertarian Party of Canada
- Party for the Commonwealth of C.
- Canada Party
- National Party of Canada
- Rainbow Coalition Party of Canada
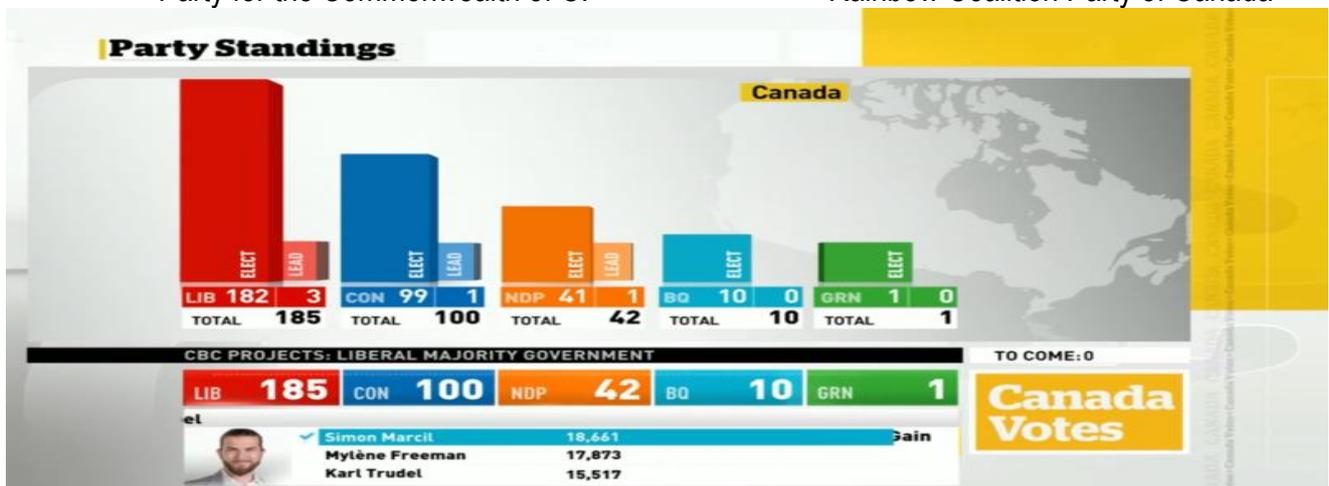
VOTING PROCEDURES DURING AN ELECTION PERIOD

- **Voter information card**

- Electors whose information is in the National Register of Electors will receive a voter information card. This confirms that your name is on the voters' list and states when and where you vote

- **I did not get a card**

- If you do not receive a voter information card, call your local elections office to ensure that you are on the voters' list. If you do not have the number, call Elections Canada, in Ottawa.

- **Advance poll and special ballot**

- If you cannot or do not wish to vote on Election Day, you can vote at the advance polls or by special ballot. The dates and location are on your voter information card.

- **On Election Day**

- Go to your polling station. The location is on your voter information card. Bring this card and proof of your identity and address to the polling station.

- **Marking the ballot**

- Mark an "X" in the circle next to the name of the candidate of your choice.

- **Voting is secret**

- Your vote is secret. You will be invited to go behind the screen to mark your ballot. Once marked, fold it and present it to the poll officials.

- **The ballot box**

- The poll official will tear off the ballot number and give your ballot back to you to deposit in the ballot box.

- **The election results**

When the polls close, every ballot is counted and the results are made public.
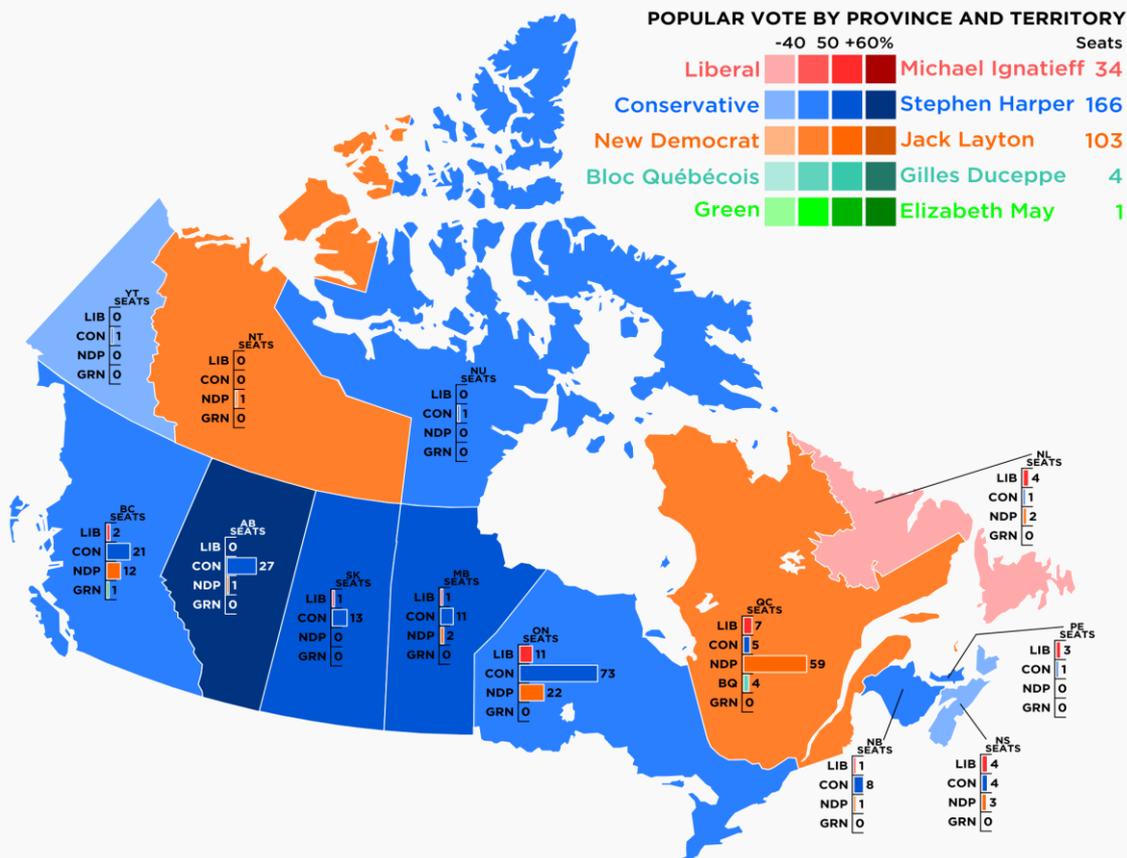
OTHER LEVELS OF GOVERNMENT IN CANADA

Local or municipal government plays an important role in the lives of our citizens. Municipal governments usually have a council that passes laws called "by-laws" that affect only the local community.

The council usually includes a mayor (or a reeve) and councillors or aldermen.

Municipalities are normally responsible for urban or regional planning, streets and roads, sanitation (such as garbage removal), snow removal, firefighting, ambulance and other emergency services, recreation facilities, public transit and some local health and social services. Most major urban centres have municipal police forces. Provincial, territorial and municipal elections are held by secret ballot, but the rules are not the same as those for federal elections. It is important to find out the rules for voting in provincial, territorial and local elections so that you can exercise your right to vote.

Government	Elected Officials	Some Responsibilities
Federal	Members of Parliament (MPs)	National Defence Foreign Policy Citizenship Policing Criminal Justice International Trade Aboriginal Affairs Immigration (shared) Agriculture (shared) Environment (shared)
Provincial & Territorial	Members of the Legislative Assembly (MLAs) Members of the National Assembly (MNAs) Members of the Provincial Parliament (MPPs) Members of the House of Assembly (MHAs)	Education Health Care Natural Resources Highways Policing (Ontario, Quebec) Property and Civil Rights Immigration (shared) Agriculture (shared) Environment (shared)
Municipal (local)	Mayor or Reeve Councillors or Aldermen	Social & Community Health Recycling Programs Transportation & Utilities Snow Removal Policing Firefighting Emergency Services

The **First Nations** have band chiefs and councillors who have major responsibilities on First Nations reserves, including housing, schools and other services. There are a number of provincial, regional and national Aboriginal organizations in their relationships with the federal, provincial and territorial governments.

DEFENDING CANADA

There is no compulsory military service in Canada. However, serving in the regular **Canadian Forces** (navy, army and air force) is a noble way to contribute to Canada and an excellent career choice. You can serve in your local part-time navy, militia and air reserves and gain valuable experience, skills and contacts. Young people can learn discipline, responsibility, and skills by getting involved in the cadets. You may also serve in the Coast Guard or emergency services in your community such as a police force or fire department. By helping to protect your community, you follow in the footsteps of Canadians before you who made sacrifices in the service of our country.

Canadians vote in elections for the people they want to represent them in the House of Commons. In each election, voters may re-elect the same members of the House of Commons or choose new ones. Members of the House of Commons are also known as members of Parliament or MPs. Under legislation passed by Parliament, federal elections must be held on the third Monday in October every four years following the most recent general election.

The Prime Minister may ask the Governor General to call an earlier election. Canada is divided into 308 electoral districts, also known as ridings or constituencies. An electoral district is a geographical area represented by a Member of Parliament (MP).

The citizens in each electoral district elect one MP who sits in the House of Commons to represent them, as well as all Canadians. Canadian citizens who are 18 years old or older may run in a federal election. The people who run for office are called candidates.

There can be many candidates in an electoral district. The people in each electoral district vote for the candidate and political party of their choice. The candidate who receives the most votes becomes the MP for that electoral district. One of the privileges of Canadian citizenship is the right to vote. You are eligible to vote in a federal election or cast a ballot in a federal referendum if you are:

- a Canadian citizen;
- at least 18 years old on voting day;
- on the voters' list.

The voters' lists used during federal elections and referendums are produced from the National Register of Electors by a neutral agency of Parliament called Elections Canada.

This is a permanent database of Canadian citizens 18 years of age or older who are qualified to vote in federal elections and referendums.

Once an election has been called, Elections Canada mails a voter information card to each elector whose name is in the National Register of Electors. The card lists when and where you vote and the number to call if you require an interpreter or other special services. Even if you choose not to be listed in the National Register of Electors or do not receive a voter information card, you can still be added to the voters' list at any time, including on Election Day. To vote either on Election Day or at advance polls, go to the polling station listed on your voter information card.

Canadian law secures the right to a secret ballot. This means that no one can watch you vote and no one should look at how you voted. You may choose to discuss how you voted with others, but no one, including family members, your employer or union representative, has the right to insist that you tell them how you voted. Immediately after the polling stations close, election officers count the ballots and the results are announced on radio and television, and in the newspapers. Ordinarily, after an election, the leader of the political party with the most seats in the House of Commons is invited by the Governor General to form the government.

After being appointed by the Governor General, the leader of this party becomes the Prime Minister. If the party in power holds at least half of the seats in the House of Commons, this is called a *majority government*. If the party in power holds less than half of the seats in the House of Commons, this is called a *minority government*.

The Prime Minister and the party in power run the government as long as they have the support or *confidence* of the majority of the MPs. When the House of Commons votes on a major issue such as the budget, this is considered a matter of confidence.

If a majority of the members of the House of Commons vote against a major government decision, the party in power is defeated, this usually results in the Prime Minister asking the Governor General on behalf of the Sovereign, to call an election.

The Prime Minister chooses the ministers of the Crown, most of them from among members of the House of Commons. Cabinet ministers are responsible for running the federal government departments.

The Prime Minister and the Cabinet ministers are called the Cabinet and they make important decisions about how the country is governed. They prepare the budget and propose most new laws.

Their decisions can be questioned by all members of the House of Commons.

The other parties that are not in power are known as opposition parties. The opposition party with the most members of the House of Commons is the Official Opposition or Her Majesty's Loyal Opposition. The role of opposition parties is to peacefully oppose or try to improve government proposals. There are three major political parties currently represented in the House of Commons: the Conservative Party, the Liberal Party, and the New Democratic Party.

The Canadian armed forces are integrated and are headed by the chief of the defense staff, who reports to the civilian minister of national defense. Under the defense staff is five major commands, organized according to function: maritime command, land force command, air command, communication command, and headquarters northern area command.

Canada is a member of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), and until 1994 allocated air and land forces to support NATO in Europe. Canada participates jointly with the USA in the North American Aerospace Defence Command (NORAD). It also contributes troops to United Nations peacekeeping operations. In the early 1990s the Canadian armed forces included about 78,100 people. Canadian security policy is based on three elements defence and collective security, arms control and disarmament, and the peaceful resolution of disputes. The Department of National Defence and the Canadian Forces support this policy by their contributions to strategic deterrence, conventional defence, sovereignty, and peacekeeping and arms control.

In addition, the Department of National Defence provides special support to other government departments in areas such as search and rescue, fisheries patrols, enforcement of drug prohibitions, disaster relief, and to civil powers in law enforcement. These tasks are carried out both in emergencies and where it complements military surveillance and control responsibilities.

Canada has an all – volunteer Armed Forces which, since 1968, has been a single body composed of what had been a separate army, navy and air force.

Canadian Armed Forces Bases

SENIOR CANADIAN MILITARY PERSONNEL

Chief of the Defence Staff
Vice – Chief of the Defence Staff
Deputy Chief of the Defence Staff
Chief of the Land Staff
Chief of the Maritime Staff
Chief of the Air Staff
Canadian Military Representatives, North Atlantic Treaty Organization
Deputy Commander – in Chief, North American Aerospace Defence
Commander, Canadian Defence Liaison Staff (London)
Commander, Canadian Defence Liaison Staff (Washington)

Army / Air Force

General Officers: General, Lieutenant – General, Major – General, Brigadier - General
Senior Officers: **Colonel**, Lieutenant – Colonel, Major
Junior Officers: Captain, Lieutenant, Second – Lieutenant
Non – commissioned Members: Chief Warrant Officer, Master Warrant Officer, Warrant Officer, Sergeant, Master Corporal, Corporal, Private

Navy

General Officers: Admiral, Vice – Admiral, Rear – Admiral, Commodore
Senior Officers: Captain (N), Commander, Lieutenant – Commander
Junior Officers: Lieutenant (N), Sub – Lieutenant, Acting Sub - Lieutenant
Non – commissioned Members: Chief Petty Officer 1st class, Chief petty Officer 2nd class, Petty Officer 1st class, petty Officer 2nd class, Master Seaman, Leading Seaman, Able Seaman.

HUMANITARIAN MISSIONS

Canadian Forces, in particular the Air Force, have taken part in numerous humanitarian aid missions since 1947. A notable mission was the Air Force's Operation Airbridge, the largest airlift in history.

Between July 5, 1992 and January 9, 1996, 1887 flights to the city of Sarajevo were completed.

The total airlift comprised 29894524 kg of food and medical supplies. Over 1100 medical evacuations were also carried out. Other operations include a deployment to Haiti where some 500 Canadian Air Force personnel built schools, restored water supplies, trained police officers and assisted in the restoration of the first democratic government in Haiti's 200-year history of independence.

The Canadian government took over command of this operation (Operation Pivot) in March of 1996 when the UN mandate expired. Funding for 750 of the 1900 foreign troops committed to Haiti was to be covered by Canada, outside the UN financial structure. Canadian troop commitment in Haiti was also increased from 500 to a total of 1000, including a contingent from the Royal Canadian Mounted Police. A more recent – and much larger – mission was the development of troops from all branches of the forces to assist Manitobans in the massive floods in the spring of 1997.

Conditions in the different operations undertaken through the years varied – at times during the Rwandan civil war Canadian Forces C-130 Hercules aircraft were the only source of humanitarian relief supplies for the UN force after other agencies had stopped their flights due to the dangerous and unpredictable nature of the situation.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Events	**When**	**Where**	**Score**

CANADA'S NATIONAL SYMBOLS

Canada's national symbols are influenced by natural, historical, and Aboriginal sources.

The use of the maple leaf as a Canadian symbol dates to the early 18th century. The maple leaf is depicted on Canada's current and previous flags, and on the Arms of Canada. The Arms of Canada is closely modelled after the royal coat of arms of the United Kingdom with French and distinctive Canadian elements replacing or added to those derived from the British version.

The Great Seal of Canada is a governmental seal used for purposes of state, being set on letters patent, proclamations and commissions, for representatives of the Queen and for the appointment of cabinet ministers, lieutenant governors, senators, and judges.

The Order of Canada & other Honours

All countries have ways to recognize outstanding citizens. Official awards are called honours, consisting of *orders, decorations*, and *medals*. After using British honours for many years, Canada started its own honours system with the Order of Canada in 1967, the centennial of Confederation.
If you know of fellow citizens who you think are worthy of recognition, you are welcome to nominate them. Information on nominations for many of these honours can be found

The Victoria Cross

The Victoria Cross (V.C.) is the highest honour available to Canadians and is awarded for the most conspicuous bravery, a daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice, or extreme devotion to duty in the presence of the enemy. The V.C. has been awarded to 96 Canadians since 1854, including:

- Then Lieutenant Alexander Roberts Dunn, born in present-day Toronto, served in the British Army in the Charge of the Light Brigade at Balaclava (1854) in the Crimean War, and was the first Canadian to be awarded the Victoria Cross.
- Able Seaman William Hall of Horton, Nova Scotia, whose parents were American slaves, was the first black man to be awarded the V.C. for his role in the Siege of Lucknow during the Indian Rebellion of 1857.
- Corporal Filip Konowal, born in Ukraine, showed exceptional courage in the Battle of Hill 70 in 1917, and became the first member of the Canadian Corps not born in the British Empire to be awarded the V.C.
- Flying ace Captain Billy Bishop, born in Owen Sound, Ontario, earned the V.C. in the Royal Flying Corps during the First World War, and was later an honorary Air Marshal of the Royal Canadian Air Force.
- Captain Paul Triquet of Cabano, Quebec, earned the V.C. leading his men and a handful of tanks in the attack on Casa Berardi in Italy in 1943 during the Second World War, and was later a Brigadier.
- Lieutenant Robert Hampton Gray, a navy pilot born in Trail, B.C., was killed while bombing and sinking a Japanese warship in August 1945, a few days before the end of the Second World War, and was the last Canadian to receive the V.C. to date.

BC 1871	AB 1905	SK 1905	MB 1870	ON 1867	QC 1867	NB 1867	NS 1867	PI 1873	NF 1949	YK 1898	NT 1870	NU 1999

CANADIAN ORDERS & DECORATIONS

History. Creation of the Order of Canada was announced by Prime Minister Lester B. Pearson in 1967. It was instituted on the centennial of Canadian Confederation, July 1, 1967. In 1997, the Order of Canada celebrates its 30th anniversary of awards recognizing outstanding Canadians.

Basis of Award. To honour Canadians for outstanding achievement and service to their country of humanity at large. Appointments are announced twice annually, around July 1 and January 1. Investitures occur three times a year, in February, April and October when the awards are given by the Governor General. *Eligibility*. Every Canadian is eligible to become a member.

Membership. There are three categories of membership: Companion of The Order of Canada (C.C.): no more than 15 may be appointed in any one year and the total number is not to exceed 165 living companions. Officer of The Order of Canada (O.C.): not more than 50 appointments annually.

Member of The Order of Canada (C. M.): Designed to recognize service in a locality or a particular field of activity. Not more than 100 appointments annually.

Badge stylised snowflake bearing the crown with a ribbon in the same proportions of white and red, which appear on the Canadian flag and the Latin motto *Desideranter Meliorem Patriam* – "They desire a Better Country". Worn at the neck by Companions and Officers and on the left breast by Members.

The Order of Military Merit

History. July 1, 1997 marks the 25th anniversary of the Order of Military Merit. (1972)

Basis of Award. To recognize exceptional service and conspicuous merit by regular and reserve members of Canada's Armed Forces. Appointments are made by the Governor General on the recommendation of the Chief of Defence Staff.

Eligibility. Members of the Canadian Armed Forces, regular and reserve.

Membership. Commander of the Order of Military Merit (C.M.M.): Commanders constitute 6% of the 1% of the Armed Forces who are annually eligible for an appointment. Officer of the Order of Military Merit (O.M.M.): Of the 1%, 30% may be made Officers.

Badge in the form of an enamelled blue cross-having expanded arms, with a blue ribbon edged in gold. Bears the words "Merit Merite Canada". Worn at the neck by Commanders and on the left breast by Officers and Members.

Victorian Cross (V.C.) (Canadian)

History. Approved by Queen Elizabeth II on February 2, 1993. The British Victoria Cross was created by Queen Victoria in 1856 and was awarded to Canadians in all wars until 1945. There have been 93 Canadian recipients of the British V.C. and none of the Canadian version.

Basis of Award. In recognition of "the most conspicuous bravery, a daring or pre- eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice or extreme devotion to duty, in the presence of the enemy". The V.C. will be awarded by the Governor General on the advice of the Military Valour Advisory Committee. It is the highest in the order of precedence in Canadian honours.

Eligibility. Members of the Canadian Forces or member of an allied armed force that is serving with or in conjunction with the Canadian Forces on or after January 1, 1993. The V.C. may be awarded posthumously. *Badge*. The Cross is a bronze straight armed cross, suspended from a crimson ribbon.

The face has, in the middle of the cross, a lion guardant standing on the Royal Crown, with the Latin inscription *Pro Valore* – "For Valour". The date of the act for which the decoration is bestowed is engraved in a raised circle on the reverse.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and use it in practice.

Exercise 2. Explain the score of the information.

The Star of Military Valour (S.M.V.)

History. Approved by Queen Elizabeth II on February 2, 1993.

Basis of Award. Awarded for distinguished and valiant service in the presence of the enemy.

Eligibility. Members of the Canadian Forces or a member of an allied armed force that is serving with or in conjunction with the Canadian Forces on or after January 1, 1993. The S.M.V. may be awarded posthumously. *Badge.* A gold star with four points with a maple leaf in each of the angles, on the face of which a gold maple leaf is superimposed in the centre of a sanguine field surrounded by a silver wreath of laurel and on the reverse of which the Royal Cypher and Crown and the Latin inscription *Pro Valour* – "For Valour" shall appear. The Star shall be worn, suspended from a crimson ribbon with two white stripes, immediately after any order and before the Star of Courage.

The Medal of Military Valour (M.M.V.)

History. Approved by Queen Elizabeth II on February 2, 1993.

Basis of Award. Awarded for an act of valour or devotion to duty in the presence of the enemy.

Eligibility. Members of the Canadian Forces or a member of an allied armed force that is serving with or in conjunction with the Canadian Forces on or after January 1, 1993. The M.M.V. may be awarded posthumously. *Badge.* A circular gold medal, on the face of which there shall be a maple leaf surrounded by a wreath of laurel and on the reverse of which the Royal Cypher and Crown and the Latin inscription Pro Valore – "For Valour" will appear. The medal shall be worn, from a crimson ribbon with three white stripes, immediately after the Meritorious Service Cross and before the Medal of Bravery. In 1997, the Decorations for Bravery, consisting of the Cross of Valour, The Star of Courage and the medal for Bravery, celebrate their 25th anniversary of honouring those who have risked their lives to save or protect others. These three Canadian decorations replaced the following non – combatant Commonwealth medals: the George Cross, the George medal and the Queen's Gallantry medal, respectively.

The Cross of Valour (C.V.)

History. Created in 1972, the Cross of Valour takes precedence before all orders and other decorations except the Victoria Cross. *Basis of Award*. Awarded for acts of the most conspicuous courage in circumstances of extreme peril. *Eligibility*. May be awarded to civilians or members of the Armed Forces. Only 17 have been awarded. May be awarded posthumously. *Badge.* A gold cross bearing the words "Valour Valance".

The Star of Courage (S.C.)

History. Created in 1972. *Basis of Award*. Awarded for acts of conspicuous courage in circumstances of great peril. *Eligibility*. May be awarded to civilians or members of the Armed Forces. May be awarded posthumously. *Badge*. A 4 – pointed Silver Star with the word "Courage".

The Medal of Bravery (M. B.)

History. Created in 1972. *Basis of Award*. Awarded for acts of bravery in hazardous circumstances. *Eligibility.* May be awarded to civilians or members of the Armed Forces. May be awarded posthumously. *Badge*. A circular silver medal with the words "Bravery Bravoure."

The Medal of Bravery (M. B.)

History. Created in 1972. *Basis of Award*. Awarded for acts of bravery in hazardous circumstances. Eligibility*. May be warded to civilians or members of the Armed Forces. May be awarded posthumously. *Badge*. A circular silver medal with the words "Bravery Bravoure".

Exercise 1. Find out some information on awards in Canada and give a talk in class.

Exercise 2. Try to understand the score of the orders.

Canada:
Order of Military
Merit,
Neck Badge

CANADIAN COINS

Several of the most popular symbols of Canada appear on Canadian coins

Other prominent symbols include the beaver, Canada goose, common loon, the Crown, the Royal Canadian Mounted Police, and more recently, the totem pole and Inuksuk. Canadian coins feature many of these symbols: the loon on the $1 coin, the Arms of Canada on the 50¢ piece, the beaver on the nickel. The penny, removed from circulation in 2013, featured the maple leaf. The Queen's image appears on $20 bank notes, and on the obverse of all current Canadian coins.

There are two maple leaves on the Canadian penny. The maple leaf is also on the Canadian flag. It is one of the most popular symbols of Canada. The beaver, Canada's national emblem, is on the Canadian nickel. Most of the first Europeans to come to Canada in the 1600's, came to get beaver fur pelts. A famous Canadian sailboat, The Bluenose, is on the Canadian dime. A Caribou is on the Canadian quarter. It is a large deer. There are many Caribou living in the Canadian North.

A Loon is on Canada's dollar coin. The Loon is a bird that lives on many Canadian Lakes and rivers. It makes a sound that is almost like a laugh. It's a very beautiful bird.
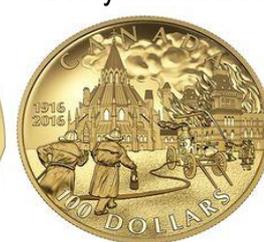
SUPERLATIVE CANADIAN FACTS

Largest province	Quebec	1540680 sq. km
Smallest province	Prince Edward Island	5660 sq. km
Largest city: by area	Timmons, Ontario	3004,3 sq. km
by population	Montreal, Quebec	1016376 people
by density	Montreal – Nord, Quebec	7396,3 people / sq. km
Smallest city: by area	L'Ile – Dorval, Quebec	0,18 sq. km
by population	L'Ile – Dorval, Quebec	2 people
by density	Moisie, Quebec	0,6 people / sq. km
Largest Island	Baffin Island, NWT	
Northernmost point	Cape Columbia,Ellesmere	
Southernmost point	Middle Island, Lake Erie	
Easternmost point	Cape Spear, NFD	
Westernmost point	Yukon – Alaska boundary	
Northernmost community	Grise Fiord, Ellesmere	
Southernmost community	Pelee Island South, Ont.	
Easternmost community	Blackhead, Nfd.	
Westernmost community	Beaver Creek, Yt.	
Highest city	Kimberley, BC.	
Highest community	Lake Louise, Alta.	
Northernmost ice free port	Stewart, BC.	
Longest river	Mackenzie River, NWT	
Largest lake (partly) in C.	Superior, Ontario	
Largest lake(entirely) in C	Great Bear Lake, NWT	31328 sq. km
Deepest lake	Great Slave Lake NWT	614 m
Highest mountain	Mt. Logan, Yt.	5 959 m
Highest waterfall	Della Falls, BC	440 m(more than 1 leap)
Greatest waterfall by V	Horseshoe Falls, Niagara	5365cubicmeters/second
Longest bridge	Pierre – Laporte	668 m
Longest covered bridge	At Hartland, NB	391 m
Longest tunnel	Mt. Macdonald Railway T.	14, 6 km

12th ………………silk, leather   60th ………………………diamond

The $351 million Canadian Museum for Human Rights,

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

Canada ranks among the leading countries in the world in international trade. Canadians history has been strongly associated with trading. In the early days, Canada's economic development was dependent upon the export of large volumes of raw materials.

Over the years, raw materials have declined as .a percentage of Canada's exports, while processed, fabricated, and manufactured goods have increased.

By 1990 approximately 80% of Canada's export was processed to some degree. Since about the mid-1970s, the leading Canadian export have been automobiles and automobile parts, and other types of machinery and equipment, including such high-technology products as portable electrical transformers, computerized communication systems and forestry products, including wood pulp and newsprint, are other important exports. The largest proportion of imports in Canadian trading history has always fallen within the manufacturing category, automobiles and followed by industrial machinery.

Other significant imports are chemical products, textiles and clothing, and such foods as vegetables in the winter season and tropical and subtropical fruits and nuts.

Because the USA is so close and has a common language and similar life-style to that of the majority of Canadians, that country is Canada's chief trading partner. The 1988 Free-Trade Pact between Canada and the USA further enhanced the volume of trade between the two countries. In the late 1980s some 75 percent of Canada's foreign trade was with the USA.

The dependence on U.S. trade in particular is not just a technical matter of market shares in imports and exports. In an overall sense, the degree of export dependence means that business trends in the USA feed back directly and quickly into the Canadian business sector.

Changes in consumer tastes in the USA may have disproportionate effects on Canadian producers because to North American consumers it is a matter of almost no reverence whether their automobiles are produced in the USA or Canada.

Canada also strong ties with EEC and other traditional European trading nations, but newly emerging trading patterns may decrease somewhat Canada's dependence on its traditional trade partners. Foremost – among these new patterns is that which has developed within the Pacific Rim.

The growing Japanese market resulted in Japan's replacing the United Kingdom as the second largest market for Canadian exports by the mid-1970s.

Since that time, exports to China, South Korea, and Australia have increased. Besides the United States, Canada's chief trading partners are Germany, G.B, and Japan. Canada exports much wheat to China and countries that made up the former Soviet Union.

Canada is an independent, self-governing nation. But the Constitution Act of 1982 recognizes the British monarch, Queen Elizabeth II of the United Kingdom, as queen of Canada.

This position symbolizes the country's strong ties to Britain. Britain ruled Canada completely until 1867, when Canada gained control of its domestic affairs. Britain continued to govern Canada's foreign affairs until 1931, when Canada gained full independence.

Canada and the United States have had a relationship of cooperation and friendship since the 1800*s but the USA – because of its larger population and greater economic power – has tended to dominate Canada both culturally and economically. The people of Canada today are striving to maintain control of their economy and to safeguard their Canadian identity.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	**When**	**Who**	**Score**
1.				

CANADA & THE EUROPEAN UNION

The European Union is Canada's second most important trading partner and source of foreign investment capital, after the USA, with EU / Canada trade totalling over $ 38 billion in 1996.

Trade between the EU and Canada is governed by the GATT, now superseded by the World Trade Organization. In December 1996, the European Union and Canada reached a comprehensive new agreement that will set relations on a secure footing well into the next century. It is contained in a Joint Political declaration and a EU Canada Action Plan. It covers economic and commercial relations: foreign policy and security issues: transactional issues such as terrorism, smuggling, immigration etc.: and the commitment to foster a range of new transatlantic links.

It will not entail the creation of new institutions. Instead, the Action Plan sets out a far ranging agenda for joint action using established instruments of cooperation, notably the EC Canada Framework Agreement for Commercial and Economic Cooperation.

Both Canada and the European Union (EU) are complex multilevel governance systems where authority is dispersed between orders of government – local, regional, provincial, national and supra-national – as well as across spheres and sectors including markets, stakeholders and citizens.

Each political system uses different modes of governance, resulting in different degrees of effectiveness in policy-making and implementation. Since 1996, Canada has made significant governance changes to social programs by devolving responsibility from the federal government to provinces and territories, or by reducing conditions on federal funding. While this has led to many positive outcomes and enhanced provincial and local flexibility, little attention has been paid to whether reforms are also needed to pan-Canadian institutions and processes to ensure that decentralized governance in Canada is working as effectively as it could.

Canadians look to the European Union (EU) for ideas on how Canada might improve collaborative governance in social policy. 'Soft' governance tools through the Open Method of Coordination (OMC) – including voluntary coordinated action, exchange of best practices, benchmarking, codes of conduct, and comparative analysis – help EU member states work towards pan-European goals and policy convergence while respecting their differences.
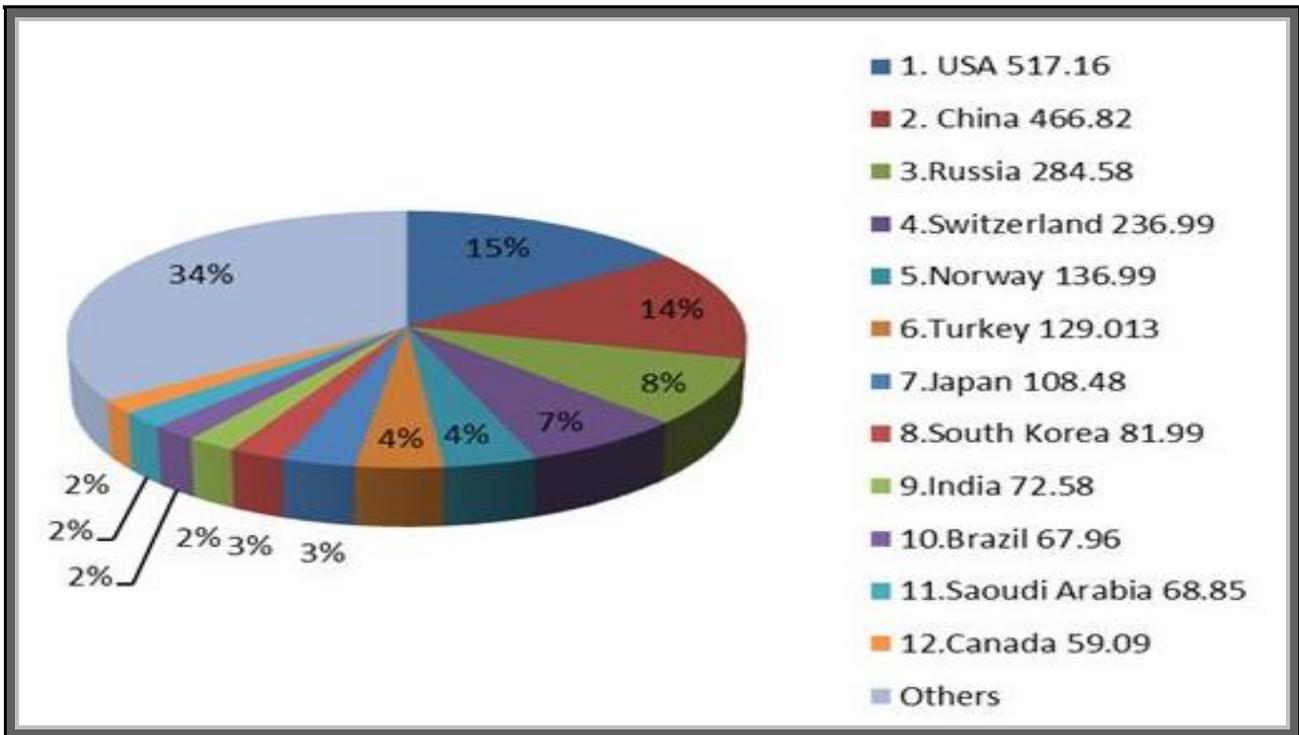
The EU's main trading Partner in 2017 (mln. EUR)

UNIT II. PRIME MINISTERS OF CANADA

INTRODUCTION

The Prime Minister of Canada is an official who serves as the primary minister of the Crown, chair of the Cabinet, and thus head of government of Canada. Officially, the prime minister is appointed by the Governor General of Canada, but by constitutional convention, the prime minister must have the confidence of the elected House of Commons. Normally, this is the leader of the party caucus with the greatest number of seats in the house. But, if that leader lacks support of the majority, the governor general can appoint another leader who has that support or may dissolve parliament and call a new election. By constitutional convention, a prime minister holds a seat in parliament and, since the early 20th century, this has more specifically meant the House of Commons.[1]

The office is not outlined in any of the documents that constitute the written portion of the Constitution of Canada; executive authority is formally vested in the sovereign and exercised on his or her behalf by the governor general. The prime ministership is part of Canada's constitutional convention tradition. The office was modelled after that which existed in Britain at the time. Sir John A. Macdonald was commissioned by the Viscount Monck on May 24, 1867 to form the first government of the Canadian Confederation. On July 1, 1867, the first ministry assumed office.[2]

The date for which a prime minister begins his or her term has been determined by the date that he or she is sworn into his or her portfolio, as an oath of office as prime minister is not required.

However, since 1957, the incoming prime minister has sworn an oath as prime minister. Before 1920, prime ministers' resignations were accepted immediately by the governor general and the last day of the ministries were the date he died or the date of resignation. Since 1920, the outgoing prime minister has only formally resigned when the new government is ready to be formed. The Interpretation Act of 1967 states that "where an appointment is made effective or terminates on a specified day, that appointment is considered to be effective or to terminate after the end of the previous day".

Thus, although the outgoing prime minister formally resigns only hours before the incoming ministry swears their oaths, both during the day; the ministries are effectively changed at midnight the night before. Some sources, including the Parliament of Canada, apply this convention as far back as 1917. As of May 2016, there are seven living former Prime Ministers of Canada, the oldest being John Turner (born 1929). The most recent former Prime Minister to die was Pierre Trudeau (1968-1979, 1980-1984) 2000. John A. Macdonald (1867-1873, 1878-1891) and John Thompson (1892-1894) are the only serving Prime Ministers to have died in office.

The *Fathers of Confederation* are 36 people who attended at least one of the Charlottetown (23 attendees) and Quebec (33) Conferences in 1864 and the London Conference of 1866 (16) in England, preceding Canadian Confederation. The following lists the participants in the Charlottetown, Quebec, and London Conferences and their attendance at each stage.

Four other individuals have been labelled as Fathers of Confederation. Hewitt Bernard, who was the recording secretary at the Charlottetown Conference, is considered by some to be a Father of Confederation. The leaders most responsible for bringing three specific provinces into Confederation after 1867 are also referred to as Fathers of Confederation. The provisional government established by Louis Riel ultimately negotiated the terms under which Manitoba entered the Canadian Confederation in 1870. The leadership of Amor De Cosmos was instrumental both in bringing democracy to British Columbia and in bringing the province into Confederation in 1871. The province of Newfoundland entered the Confederation in 1949 under the leadership of Joey Smallwood.

SIR JOHN A. MACDONALD

Canada's first Prime Minister, Sir John A. Macdonald, was born in Glasgow, Scotland, Jan. 11. 1815. At age of 5 he came to Canada with his parents who settled at Kingston, Upper Canada.

Called to the bar in 1836, Macdonald practised law in Kingston, and then in Toronto. He established a reputation as a corporate lawyer, company director, and businessman.

He was elected to the legislative Assembly of the Province of Canada in 1844, and was re-elected in 1848, 1851, 1854, 1857, 1861 and 1863. In 1864, he joined a coalition with George Brown, leader of the Upper Canadian reformers, dedicated to bringing about Confederation.

That same year, Macdonald was a delegate to the Charlottetown and Quebec Conferences, and became the principal author of the Confederation resolutions agreed upon in Quebec. He was chairman of the London Conference (1866-67), and played a pivotal role in bringing about Confederation.

Macdonald became Canada's first Prime Minister when the Conservative party won a majority of seats in Parliament following the first post – Confederation general election in 1867.

Though he was re-elected in 1872, Macdonald's second administration was marred by the "Pacific Scandal" in 1873. An investigation into these charges was held, and the government resigned on Nov. 5. 1873. Macdonald's Liberal-Conservatives were re-elected Sept. 17. 1878, and Macdonald remained Prime Minister until his death in Ottawa on June 6, 1891.

During his first administration, the Dominion of Canada expanded to include the provinces of British Columbia, Prince Edward Island, and the newly created Manitoba.

The building of the transcontinental railway is the most memorable feature of his second administration, but other accomplishments include the establishment of the "National Policy" – a system of tariff protection to aid the development of Canadian industries (1879) – and the increased settlement of the Western provinces that followed the construction of the railway.

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE

A. Mackenzie was born on Jan. 28, 1822 near Dunkeld, Perthshire, Scotland. He left school and became a stonemason at the age of 14. He immigrated to Canada in 1842, and became a contractor at Lambton, Ontario and then editor of the Lambton Shield. From 1866-74, he was a major in the 27th Lambton battalion volunteer Infantry.

In 1861, Mackenzie was elected to the Legislative Assembly of the Province of Canada, where he gave his support to the Confederation plan. When George Brown was defeated in the 167 election, Mackenzie became de facto leader of the Opposition, though it was not until after the 1872 elections that he formally accepted this title. It was Mackenzie who led the attack on the Macdonald administration over the "Pacific Scandal"; when Macdonald resigned on Nov. 5, 1873, Mackenzie became Prime Minister. During his 5-year term of office, Mackenzie introduced changes to election laws that included the secret ballot and universal male suffrage.

The Supreme Court of Canada was established under Mackenzie's rule, and Wilfrid Laurier was brought into Mackenzie's cabinet. Severe economic depression plagued Canada during the Mackenzie years, and in 1878, his Liberal party was routed at the polls. Mackenzie retained his own seat, however, and was still a Member of Parliament when he died Apr. 17, 1892.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	Activity			
	Premier	When	Where	Score
1.				

SIR JOHN ABBOTT

Sir Joseph Caldwell Abbott was born Mar. 12, 1821 at St. Andrews, Lower Canada – the first Prime Minister to be born on Canadian soil. After taking his law degree from University of McGill College, he was admitted to the bar in 1847 and practised law in Montreal.

From 1855-80 was dean of the Faculty of Law, McGill University. Abbott was elected to the Legislative assembly of the Province of Canada in 1857, reelected in 1861 and 1863, and sat until Confederation. He was then elected to the House of Commons in 1867, 1872 and 1874. He was last elected in 1882, and appointed to the Senate on May 12, 1887.

When Sir John A. Macdonald died in 1891, Abbott – though a senator – inherited the Conservative leadership. The three other leading Conservatives – Langevin, Tupper and Thomson – were unwilling or unable to assume the post. Abbott held the office of Prime Minister from June 16, 1891 until his registration on Nov. 24, 1892. He died in Montreal on Oct. 30, 1893.

SIR JOHN THOMSON

Sir John Sparrow David Thomson was born in Halifax, N. S., on Nov. 10 1845.Thompson was called to the Nova Scotia bar in 1865, and was instrumental in founding Dalhousie Law School in 1883, where he eventually became a lecturer. In May 1882, Thompson became premier of Nova Scotia, but when his government was defeated 2 months later, he retired from politics and became a judge of the Supreme Court of Nova Scotia.

Prime Minister Macdonald coaxed Thompson back into politics, making him Minister of Justice in 1885. When Macdonald died in 1891, Thompson declined the leadership, fearing that his conversion to Roman Catholicism in 1870 would hinder his party's fortunes. However, the following year, Thompson changed his mind, and on Dec. 5, 1892, he became Prime Minister.

Though Prime Minister for just over 2 years, Thompson was largely responsible for the establishment of the criminal Code and penitentiary reforms. He very nearly succeeded in bringing Newfoundland into Confederation in 1894, and successfully negotiated fisheries clauses in the treaty of Washington. He died while still in office on Dec. 12, 1894.

SIR MACKENZIE BOWELL

Mackenzie Bowell was born at Rickinghall, Suffolk, England, on Dec. 27, 1823, and came to Canada in 1832. In 1834, he became an apprentice printer at Belleville, Upper Canada, and was later editor and proprietor of the Belleville Intelligencer. He served in the Militia of the United Province of Canada during the American Civil War and the Fenian raids of 1866.

Bowell was elected to the House of Commons in 1867 for Hastings North, Ont., and was reelected in 1872, 1874, 1878, 1887 and 1891. As spokesman for the Orange Association of British America, Bowell was instrumental in having Louis Riel expelled from the Commons in 1874.

On Dec. 5, 1892, Bowell was appointed to the Senate and, after Thompson's death in 1894, was invited by the Governor of General to form a government.

Perhaps the thorniest problem facing Prime Minister Bowell was the Manitoba Schools question. In 1890, Manitoba legislation and withdrawn school privileges from the Roman Catholic and primarily French minority in that province. By the time Bowell assumed office, attempts were being made to restore those lost school privileges by federal remedial legislation.

Bowell was not equal to the political challenges facing him; he lost control of his cabinet ministers, several of whom eventually called for his resignation. Bowell denounced this cabinet rebellion as a "nest of traitors", but eventually he resigned on Apr. 27, 1896. He died in Belleville, Ont. on Dec. 10, 1917 at age 93.

Exercise 1. Determine the factors of influence on political life by prime ministers.

SIR CHARLES TUPPER

Charles Tupper was born at Amherst, N. S., and July 2, 1821. He took a degree in medicine at Edinburgh University. At the age of 22, he began practising medicine in Amherst, and became the first president of the Canadian Medical Association (1867-70).

The 1855 election that brought him to the Legislative Assembly of Nova Scotia was declared void on Feb. 24, 1857. He was subsequently reelected in a by-election that same year and was elected again in 1859 and 1863. Tupper was active in the Confederation movement, and was a delegate to the Charlottetown, Quiebec and London Conferences. He was elected to the House of Commons in 1867, and reelected 1870, 1872, 1874, 1878 and 1882. He resigned in 1884, and served as High Commissioner for Canada in the United Kingdom from May 28 of that year to Jan. 26, 1887. In 1887, he was reelected to the House of Commons, but resigned the following year and again served as High Commissioner from May 23, 1888 to Jan. 14, 1896.

In 1896, following the rebellion of Bowell's cabinet, Tupper became de facto leader of the administration until Bowell formally resigned on Apr. 27, 1896. At that time, the Governor General invited Tupper to form the government.

Parliament was dissolved shortly thereafter and in the election that followed on June 23, Tupper's Conservatives were defeated Tupper stayed on as leader of the opposition until Feb. 5, 1901, and then retired from public life. He died Oct. 30, 1915 at Bexley Heath, Kent, England.

SIR WILFRID LAURIER

Wilfrid Laurier was born at St.-Lin, Canada East, Nov.20, 1841. Hr first attended College de L' Assumption, and then took his degree from McGill University. He was called to the bar of Lower Canada in 1865. He practised law at Montreal and at Arthabaskaville, Que. First elected to the Legislative Assembly of Quebec in 1871, Laurier resigned in 1874 and later that year was elected to the House of Commons. He became leader of the Liberal Opposition in June 1887.

Then, following the 1896 election that gave his party a 23-seat majority, Laurier became Canada's first French-speaking Prime Minister in 1896. The Liberals retained power in 1900, and won a landslide election victory in 1904. Immigration increased during his time in office as Clifford Sifton, Laurier's minister of the interior from 1896-1905, mounted a powerful campaign to attract immigrants from Britain, the USA and Europe.

In 1905, Laurier created the provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan and established the boundaries of Manitoba. During Laurier's years in power the Canadian West became a major world wheat producer. In 1909, Laurier established the External Affairs department.His government's controversial support for the creation of a Canadian navy, and his unpopular attempt to enter into a reciprocal trade agreement with the USA (an agreement reduced or eliminated duties on imported goods) spelled trouble for Laurier in 1911. His party was defeated in the 21 election. He remained an Opposition M. P. until his death in 1919 in Ottawa.
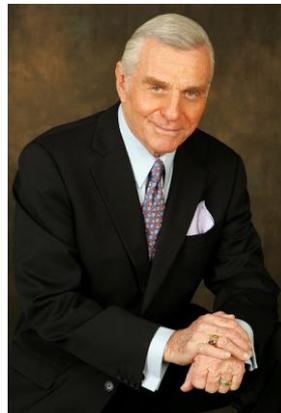
SIR ROBERT BORDEN

Robert Laird Borden was born at Grand Pre, N. S., and June 26, 1854. At age 14 he gave up formal schooling to become an assistant master in classical studies. He taught classics and mathematics in New Jersey in 1873, before returning to Nova Scotia to study law. He was admitted to the Nova Scotia bar in 1878, and practised first in Halifax, then in Kentville, N. S.

Borden was elected to the House of Commons in 1896 and 1900 and became leader of the Conservative party on Feb. 6, 1901. He served as leader of the Opposition until 1911, when he led his party to victory in the Sept. 21 election. Borden was Prime Minister throughout World War I and during the war years his government was accused of scandal over British munitions contracts and its staunch support of the Ross Rifle – a weapon known to jam in battle. Borden's government introduced the first federal income tax, nationalized Canadian railways and introduced conscription in 1917.

In the election of Dec. 17, 1917, Borden led a re-organized Union Government made up of Conservatives and pro- conscription Liberals to victory. Borden headed the Canadian delegation at the Paris peace Conference in 1919, where the autonomy of Canada and other dominions within the British Commonwealth was successfully established. He resigned in and died in Ottawa in 1937.

ARTHUR MEIGHEN

Arthur Meighen was born at Anderson, Ont., and June 16, 1874. Following his graduation from university in 1896, Meighen taught high school for a year, then moved to Winnipeg in 1898 to study law. He was called to the Manitoba bar in 1902, and practised at Portage La Prarie.

He was first elected to the House of Commons in 1908, reelected in 1911, 1913 and 1917, defeated in 1921, and reelected in 1922 and 1925. Meighen first achieved national prominence in 1913 when he helped devise a closure rule, which permitted the government to end debate on a bill, which was to affect$ 35-million contributions to the British navy. Prior to closure, the bill had been obstructed by a fierce and protracted Opposition party blockade.

Prime Minister Borden appointed Meighen his solicitor general in 1915, and Meighen held this post for 2 years. A strong supporter of conscription, Meighen essentially drafted Canada's 1917 Conscription bill, and put it into operation. He was also the chief draughtsman of the Wartime Elections Act. When Borden resigned in 1920, Meighen succeeded him as Prime Minister. In the general election in 1921, Meighen's party was defeated. Though his Conservatives won the most seats in the election in 1925, the Liberals were able to stay in power with the support of Progressive and Labour members. Following the resignation of Mackenzie King's government in 1926, the Governor General invited Meighen to form a new ministry. This government was less than 3 months old, however, when it was defeated in the House of Commons (by only one vote) and Canadians again went to the polls.

Following a Liberal victory in the election in 1926, Meighen resigned as Conservative leader in the House of Commons. He was appointed to the Senate in 1932 during Richard Bennett's ministry and became government leader in the Senate. Then, following King's victory in 1935, he became Senate opposition leader. In 1941, he once again became leader of the Conservative party, but failed in his bid to win a seat in the Commons in a federal by-election on Feb. 2, 1942. Following this defeat, he retired from politics and resumed his law practice in Toronto where he died Aug. 5, 1960.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	Activity			
	Premier	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

MACKENZIE KING

William Lyon Mackenzie King, grandson of William Lyon Mackenzie, was born in Kitchener (Berlin) on Dec. 17, 1874. He took his B. A. and law degrees from the University of Toronto, and also studied at the University of Chicago and Harvard University. He served as deputy minister of labour from 1900-08. He was first elected to the House of Commons in 1908, and succeeded Laurier as leader of the Liberal party in 1919. King became Prime Minister when the liberals won the general election of Dec. 6, 1921.

Though Meighen's Conservatives won a majority of seats in the general election of Oct. 29, 1925, king stayed in office with the help of Progressive and Labour members who supported his proposed tariff reductions and old-age pension legislation. King had lost his York North seat in the 1925 election but returned to the House of Commons as the member for Prince Albert, Sask., following a by-election on Feb. 15, 1926. King's government was shaken in 1926 by the revelation that the Customs department was tainted with corruption and incompetence.

In the furore that followed, King lost the support of many members of Parliament and, although never technically defeated that he could no longer hold his minority government. He appealed to the Governor General, Lord Byng, to dissolve Parliament, even though the government had not been defeated. Byng refused.

King subsequently resigned on June 28, 1926, and the Governor General invited Arthur Meighen to form a government, which was subsequently defeated in the House of Commons.

In the general election of Sept. 14, 1926, King's Liberals regained power and held it until 1930. But the disastrous fall in the price of wheat and other Canadian exports in 1929 soured Canadians on their government, and King was defeated by R. B. Bennett's Conservatives in the election of July 28, 1930. Five years later, King was back in the Prime Minister's office, following the Liberal victory in the general election on Oct. 14, 1935.

In the coming years, King an ardent supporter of Canada's autonomy within the British Commonwealth was faced with the issue of Canada's participation in an impending European war.

To soothe French-Canadian concerns over Canadian support of Great Britain, King promised there would be no conscription; Canada declared war in Sept. 1939. Later, however, heavy casualties in France and Italy in 1944 prompted King to break his promise and send conscripts overseas.

King's government began introducing post-war recovery legislation even before peace was declared. These measures included reconstruction plans and social security schemes such as mother's allowances. King resigned as Prime Minister on Nov. 15, 1948, supporting Louis St. Laurent as his successor. In poor health in his final years, King died July 22, 1950 at Kingsmere, his estate in Wright County, Quebec.
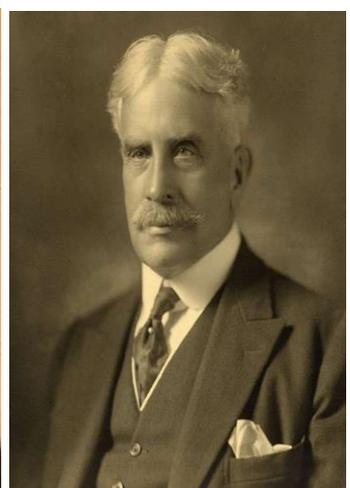
RICHARD BENNETT

Richard Bedford Bennett was born at Hopewell, N. B., and July 3, 1870. Bennett studied law at Dalhousie University. He read and practised law in Chatham, N. B., from 1893-97, before moving to Calgary where he entered a legal partnership with Senator James A. Lougheed.

Bennett was first elected to the House of Commons in 1911. He served a minister of justice in Arthur Meighen's 1921 cabinet, and minister of finance and minister of mines in Meighen's 1926 government. Bennett was chosen to replace Meighen as Conservative leader at the party convention in Winnipeg in 1927. He became Prime Minister following the Conservative victory in the election of July 28, 1930. Bennett had the task of governing Canada during the worst years of the Depression.

Virtually every measure his government attempted ended in failure. High unemployment levels continued despite Bennett's efforts to reduce them. Negotiations for a reciprocity treaty with the USA did not succeed. A plan of preferential tariffs agreed to in 1930 at the Imperial Conference did little to ease Canada's economic woes. Then, in 1935, near the end of his term, Bennett took an unexpected step to the political left. He proclaimed that the old order is gone and that it was time for a new economic system. That new system was to include a state – planned economy, and new unemployment and health insurance legislation and old-age pension laws.

In the election of Oct. 14, 1935, Bennett's Conservatives suffered a devastating defeat, winning just 39 seats. Bennett remained in Opposition until 1937, when he retired to England. There he was given the title Viscount Bennett of Mickelham, Hopewell and Calgary.

Despite the overwhelming problems of the Great Depression, Bennett's term saw the creation of the Canadian Radio Broadcasting Corporation (the predecessor to the CBC) and the Bank of Canada. As well, it was during Bennett's tenure that the Statute of Westminster gave Canada increased autonomy in 1931. He died June 27, 1947.

LOUIS ST. LAURENT

Louis Stephen St. Laurent was born at Compton, Quebec, and Feb. 1, 1882. Called to the Quebec bar in 1905, he practised law in Quebec City, and became Professor of Law in University Laval. He was elected president of the Canadian Bar Association in 1930.

St. Laurent became justice minister in Mackenzie King's cabinet on Dec. 10, 1941. On Feb. 9, 1942, he was elected to the House of Commons in a by-election for Quebec East.

Originally planning to hold his cabinet post only during the war, St. Laurent was persuaded to stay on. On Dec. 10, 1946, he became secretary of state for external affairs.

A firm believer in collective security, St. Laurent was one of the architects of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO). On Aug. 7, 1948, he accepted his party's nomination to be King's successor, and on Nov. 15 became Prime Minister.

While in power St. Laurent ended the practice of appealing court cases to the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council in England, and made the Supreme Court of Canada the final Canadian court of appeal. He won the acceptance of a new apportionment of taxes in 1956 and, in negotiation for a U.S.-Canada agreement to develop the St. Lawrence Seaway.

In 1958, he retired and returned to Quebec City to practice law. He died July25, 1973.

JOHN DIFENBAKER

John George Diefenbaker was born at Neustadt. Ont., Sept. 18, 1895. He received his B. A. from the University of Saskatchewan in 1915, and his M. A. one year later.

After the outbreak of World War I, he joined the Canadian Officer's Training Corps, and served overseas as a lieutenant with the 105th ' Saskatoon Fusiliers' Regiment from 1916 to 1917.

Returning to Saskatchewan, he took his law degree from the University of Saskatchewan in 1919 and established a law practise at Wakaw. He later moved to Prince Albert.

After several unsuccessful attempts to gain a seat, first in the federal, then in Saskatchewan's provincial parliament, Diefenbaker was finally elected to the House of Commons in 1940. He was a candidate for leadership of the Progressive Conservative Party at the 1942 and 1948 conventions, but did not win the nomination until Dec. 14, 1956. The PCs won the election of June 10, 1957 by a slim margin, and on June 21, John Diefenbaker officially became Prime Minister. A year later, he called an election, hoping to turn his Conservative minority government into a clear majority.

He was overwhelmingly successful winning 208 of the 265 seats in the Mar. 31, 1958 election. He fared less well in the 1962 election, when only 116 PCs were elected, and in the general election of 1963, a Liberal victory relegated Diefenbaker to the role of Opposition leader. Diefenbaker remained Conservative leader until Sept. 1967, when he was replaced by Robert Stanfield.

The Diefenbaker years (1957- 63) saw the passage of the Canadian Bill of Rights, a "roads – to resources" program to encourage the development of northern resources, legislation providing support for agriculture, encouragement of technical training and improved health and welfare programs. Regional development was emphasized by significant public works such as construction of the South Saskatchewan Dam, and simultaneous translation was introduced in the House of Commons. Diefenbaker died Aug. 16, 1979 at his home in Rockliffe Park, Ottawa.

LESTER PEARSON

Lester Bowles Pearson was born at Newtonbrook, Ont., on Apr. 23, 1897. He took his B. A. at the University of Toronto and his M. A. at Oxford University. After serving overseas in World War I, he became a history professor at the University of Toronto, where he taught from 1924-1928.

He joined Canada's Foreign Service in 1928, became Canada's ambassador to the U. N. in 1945, was appointed undersecretary of state for external affairs in 1946, and accepted the invitations of King and St. Laurent to become minister of external affairs in Sept. 1948.

In 1956, following the Anglo-French-Israeli invasion of Egypt, Pearson's work at the UN helped establish a U. N. Emergency Force which kept peace on the Israeli-Egyptian border for the next decade. His settlement of the Suez crisis brought him the Nobel Peace Prize in 1957 – the only time a Canadian has been so honoured. Pearson was chosen leader of the Liberal party Jan. 15, 1958. In the general election of Apr. 8, 1963, the Liberals won 129 seats in the House of Commons, and Pearson became the leader of a minority government.

In the 1965 election, the Liberals made slight gains, but were still short of a minority. Pearson announced his resignation in Dec. 1967 and, in Apr. 1968, was succeeded by Pierre Trudeau.

Under Pearson, the old age pension was extended and a national health plan created. He secured the adoption of a national flag and established the Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism. Though he retired in 1968, his international reputation prompted the World Bank to commission him to prepare a report on international aid program. He died in Ottawa Dec. 27, 1972

Exercise 1. Evaluate the periods of ruling of two prime ministers and compare them.

Exercise 2. Find unusual events in their ruling.

Exercise 3. Compare their life and activities.

PIERRE TRUDEAU

Pierre Trudeau was born in Montreal on Oct. 18, 1919. He attended the University of Montreal, Harvard University, University de Paris and the London School of Economics. He was called to the Quebec bar in 1943. From 1949-51, he was a member of the Privy Council staff in Ottawa.

In 1950, he co-founded the magazine **Cite Libre.** From 1952-62, he practised law and was a journalist and broadcaster in Montreal. From 1962-65, he was a law professor at the University of Montreal. First elected to the House of Commons in 1965, Trudeau was named justice minister in Lester Peason's cabinet in 1967. The following year, he won the Liberal leadership and became Prime Minister Apr. 19, 1968. In the general election of the same year, the Liberals won a solid majority.

During his first 4 years in power, Trudeau faced the "F.L.Q. Crisis" – the kidnapping of British diplomat James Cross and Quebec cabinet minister Pierre Laporte by the radical separatist organization Front de Liberation du Quebec. (Laporte was later murdered.) In response he invoked the War Measures Act, a statute giving the state broad power of arrest and detention.

In the general election of 1972, Trudeau returned to power with a minority government. In 1974, he regained a majority. In the general election of 1979, the Progressive Conservatives under Joe Clark won a narrow victory, and were able to form a minority government. Trudeau announced his intention to retire, but when the Clark government fell later that year.

Trudeau led the Liberals in the election and won a majority on Feb. 18, 1980.

Trudeau' s final term in office was devoted to constitutional reform, which, for the first time, allowed Canada's Parliament to amend the constitution without appeal to the U. K. Government. A constitutionally-entrenched Charter of Rights and Freedoms was also introduced.

Trudeau's introduction of a national Energy Program led to bitter disputes between the federal government and the energy-producing provinces, practically Alberta.

The NEP was aimed at increasing Canadian control of the oil industry, promoting energy self-sufficiency and generating more federal revenues in the energy sector. During his final year as Prime Minister Trudeau launched a world peace initiative, visiting more than 40 world leaders to appeal for peace and an end to the nuclear arms race. In June of 1984, Trudeau resigned. He was succeeded by John Turner and left politics, eventually joining a Montreal law firm.

JOE CLARK

Charles Joseph "Joe" Clark was born at High River, Alta., on June 5, 1939. He was educated at the University of Alberta. Clark was first elected to the House of Commons in 1972.

In 1976 he became leader of the Progressive Conservative Party and, in the general election of 1979, won enough seats to form a minority government. At 39, Clark was Canada's youngest Prime Minister. But his minority government fell in Dec. of that year on a vote of non-confidence on its proposed budget. In the Feb. 1980 election that followed, the Liberals returned to power.

At a national general meeting of the Conservative party in Jan. 1983, Clark received the support of only two-thirds of the delegates and called for a national party leadership convention.

In June 1983, Clark lost the leadership to Britain Mulroney on the 4th ballot. He remained an MP and, when Mulroney became Prime Minister in 1984, Clark joined the cabinet as secretary of state for external affairs. In 1991, he was appointed as minister responsible for constitutional affairs, and given the task of succeeding where the Meech Lake Accord had failed. Late 1991 and the first half of 1992 were marked by weeks of cross-country constitutional negotiations under Clark's guidance.

In August, 1992 the Charlottentown Accord – an agreement to amend the Constitution Act of 1982 – was agreed upon by all first ministers. The text of the agreement was presented to Canadians and a national referendum was led on Oct. 26, 1992 on the issue of whether or not to approve the deal. The agreement was rejected by the majority of voters across the country. In the spring of 1993, Clark announced his retirement from Canadian political life, effective as of the fall 1993 election.

JOHN TURNER

John Napier Turner was born at Richmond, Surrey, England on June 7, 1929. He attended the University of British Columbia, Oxford University and Univesite de Paris. He was called to the bar in England in 1953 and the bar in Quebec in 1954. He lectured for a time in the Faculty of Commerce at Sir George Williams University. First elected to the House of Commons in 1962, Turner entered Lester Pearson's cabinet in 1965. He became minister of consumer and corporate affairs in 1967.

In 1968, he was a candidate for the Liberal leadership, finishing 3rd on the final ballot.

In 1968, Turner was appointed minister of justice in Pierre Trudeau's cabinet. In 1972, he became minister of finance, a post he held until his resignation in Sept. 1975. In Feb. 1976 he left politics and joined a Toronto law firm. Turner remained in private practice until Trudeau's retirement in 1984, when he successfully ran for leader of the Liberal Party and became Prime Minister on June 30, though he did not have a seat in the House of Commons. He dissolved parliament July 9, and in the ensuing general election the Liberals were overwhelming defeated by the Progressive Conservatives.

As leader of the Opposition, Turner used the Liberal majority in the Senate to block passage of the Conservatives' free trade legislation and force an election on the issue in 1988. The Conservatives won the election and were able to form another majority government. Early in 1989, Turner announced plans to step down as leader; in June 1990, he was succeeded by jean Chretien.

BRIAN MULRONEY

Martin Brian Mulroney was born at bale Comeau, Que., and Mar.20, 1939. He attended St. Francis Xavier University and Universite Laval. Called to the bar of Quebec in 1965, Mulroney practised law in Montreal. In 1976, he joined the Iron Ore Company of Canada as executive vice- president, and was elected company president the following year.

Mulroney made an unsuccessful bid for the progressive Conservative party leadership in 1976.

In 1983 he ran again, defeating the incumbent leader, Joe Clark, on the 4th ballot.

A by-election for the Maritime riding of Central Nova brought Mulroney into Parliament as leader of the Opposition. In the general election of 1984, he led the Conservatives to victory, winning the largest number of seats (211) in Canadian history. Mulroney 's major initiatives between 1984 and 1988 were the Meech Lake Accord – a package of constitutional changes designed to end Quebec' s boycott of the 1982 constitutional reform – the negotiation of a free trade agreement with the USA.

In 1988, with free trade the central election issue, Mulroney won a second majority government.

The free trade agreement subsequently received final approval and took effect in 1989.

His term from 1988 to 1993 was marked by intense negotiations to bring about a new constitutional agreement to replace the Meech lake Accord, which was not ratified by all provinces by the June 1990 deadline. Agreement was reached amongst federal and provincial officials in what became known as the Charlottetown Accord, but the proposals were rejected in a national referendum held on October 26, 1992. The Conservatives under Mulroney continued their free trade initiative and finalized a North American free trade deal (NADTA) with the US and Mexico.

Mulroney announced his intention to retire in February 1993 and on June 25, 1993 he was replaced by Kim Campbell, newly – elected leader of the Conservative party.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	Activity			
	Premier	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

KIM CAMPBELL

Avril Phaedra (Kim) Campbell was born march 10, 1947 in Port Alberni, BC. She attended the University of British Columbia, earning an honours degree in political science.

After an academic career in BC, she studied law at UBC. In Sept.1985, she joined BC Premier William Bennett's office as a policy advisor. In May 1986, Campbell ran in the provincial election and won a seat in the legislature, representing the riding of Vancouver? Point Grey. She served in the provincial legislature until October 1988 when she resigned her seat to contest the federal riding of Vancouver Centre. An ardent defender of free trade, Campbell joined the junior ranks of Prime Minister Mulroney's cabinet with the Indian Affairs and Northern Development portfolio.

In 1990 Campbell was promoted to the Attorney General and Justice post; in January of 1993 she was named Minister of Defence and became a candidate in the Conservative leadership contest that year. On June 13, 1993, she was elected leader on the second ballot and on June 25, she was sworn in as Canada's 19th Prime Minister.

JEAN CHRETIEN

Jean Chretien was born in Shawinigan, Quebec, on January 11, 1934. He studied law at Laval University and was called to the bar of Quebec in 1958.

Chretien was first elected to the House of Commons in 1963 and after re-election in 1965 served as parliamentary secretary to the Prime Minister (1965) and the Minister of Finance (1966). He was appointed Minister of National Revenue in 1968 and after the election in June of that year was sworn in as Minister of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.

In 1974, he was appointed President of the Treasury Board; beginning in 1976, he served as Minister of Industry, trade and Commerce. In 1977, he was appointed Minister of Justice and Attorney general of Canada and also served as Minister of State for Social Development and Minister responsible for constitutional negotiations, playing a significant role in the repatriation of the Canadian constitution. In 1982 Chretien was appointed Minister of Energy, Mines and resources and in 1984 became Deputy Prime Minister and Secretary of State for External Affairs.

In 1986 Chretien left public life, returning after his election as Liberal leader in 1990 and his re-election to the House in a December by- election in Beausejour, taking his seat as leader of the Official opposition. In the federal election in October of 1993, Chretien led his party to a majority victory.

C H A P T E R III. HISTORY OF CANADA
UNIT I. EARLY HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

The history of Canada covers the period from the arrival of Paleo-Indians thousands of years ago to the present day. Canada has been inhabited for millennia by distinctive groups of Aboriginal peoples, with distinct trade networks, spiritual beliefs, and styles of social organization.

Some of these civilizations had long faded by the time of the first European arrivals and have been discovered througharchaeological investigations. Various treaties and laws have been enacted between European settlers and the Aboriginal populations. Beginning in the late 15th century French and British expeditions explored, and later settled, along the Atlantic Coast. France ceded nearly all of its colonies in North America to Britain in 1763 after the Seven Years' War.

In 1867, with the union of three British North American colonies through Confederation, Canada was formed as a federal dominion of four provinces. This began an accretion of provinces and territories and a process of increasing autonomy from the British Empire, which became official with the Statute of Westminster of 1931 and completed in the Canada Act of 1982, which severed the vestiges of legal dependence on the British parliament. Over centuries, elements of Aboriginal, French, British and more recent immigrant customs have combined to form a Canadian culture. Canadian culture has also been strongly influenced by its linguistic, geographic and economic neighbour, the USA.

Since the conclusion of the Second World War, Canadians have supported multilateralism abroad and socioeconomic development domestically.

Canada currently consists of ten provinces and three territories and is governed as a parliamentary democracy and a constitutional monarchywith Queen Elizabeth II as its head of state.

Archeological and Aboriginal genetic evidence indicate that North and South America were the last continents into which humans migrated. During the Wisconsin glaciation, 50,000-17,000 years ago, falling sea levels allowed people to move across the Bering land bridge (Beringia), from Siberia into northwest North America. At that point, they were blocked by the Laurentide ice sheet that covered most of Canada, confining them to Alaska and the Yukon for thousands of years.

The exact dates and routes of the peopling of the Americas are the subject of an ongoing debate. By 16,000 years ago the glacial melt allowed people to move by land south and east out of Beringia, and into Canada. The Queen Charlotte Islands, Old Crow Flats, and Bluefish Caves contain some of the earliest Paleo-Indian archaeological sites in Canada. Ice Agehunter-gatherers of this period left lithic flake fluted stone tools and the remains of large butchered mammals.

The North American climate stabilized around 8000 B.C.E. (10,000 years ago). Climatic conditions were similar to modern patterns; however, the receding glacial ice sheets still covered large portions of the land, creating lakes of meltwater. Most population groups during the Archaic periodswere still highly mobile hunter-gatherers. However, individual groups started to focus on resources available to them locally; thus with the passage of time, there is a pattern of increasing regional generalization (Paleo-Arctic, Plano and Maritime Archaic traditions).

The Woodland cultural period dates from about 2000 B.C.E to 1000 C.E. and includes the Ontario, Quebec, andMaritime regions. The introduction of pottery distinguishes the Woodland culture from the previous Archaic-stage inhabitants. The Laurentian-related people of Ontario manufactured the oldest pottery excavated to date in Canada. The Hopewell tradition is an Aboriginal culture that flourished along American rivers from 300 B.C. to 500 C.E.

At its greatest extent, the Hopewell Exchange System connected cultures and societies to the peoples on the Canadian shores of Lake Ontario. Canadian expression of the Hopewellian peoples encompasses the Point Peninsula, Saugeen, and Laurel complexes.

The eastern woodland areas of what became Canada were home to the Algonquian and Iroquoian peoples. The Algonquian language is believed to have originated in the western plateau of Idaho or the plains of Montana and moved eastward, eventually extending all the way from Hudson Bay to what is today Nova Scotia in the east and as far south as the Tidewater region of Virginia

Speakers of eastern Algonquian languages included the Mi'kmaq and Abenaki of the Maritime region of Canada and likely the extinct Beothuk of Newfoundland. The Ojibwa and other Anishinaabe speakers of the central Algonquian languages retain an oral tradition of having moved to their lands around the western and central Great Lakes from the sea, likely the east coast.

According to oral tradition, the Ojibwa formed the Council of Three Fires in 796 C.E. with the Odawa and the Potawatomi. The Iroquois (Haudenosaunee) were centred from at least 1000 C.E. in northern New York, but their influence extended into what is now southern Ontario and the Montreal area of modern Quebec.

The Iroquois Confederacy, according to oral tradition, was formed in 1142 C.E. On the Great Plains the Cree or *Nēhilawē* (who spoke a closely related Central Algonquian language, the plains Cree language) depended on the vast herds of bison to supply food and many of their other needs. To the northwest were the peoples of the Na-Dene languages, which include the Athapaskan-speaking peoples and the Tlingit, who lived on the islands of southern Alaska and northern British Columbia.

The Na-Dene language group is believed to be linked to theYeniseian languages of Siberia.

The Dene of the western Arctic may represent a distinct wave of migration from Asia to North America. The Interior of British Columbia was home to the Salishan language groups such as the Shuswap (Secwepemc), Okanaganand southern Athabaskan language groups, primarily the Dakelh (Carrier) and the Tsilhqot'in. The inlets and valleys of the British Columbia Coast sheltered large, distinctive populations, such as the Haida, Kwakwaka'wakw and Nuu-chah-nulth, sustained by the region's abundant salmon and shellfish. These peoples developed complex cultures dependent on the western red cedar that included wooden houses, seagoing whaling and war canoes and elaborately carved potlatch items and totem poles.

In the Arctic archipelago, the distinctive Paleo-Eskimos known as Dorset peoples, whose culture has been traced back to around 500 B.C., were replaced by the ancestors of today's Inuit by 1500 C.E.This transition is supported by archaeological records and Inuit mythology that tells of having driven off the Tuniit or "first inhabitants". Inuit traditional laws are anthropologically different from Western law. Customary law was non-existent in Inuit society before the introduction of the Canadian legal system.

EXPLORATION & FIRST SETTLEMENTS

The first people who came to North America arrived during the last Ice Age which began about 80 000 years ago and ended about 12 000 years ago. These Native People were hunters who crossed from Asia via a land bridge that is now submerged beneath the Bering Sea.

Although there is continuing debate among archaeologists' as to how early humans might have settled in what is now Canada, the earliest accepted occupation site is at the Bluefish Caves in the Yukon; artefacts at least 12 000 to 17 000 years old have been found there.

As the glaciers of the Ice Age retreated, human settlements spread across Canada and gradually, these first Canadians developed lifestyles based on the environments in which they lived.

They obtained their food by hunting, fishing, gathering, and in the case of Eastern Woodland tribes, by farming. By the time explorers from Europe reached Canada, the Native People had well developed trading patterns, arts and crafts, languages, writing, religious beliefs, laws and government.

There has been much conjecture as to who the first Europeans to come to Canada were.

The claim that an Irish monk, St. Brendan, arrived about the year 550 has not been proven. However the theory that Vikings settled in Newfoundland was confirmed by archaeological excavations at L 'Anse aux Meadows during the 1960s and 1970s.

A burst of European exploration didn't take place until the Age of Discovery in the 15th and 16th centimes. Explorers found what they called a New World while in search of a route to the Far East. In 1497, Giovanni Cabot, an Italian sailing for England, landed on the Canadian coast, likely in Cape Breton or Newfoundland, and claimed the land for Henry VII.

Although Cabot probably died on a second expedition in 1498, his voyages helped open up the rich fishing grounds of the Grand Banks. European navigators and fishermen continued to visit the shores of Canada, but the first serious exploration of the area was undertaken by Jacques Cartier, who discovered the Gulf of St. Lawrence while searching for a passage to Asia, in 1534. The next year he travelled up the St. Lawrence River as far as the native settlements of Stadacona (Quebec) and Hochelagd (Montreal) On this voyage, Cartier picked up the Iroquoian word for village, Kanata (thought to be the origin of "Canada"), and used it to apply to the whole region he had discovered. Cartier's discoveries gave France a claim to Canada and led to the first French settlements.

In 1541-2, Cartier and the Sieur de Roberval established a short-lived settlement at Chariesbourg-Royal just above Quebec. In 1605, the Sieur de Monts and Samuel de Champlain established the colony of Port Royal in what is now Nova Scotia.

Champlain went on to establish a settlement at Quebec in 1608, to explore the interior and to draw maps of New France. Champlain also started a fur-trading network (mostly m beaver pelts) with the Algonqums and the Hurons who inhabited the St Lawrence and Great Lakes regions

This trade relationship became a military alliance as Champlain supported these groups against the Iroquois. This enmity between the French and the Iroquois prevailed throughout most of the history of New France. Circa 1000 Leif Ericsson and other Vikings visit Labrador and Newfoundland.
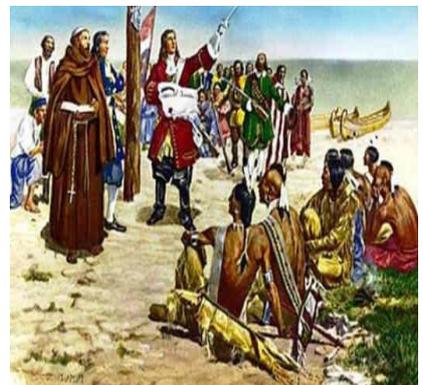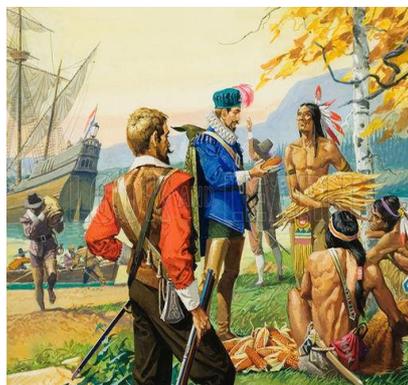
EXPLORERS

Many European and Scandinavian explorers came to Canada. They explored some of the rivers, fished along the shores, traded with the Indians and hunted for furs. However they did not stay for a long time. The first visitors to Canada's east cost may have been Portuguese fishermen. They did not stay. Norsemen from Norway had settlements in Iceland. Some historians think that some Irish people tried to live in Eastern Canada about 850 A. D. They went to Iceland first. They did not stay.

There are reports of contact made before the 1492 voyages of Christopher Columbus and the age of discovery between First Nations, Inuit and those from other continents. The Norse, who had settled Greenland and Iceland, arrived around the year 1000 and built a small settlement at L'Anse aux Meadows at the northernmost tip of Newfoundland (carbon dating estimate 990-1050 C.E.)

Lief Ericson came to Newfoundland and Nova Scotia 1000 A. D. He tried to start a small settlement but went home after three hard winters of disease and fighting with Indians.French and English explorers came to Canada to look for a passageway to the riches of China and the Orient.

L'Anse aux Meadows is also notable for its connection with the attempted colony of Vinland established by Leif Erikson around the same period or, more broadly, with Norse exploration of the Americas. Under letters patent from King Henry VII, John Cabot became the first European known to have landed in Canada after the time of the Vikings.

Records indicate that on 24 June 1497 he cited land at a northern location believed to be somewhere in the Atlantic provinces. Official tradition deemed the first landing site to be at Cape Bonavista, Newfoundland, although other locations are possible.

After 1497 Cabot and his son Sebastian Cabot continued to make other voyages to find the Northwest Passage, and other explorers continued to sail out of England to the New World, although the details of these voyages are not well recorded. They were not very interested in what they found here – trees, animals, fish and difficult living conditions.

He didn't find it but he did notice all the fish around Canada's eastern shores. He told everyone and many English fishermen came to fish but not to stay.Based on the Treaty of Tordesillas, the Spanish Crown claimed it had territorial rights in the area visited by John Cabot in 1497 and 1498 C.E.

However, Portuguese explorers like João Fernandes Lavrador would continue to visited the north Atlantic coast, which accounts for the appearance of "Labrador" on topographical maps of the period. In 1501 and 1502 the Corte-Real brothers explored Newfoundland (Terra Nova) and Labrador claiming these lands as part of the Portuguese Empire.

In 1506, King Manuel I of Portugal created taxes for the cod fisheries in Newfoundland waters. João Álvares Fagundes and Pêro de Barcelos established fishing outposts in Newfoundland and Nova Scotia around 1521 C.E. However, these were later abandoned, with the Portuguese colonizers focusing their efforts on South America. The extent and nature of Portuguese activity on the Canadian mainland during the 16th century remains unclear and controversial.

Jacques Cartier came from France in 1534, 1535 and 1541. He sailed as far as he could get up the St. Lawrence River. He was stopped by the rapids at Lachine. He too, was looking for a passage to the Pacific. However, he was also interested in the new land.

He found Indian villages where the cities of Montreal and Quebec City are now located. He even spent two difficult winters in Canada with the help of Indians. They showed him how to survive the cold and provided food and medicine. Even with the Indian's help, 25 of his 74 men died of scurvy. They had no fruit or fresh vegetables. Both France and England were not yet very interested in the new lands.

They were interested only in finding a way through Canada to get to the Pacific and the riches of Asia. Instead of sending experienced farmers and craftsmen, both countries sent convicts and the poor and homeless to Canada. These people could not set up strong settlements. For the next 60 years, fur was the main interest in Canada. The fur traders and the women, who came to be their wives, became the first European settlers and explorers of the new land.

French interest in the New World began with Francis I of France, who in 1524 sponsored Giovanni da Verrazzano to navigate the region between Florida and Newfoundland in hopes of finding a route to the Pacific Ocean.

In 1534, Jacques Cartier planted a cross in the Gaspé Peninsula and claimed the land in the name of Francis I. Earlier colonization attempts by Cartier at Charlesbourg-Royal in 1541, at Sable Island in 1598 by Marquis de La Roche-Mesgouez, and at Tadoussac, Quebec in 1600 by François Gravé Du Pont had failed. Despite these initial failures, French fishing fleets began to sail to the Atlantic coast and into the St. Lawrence River, trading and making alliances with First Nations.

In 1604, a North American fur trade monopoly was granted to Pierre Dugua Sieur de Monts.

The fur trade became one of the main economic ventures in North America. Dugua led his first colonization expedition to an island located near the mouth of the St. Croix River.

Among his lieutenants was a geographer named Samuel de Champlain, who promptly carried out a major exploration of the northeastern coastline of what is now the USA. In the spring of 1605, under Samuel de Champlain, the new St. Croix settlement was moved to Port Royal.

In 1608, Champlain founded what is now Quebec City, which would become one of the earliest permanent settlement and the capital of New France. He took personal administration over the city and its affairs, and sent out expeditions to explore the interior. Champlain himself discovered Lake Champlain in 1609. By 1615, he had travelled by canoe up the Ottawa River through Lake Nipissing and Georgian Bay to the centre of Huron country near Lake Simcoe. During these voyages, Champlain aided the Wendat (aka 'Hurons') in their battles against the Iroquois Confederacy.

As a result, the Iroquois would become enemies of the French and be involved in multiple conflicts (known as the French and Iroquois Wars) until the signing of the Great Peace of Montreal in 1701. The English, led by Humphrey Gilbert, had claimed St. John's, Newfoundland, in 1583 as the first North American English colony by royal prerogative of Queen Elizabeth I.

In the reign of King James I, the English established additional colonies in Cupids and Ferryland, Newfoundland, and soon after established the first successful permanent settlements of Virginia to the south. On September 29, 1621, a charter for the foundation of a New World Scottish colony was granted by King James to Sir William Alexander. In 1622, the first settlers left Scotland. They initially failed and permanent Nova Scotian settlements were not firmly established until 1629 during the end of the Anglo-French War. These colonies did not last long: in 1631, under Charles I of England, the Treaty of Suza was signed, ending the war and returning Nova Scotia to the French. New France was not fully restored to French rule until the 1632 Treaty of Saint-Germain-en-Laye. This led to new French immigrants and the founding of Trois-Rivièresin 1634.

1497 John Cabot claims Cape Breton Island (or Newfoundland or Labrador) for Henry VII of England.

1534 Jacques Cartier visits the Strait of Belle Isle (Newfoundland), and charts the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

1535 Cartier sails up the St. Lawrence River to Quebec and Montreal.

1541 Cartier & the Sieur de Roberval found Charlesbourg-Royal, the first French settlement in America.

1577 Martin Frobisher makes the first attempt to find a northwest Passage, sailing to Hudson Strait.

1600 King Henry IV of France grants a fur-trading monopoly in the Gulf of St. Lawrence to French merchants.

1605 Samuel de Champlain and the Sieur de Monts found Port Royal (Annapolis, NS)

1608 Champlain founds Quebec.

1609 Champlain supports the Algonqums against the Iroquois at Lake Champlain.

1610 E.Brule goes to live among the Huron and eventually becomes the first European Hudson Bay.

1617 Louis Hebert, the first habitant (fanner), arrives in Quebec.

1625 Jesuits arrived in Quebec to begin missionary work among the Indians.

Exercise 1. Give your pinion on the early period of Canadian history.
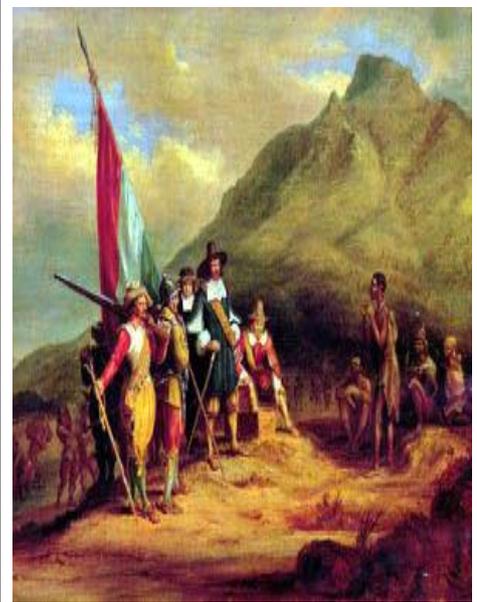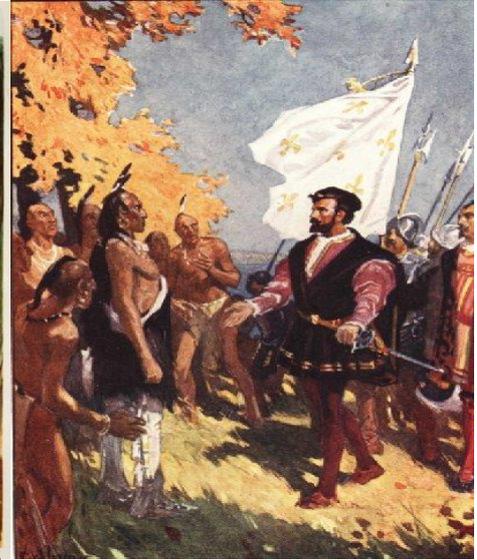
John Cabot, an Italian immigrant to England, was the first to map Canada's Atlantic shore, setting foot on Newfoundland or Cape Breton Island in 1497 and claiming the *New* Founde Land for England. English settlement did not begin until 1610

THE GROWTH OF NEW FRANCE (1627-1660)

The economic foundation of New Prance was the fur trade. In fact, the French kings were content to let fur-trading companies run the colony although these companies expanded the territory's boundaries, they failed to encourage settlement. One of King Louis XIII's most able advisers Cardinal Richelieu tried to remedy this problem by granting a fur-trading monopoly to the Company of One Hundred Associates in 1627, on condition that it brings out several hundred settlers each year. However, war between England and France broke out and Quebec was captured in 1629.

Even after peace was restored in 1633, the Company of One Hundred Associates failed to honour its commitment to bring out settlers. Despite the lack of settlers, the colony was expanding in other ways. As governor, Champlam encouraged the expansion of the fur trade The Jesmts had arrived in 1625 and were vigorously pursuing their missionary work among the Hurons.

During this period, in contrast to the higher density and slower moving agricultural settlement development by the English inward from the east coast of the colonies, New France's interior frontier would eventually cover an immense area with a thin network centred on fur trade, conversion efforts by missionaries, establishing and claiming an empire, and military efforts to protect and further those efforts. The largest of these canoe networks covered much of present-day Canada and central present-day USA. Champlain died in 1635, just two years after the colony was restored to France.

No leader possessing his vision or drive emerged to replace him. Next, despite then conviction, the French missionaries made few converts among the Native People. Even St. Mane among the Hurons, their central mission-post, was abandoned in 1649 in the face of invasion by the Iroquois, who dispersed the Hurons and disrupted the French fur-trading network.

After Champlain's death in 1635, the Roman Catholic Church and the Jesuit establishment became the most dominant force in New France and hoped to establish a utopian European and Aboriginal Christian community. In 1642, the Sulpicians sponsored a group of settlers led by Paul Chomedey de Maisonneuve, who founded Ville-Marie, precursor to present-day Montreal.

Finally, the security of the centre of the fur trade, Montreal (founded in 1642), and the rest of the colony was threatened by the wars against the Iroquois. When the wars were renewed in 1659-1660, after a brief peace, there were still only about 3 000 French settlers in the colony. Clearly, the French King would have to act to secure France's foothold in North America.

In 1663 the French crown took direct control of the colonies from the Company of New France.

Although immigration rates to New France remained very low under direct French control, most of the people were farmers, and the rate of population growth among the settlers themselves had been very high. The women had about 30 % more children than comparable women who remained in France.

Yves Landry says, "Canadians had an exceptional diet for their time. This was due to the natural abundance of meat, fish, and pure water; the good food conservation conditions during the winter; and an adequate wheat supply in most years. The 1666 census of New France was conducted by France's intendant, Jean Talon, in the winter of 1665-1666.

The census showed a population count of 3,215 Acadians and habitants (French-Canadian farmers) in the administrative districts of Acadia and Canada. The census also revealed a great difference in the number of men at 2,034 versus 1,181 women.

1629 David Kirke captures Quebec for Britain.
1632 The Treaty of Saint-Germain-en-Laye returns Quebec to France
1634 The Huron nation is reduced by half from European diseases (small pox epidemic)
1637 Kirke is named first governor of Newfoundland.
1642 Montreal is founded by the Sieur de Maisonneuve.
1649 The Jesuit Father Jean de Brebeuf is martyred by the Iroquois at St. Ignace.
1650 The Iroquois dispersed the Huron nation.

Native peoples around 1500

Hudson's Bay

Canadian Shield

Great Lakes Region

Lake Huron

St. Laurence River Valley

Lake Ontario

Lake Erie

Atlantic Ocean

300 km

Legend
Iroquoian territory
Algonquian territory
Inuit territory
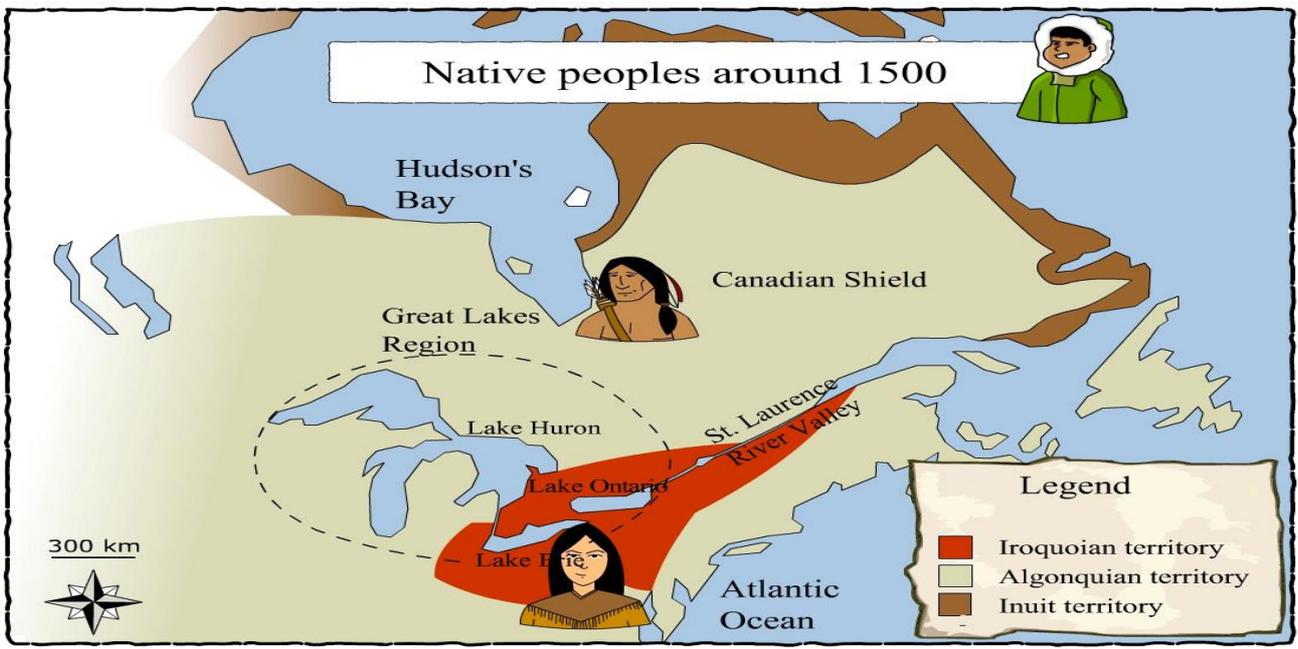
ROYAL GOVERNMENT IN NEW FRANCE (1663-1700)

In 1663 King Louis XIV made New France a crown colony. Regular troops were sent out and undertook a successful campaign against the Iroquois, which resulted in the signing of a peace treaty in 1667. Several hundred of these regulars stayed on as settlers, thereby adding to the security of the colony. A system of government headed by a governor, an intendant, and a bishop was instituted

The governor, who was the king's representative, was charged with defence. The intendant was responsible for industry, trade, and administrative affairs. The bishop looked after religious matters, which included education. In theory, this system provided for a clear separation of powers; but, in practice, there were frequent disputes among the three officials. Still, this system survived intact for the remainder of the colony's history, and it provided New France with some remarkably dynamic officials. Two of these arrived in the first years of the Royal Government.

The first intendant of New France, Jean Talon (1665 to 1672), introduced innovative measures, including awards for early marriage, to boost the population. As well, he tried to build a diversified economy on the St Lawrence by promoting crafts, farming, and local industry.

Few subsequent officials in New France shared Talon's concern for settlement or economic diversity. Most were more interested in profits from the fur trade Count Frontenac, governor for all but seven years between 1672 and 1698, threw his support behind the fur trade, not only raising profits but also encouraging exploration Under his rule, French adventurers explored the Mississippi River from its upper reaches to the Gulf of Mexico, greatly expanding the fur-trading boundaries of New France. Frontenac gained more fame when he withstood the attack of an English army, which besieged Quebec m 1690.

But Frontenac had not only exceeded his powers in promoting territorial expansion, he had also undermined the security of the colony. With its limited population, New France now found itself competing for the fur trade with the more populous English colonies around them.

In the north, there was rivalry with the Hudson's Bay Company, founded in 1670. To the south, there was border warfare between French fur traders and their Indian allies, and the English with their Iroquois allies. New France fared well in the limited warfare of the 1680s and 1690s, but in the 18th century there was a series of major wars, which resulted in disaster for the colony.

1663 Quebec becomes a royal province.

1665 The Cangnan-Saheres regiment is sent from France to Quebec to deal with the Iroquois

1665 Jean Talon becomes Quebec's intendant.

1666 Canada's first census counts 3,215 non-native inhabitants in 668 families.

1670 The Hudson's Bay Company is granted trade rights over all territory draining into Hudson Bay.

1672 Count Frontenac becomes Governor of Quebec.

1673 Marqnette and Jolliet explore the Mississippi to its junction with the Arkansas.

1674 Laval becomes first Bishop of Quebec.

1678 Dulhut explores the headwaters of the Mississippi.

1682 La Salle explores the Mississippi to its mouth.

1686 De Troyes and D'Iberville capture the English three posts on James Bay.

1689 The Iroquois kill many French settlers at Lachine.

1690 Sir William Phips captures Port Royal (May 11) Frontenac repels Phips's attack on Quebec.

1697 The Treaty of Ryswick restores the status quo in the struggle between England and France.

1698 All captured territory is returned.

Exercise 1. Formulate the first steps of Royal Government in New France.

Exercise 2. Describe three most important event of that time.

Exercise 3. Name the most significant people of that period.

THE COLLAPSE OF NEW FRANCE (1701-1763)

In the early years of the 18th century, New France stretched from Hudson Bay to the Gulf of Mexico and from Newfoundland to the Great Lakes. Its population was thinly scattered in the north, south and west but its fur-trading posts in these regions gave legitimacy to its territorial claims.

In the Atlantic region, there were several hundred colonists in Newfoundland and another 1 500 in Acadia. The heartland of New France was the settlement of about 20 000 colonists in Montreal, Quebec and in the small communities along the St. Lawrence. The prosperity of the French settlements was to be hurt by long periods of war. The first of these was the war of the Spanish Succession fought between France and Austria (and their allies) between l701-1714.

Although the British failed to capture their main objective in the North American campaign, the fortress city of Quebec, they made other gains at the bargaining table. In the Treaty of Utrecht, which ended the conflict, France gave up claims to the Hudson Bay territory, all of Acadia except for Cape Breton, and Newfoundland. During a 30-year period of peace New France enjoyed limited prosperity.

The population grew, farm yields increased, some industry was established, and furs were still exported. But military expenditure necessary to protect the colony was turning it into a financial burden for France. Much of that expenditure went into the huge fortress of Louisbourg, built on Cape Breton Island to protect the offshore fisheries and guard the St. Lawrence.

The war of Austrian Succession broke out in 1740 and Louisbourg was a natural target. The fortress fell to the British, although it was returned to France at the war's end in 1748. The British established their own military and naval base at Halifax in 1749. The fragile peace was broken m 1754, when fighting broke out between the English and French colonists in the Ohio Valley. Within two years, Britain and France were officially at war again in what became known as the Seven Years' War.

Despite some early victories, the French suffered the loss of Louisbourg in 1758.

In the following year, General Wolfe defeated General Montcalm on the Plains of Abraham above the St. Lawrence at Quebec. Montreal did not fall until the next year, the loss of Quebec was an irreversible setback. The British army occupied New France, and in 1763 the treaty ending the Seven Years' War confirmed British sovereignty. New France had fallen because of decisive military defeats at Louisbourg and Quebec, but more significant was the inability of France to supply its colony in the face of British naval supremacy The British were now masters in North America.

17O1 The War of the Spanish Succession begins in Europe, the conflict spreads to North America.

1710 Francis Nicholson captures Port Royal for England.

1713 The Treaty of Utrecht confirms British possession of Hudson Bay, Newfoundland and Acadia

1739 La Verendrye expedition explores Lake Winnipeg.

1740 The War of the Austrian Succession pits Britain against France,

1744 The European conflict spreads to North America (King George's War).

1745 Massachusetts Governor William Shirley takes the French fortress of Louisbourg.

1748 Louisbourg is returned to France by the Treaty of Aix-la-ChapeUe.

1749 Britain founds Halifax to counter the French presence at Louisbourg.

1752 Canada's first newspaper, the Halifax Gazette, appears (Mar. 25).

1753 George Washington's limitary expedition to the Monogahela is defeated by the French.

1754 Beginning of French and Indian War in America.

1755 Britain expels the Acadians from Nova Scotia, scattering them throughout North American colonies.

1756 Beginning of the Seven Years' War in Europe pits Britain against France.

1757 The Marquis de Montcalm assumes command of French troops in North America.

1759 Wolfe takes Quebec, defeating Montcalm on the Plains of Abraham. Both generals are killed.

1760 General James Murray is appointed military governor of Quebec.

Exercise 1. How can you explain the collapse of New France?

WARS DURING THE COLONIAL ERA

By the early 1700s the New France settlers were well established along the shores of the Saint Lawrence River and parts of Nova Scotia, with a population around 16,000.

However new arrivals stopped coming from France in the proceeding decades, resulting in the English and Scottish settlers in Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, and the southern Thirteen Colonies to vastly outnumber the French population approximately ten to one by the 1750s.

From 1670, through the Hudson's Bay Company, the English also laid claim to Hudson Bay and its drainage basin known as Rupert's Land establishing new trading posts and forts, while continued to operate fishing settlements in Newfoundland. French expansion along the Canadian canoe routes challenged the Hudson's Bay Company claims, and in 1686, Pierre Troyes led an overland expedition from Montreal to the shore of the bay, where they managed to capture a handful of outposts. La Salle's explorations gave France a claim to the Mississippi River Valley, where fur trappers and a few settlers set up scattered forts and settlements.

There were four French and Indian Wars and two additional wars in Acadia and Nova Scotia between the Thirteen American Colonies and New France from 1688 to 1763.

During King William's War (1688-1697), military conflicts in Acadia included: Battle of Port Royal (1690); a naval battle in the Bay of Fundy (1696); and the Raid on Chignecto (1696).

The Treaty of Ryswick in 1697 ended the war between the two colonial powers of England and France for a brief time. During Queen Anne's War (1702-1713), the British Conquest of Acadia occurred in 1710 resulting in Nova Scotia, other than Cape Breton, being officially ceded to the British by the Treaty of Utrecht including Rupert's Land, which France had conquered in the late 17th century (Battle of Hudson's Bay). As an immediate result of this setback, France founded the powerful Fortress of Louisbourg on Cape Breton Island. St. John River Campaign: *Raid on Grimrose* (Gagetown, New Brunswick).

This is the only contemporaneous image of the Expulsion of the Acadians. Louisbourg was intended to serve as a year-round military and naval base for France's remaining North American empire and to protect the entrance to the St. Lawrence River.

Father Rale's War resulted in both the fall of New France influence in present-day Maine and the British recognition of having to negotiate with the Mi'kmaq in Nova Scotia.

During King George's War (1744-1748), an army of New Englanders led by William Pepperrell mounted an expedition of 90 vessels and 4,000 men against Louisbourg in 1745.

Within three months the fortress surrendered. The return of Louisbourg to French control by the peace treaty prompted the British to found Halifax in 1749 under Edward Cornwallis. Despite the official cessation of war between the British and French empires with the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle; the conflict in Acadia and Nova Scotia continued on as the Father Le Loutre's War.

The British ordered the Acadians expelled from their lands in 1755 during the French and Indian War, an event called the Expulsion of the Acadians or *le Grand Dérangement*. The "expulsion" resulted in approximately 12,000 Acadians being shipped to destinations throughout Britain's North American and to France, Quebec and the French Caribbean colony of Saint-Domingue.

The first wave of the expulsion of the Acadians began with the Bay of Fundy Campaign (1755) and the second wave began after the final Siege of Louisbourg (1758). Many of the Acadians settled in southern Louisiana, creating the Cajun culture there. Some Acadians managed to hide and others eventually returned to Nova Scotia, but they were far outnumbered by a new migration of New England Planters who were settled on the former lands of the Acadians and transformed Nova Scotia from a colony of occupation for the British to a settled colony with stronger ties to New England. Britain eventually gained control of Quebec City and Montreal after the Battle of the Plains of Abraham and Fort Niagara in 1759, and the Thousand Islands and Sainte-Foy in 1760.

Exercise 1. Examine the difficulties of wars during the colonial era.

THE FIRST YEARS OF BRITISH RULE (1763-1812)

The British had been active on the continent during their search for a northwest passage to the Far East; however their victory over the French encouraged a shift from exploration and fur trading to settlement and the strengthening of British customs in the new territory.

With the end of the Seven Years' War and the signing of the Treaty of Paris (1763), France ceded almost all of its territory in mainland North America, except for fishing rights off Newfoundland and two small islands where it could dry that fish. In turn France received the return of its sugar colony, Guadeloupe, which it considered more valuable than Canada. As of 2015, Guadeloupe remains a part of the French Republic. The two small fishing islands, named St. Pierre et Miquelon, are less than 10 kilometers from the coast of Newfoundland and Labrador, yet remain under French rule.

The Royal Proclamation of 1763 had been issued in October, by King George III following Great Britain's acquisition of French territory. The proclamation organized Great Britain's new North American empire and stabilized relations between the British Crown and Aboriginal peoples through regulation of trade, settlement, and land purchases on the western frontier.

In 1763 a Royal Proclamation was imposed by the British government on the newly acquired territories of New France. The intent of this proclamation was clear. By encouraging the establishment of Protestant schools, by promoting the Church of England, and by stipulating that an assembly be elected, the proclamation aimed at Anglicisation.

The intent was most visible in the matter of the assembly. Although the French inhabitants were in the majority, under British law no Roman Catholic could hold office. If an assembly were elected, a few hundred British settlers would control about 65 000 Canadians.

Fortunately for the French in Canada, James Murray, the governor of Quebec from 1760 to 1768, felt that the loyalty of the French colonists could more likely be gained by fair treatment. Murray refused to call elections for the assembly, and allowed French legal practices to continue.

Murray's sympathies provoked a storm of protest from the British colonists in Quebec and he was recalled. But his successor, Guy Carleton, also realized that the Royal Proclamation of 1763 would only alienate the recently defeated colonists. Carleton saw that even if Anglicisation were carried out, few colonists from the Thirteen Colonies in America or immigrants from Britain would be lured to the rugged colony of Quebec. Consequently, Carleton advised the Government in London to replace the proclamation with more liberal legislation.

The new British rulers retained and protected most of the property, religious, political, and social culture of the French-speaking habitants, guaranteeing the right of the Canadiens to practice the Catholic faith and to the use of French civil law (now Quebec law) through the Quebec Act of 1774.

The result was the Quebec Act of 1774, which dropped the assembly in favour of an appointed council on which Catholics might serve. As well, the French system of civil law and the seigniorial system of land tenure were both guaranteed. Finally, the Quebec Act expanded the borders of the colony to include the rich lands of the Ohio Valley.

The British had acted to win the support of the Canadians. In doing so, however, the British government angered the citizens of the Thirteen Colonies, who resented the special treatment given to their former enemies. These English colonists were especially upset over the loss of the Ohio Valley, a region into which they expected to expand. The Quebec Act was not the only cause for complaint in the Thirteen Colonies. Protests over British taxation policies and trade restriction led to talk of revolution. That talk led to action, and in 1775 an invading American army took Montreal. Quebec held out against the American siege until relieved by British forces.

Although there was some sympathy for the American cause in both Quebec and Nova Scotia, it was not a strong enough sentiment to cause these two colonies to join the revolution.

During and immediately after the American Revolution, some American colonists who wished to retain their British ties fled from the newly created USA into the Maritimes and Quebec.

The arrival of about 30 000 of these Loyalists in Nova Scotia resulted in the creation of a new colony New Brunswick, in 1784. Similarly, the influx of 10 000 Loyalists into Quebec led to division of the colony, and in 1791, the western part of the colony became Upper Canada.

The remainder of the old colony was known as Lower Canada. Despite these changes fur trading remained an important economic activity in the interior of British North America.

In fact, there was keen rivalry for furs between the Hudson's Bay Company and the newly formed (1784) North West Company based in Montreal which led to a flurry of western exploration.

Alexander Mackenzie, a partner in the North West Company, explored a river (now known as the Mackenzie) to its mouth on the Beaufort Sea in 1789, and found a route to the Pacific via the Praser and Bella Coola Rivers in 1793. Two other North West Company employees, Simon Fraser and David Thompson, also carried out voyages of discovery. Praser followed the river named after him to the Pacific in 1808, and Thompson travelled down the Columbia River to the coast in 1811.

These voyages, along with the earlier coastal explorations of James Cook in 1778 and George Vancouver in 1792-1795, helped establish Britain's claim to the northwest part of the continent.

Slavery has existed all over the world, from Asia, Africa and the Middle East to the Americas.

The first movement to abolish the transatlantic slave trade emerged in the British Parliament in the late 1700s. In 1793, Upper Canada, led by Lieutenant Governor John Graves Simcoe, a Loyalist military officer, became the first province in the Empire to move toward abolition.

In 1807, the British Parliament prohibited the buying and selling of slaves, and in 1833 abolished slavery throughout the Empire. Thousands of slaves escaped from the USA, followed "the North Star" and settled in Canada

1763 France cedes its North American possessions to Britain by the Treaty of Paris.

1768 Guy Carleton succeeds Murray as governor of Quebec.

1769 Frances Brooke publishes The History of Emily Montague, a novel with descriptions of the New World.

1774 The Quebec Act provides for British criminal law but restores French civil law

1774 It guarantees religious freedom for Roman Catholic colonists.

1775 Americans under Montgomery capture Montreal and attack Quebec.

1776 Under Carleton, Quebec withstands American siege until the appearance of a British fleet.

1778 Captain James Cook anchors in Nootka Sound, Vancouver Island.

1783 The American Revolutionary War ends; the border between Canada and the US is accepted.

1784 United Empire Loyalists arrive in Canada. The province of New Brunswick is created.

1785 The North West Company is formed.

1789 Alexander Mackenzie journeys to the Beaufort Sea, following named the Mackenzie River.

1791 Constitutional Act divides Quebec into Upper and Lower Canada.

1792 George Vancouver begins his explorations of the Pacific coast.

1793 Alexander Mackenzie reaches the Pacific.

1794 Jay's Treaty between the US and Britain promises British evacuation of the Ohio Valley forts.

1797 David Thompson joins the North West Company as a surveyor and mapmaker.

1806 Le Canadien, Quebec nationalist newspaper, is founded.

1808 Simon Fraser, a North West Company employee, travels the river named after him to the Pacific.

1811 David Thompson charts the Columbia River to the Pacific coast.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	When	Where	Score
1.				

AMERICAN REVOLUTION & THE LOYALISTS

During the American Revolution, there was some sympathy for the American cause among the Acadians and the New Englanders in Nova Scotia. Neither party joined the rebels, although several hundred individuals joined the revolutionary cause.

An invasion of Canada by the Continental Army in 1775, with a goal to take Quebec from British control, was halted at the Battle of Quebec by Guy Carleton, with the assistance of local militias.

The defeat of the British army during the Siege of Yorktown in October 1781 signaled the end of Britain's struggle to suppress the American Revolution.

When the British evacuated New York City in 1783, they took many Loyalist refugees to Nova Scotia, while other Loyalists went to southwestern Quebec. So many Loyalists arrived on the shores of the St. John River that a separate colony – New Brunswick – was created in 1784; followed in 1791 by the division of Quebec into the largely French-speaking Lower Canada (French Canada) along the St. Lawrence River and Gaspé Peninsula and an anglophone Loyalist Upper Canada, with its capital settled by 1796 in York, in present-day Toronto. After 1790 most of the new settlers were American farmers searching for new lands; although generally favorable to republicanism, they were relatively non-political and stayed neutral in the War of 1812.

The signing of the Treaty of Paris 1783 formally ended the war. Britain made several concessions to the Americans at the expense of the North American colonies.[1] Notably, the borders between Canada and the USA were officially demarcated. All land south of the Great Lakes, which was formerly a part of the Province of Quebec and included modern day Michigan, Illinois and Ohio, was ceded to the Americans. Fishing rights were also granted to the USA in the Gulf of St. Lawrence and on the coast of Newfoundland and the Grand Banks. The British ignored part of the treaty and maintained their military outposts in the Great Lakes areas it had ceded to the U.S., and they continued to supply their native allies with munitions. The British evacuated the outposts with the Jay Treaty of 1795, but the continued supply of munitions irritated the Americans in the run-up to the War of 1812.

Lower emphasizes the positive benefits of the Revolution for Americans, making them an energetic people, while for English Canada the results were negative:

English Canada inherited, not the benefits, but the bitterness of the Revolution. It got no shining scriptures out of it. It got little release of energy and no new horizons of the spirit were opened up. It had been a calamity, pure and simple. To take the place of the internal fire that was urging Americans westward across the continent, there was only melancholy contemplation of things as they might have been and dingy reflection of that ineffably glorious world across the stormy Atlantic.

English Canada started its life with as powerful a nostalgic shove backward into the past as the Conquest had given to French Canada: two little peoples officially devoted to counter-revolution, to lost causes, to the tawdry ideals of a society of men, and not the self-reliant freedom alongside of them.

THE WAR OF 1812

Although the British and Americans signed a peace treaty in 1783 to end the American War of Independence, there was still friction between them. One source of conflict was the British fur-trading posts in the Ohio Valley, which now belonged to the USA.

Although Britain surrendered these posts in 1796 as stipulated by Jay's Treaty (1794), there were still American complaints that the British were arming the local native people. At the same time there was growing American resentment over British interference with shipping.

The War of 1812 was fought between the USA and the British, with the British North American colonies being heavily involved. Greatly outgunned by the British Royal Navy, the American war plans focused on an invasion of Canada (especially what is today eastern and western Ontario).

The American frontier states voted for war to suppress the First Nations raids that frustrated settlement of the frontier. Canadians feared that another goal may have been the annexation of Canada, but the American policy was to use the temporary occupation of Canada as a bargaining chip with Britain. The war on the border with the USA was characterized by a series of multiple failed invasions and fiascos on both sides. American forces took control of Lake Erie in 1813, driving the British out of western Ontario, killing the Native American leader Tecumseh, and breaking the military power of his confederacy. The war was overseen by British army officers like Isaac Brock and Charles de Salaberry with the assistance of First Nations and loyalist informants, most notably Laura Secord.

The British, who were at war with France, claimed the right to search American ships for cargoes bound for the enemy. In the process, the British often forced American sailors on these ships to join the British navy. Resentment grew among Americans until June 1812, when the USA declared war on Britain. In the first year of the war, the Americans under General William Hull crossed the Detroit River to invade Upper Canada. Hull expected Canadian sympathizers to flock to his cause but he was disappointed. Without fighting a major battle, he retreated to Detroit.

British General Isaac Brock and the Shawnees, under Chief Tecumseh, moved against Detroit and General Hull surrendered. This British and Canadian victory was followed by a victory at Queenston Heights on the Niagara River. Brock was killed in this battle, which nevertheless gave confidence to the defenders of the British colonies.

The Canadas were the main front in the War of 1812 between the USA and Britain. Peace came in 1815; no boundaries were changed. Immigration now resumed at a higher level, with over 960,000 arrivals from Britain 1815-50. New arrivals included Irish refugees escaping theGreat Irish Famine as well as Gaelic-speaking Scots displaced by the Highland Clearances Infectious diseases killed between 25 and 33 % of Europeans who immigrated to Canada before 1891.

The desire for responsible government resulted in the abortive Rebellions of 1837.

The Durham Report subsequently recommended responsible government and the assimilation of French Canadians into English culture. The Act of Union 1840 merged the Canadas into a united Province of Canada and responsible government was established for all provinces of British North America by 1849. The signing of the Oregon Treaty by Britain and the USA in 1846 ended the Oregon boundary dispute, extending the border westward along the 49th parallel. This paved the way for British colonies on Vancouver Island (1849) and in British Columbia (1858).

The War ended with no boundary changes thanks to the Treaty of Ghent of 1814, and the Rush-Bagot Treaty of 1817. A demographic result was the shifting of the destination of American migration from Upper Canada to Ohio, Indiana and Michigan, without fear of Indian attacks.

After the war, supporters of Britain tried to repress the republicanism that was common among American immigrants to Canada. The troubling memory of the war and the American invasions etched itself into the consciousness of Canadians as a distrust of the intentions of the USA towards the British presence in North America. In 1813, the Americans carried out a successful raid on York (Toronto), and also gained a foothold in the Niagara district.

But by the summer of that year the Americans had been pushed back across the Niagara River by British victories at Stoney Creek and Beaver Dam. Meanwhile, the Americans were building up a large fleet on the Great Lakes, and in 1813 the Americans won control of Lake Erie at the Battle of Put-in-Bay. This victory prompted the British under General Proctor to abandon Pert Maiden on the Detroit River. However, the American General Harrison caught the retreating forces at Moraviantown on the Thames River and defeated Proctor. Tecumseh was killed in this battle.

In the east, a two-pronged attack on Montreal was repulsed. The American invaders were defeated on the Chateauguay River and at Crysler's Farm near Cornwall in the fall of 1813. In 1814, the Americans again invaded the Niagara district but were halted at the Battle of Lundy's Lane.

From Halifax, British forces attacked targets in Maine, and occupied most of that state. Another attack from Haifax was launched on the American capital, Washington.

The British raiders burned the government buildings there in retaliation for the destruction of York the previous year. Despite these successes, a major British offensive against Plattsburg on Lake Champlain failed. By now the war was in stalemate and both sides were tired. British and American negotiators signed the Treaty of Ghent in 1814, to end the war.

In the aftermath of the war, the two sides made an effort to settle outstanding differences.

The Rush-Bagot Agreement of 1817 provided for naval disarmament on the Great Lakes. In the following year Britain and the USA agreed to accept the 49th parallel as the international boundary from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains. In addition, they agreed to the Joint occupation of the Oregon Territory for 10 years.

1812 The US declares war on Britain, beginning the War of 1812.

1812 Americans under General William Hull invade Canada from Detroit.

1813 The Red River settlement is begun in Canada's northwest.

1813 Battle of Queenston Heights: Canadian victory. British General Isaac Brock is killed in this battle.

1813 Battle of Stoney Creek – Canadian victory. Battle of Beaver Dams – Canadian victory.

1814 Battle of Chippewa – American victory. Battle of Lundy's Lane – Canadian victory.

1814 A British naval force takes Washington.

1814 Battle of Lake Champlain – American victory. The Treaty of Ghent ends the War of 1812.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	When	Where	Score
1.				
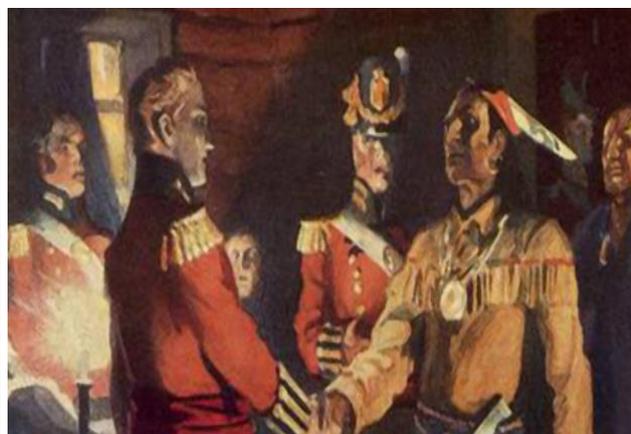
Meeting of Isaac Brock and Tecumseh

REBELLION & REFORM (1814-1839)

Spanish explorers had taken the lead in the Pacific Northwest coast, with the voyages of Juan José Pérez Hernández in 1774 and 1775. By the time the Spanish determined to build a fort on Vancouver Island, the British navigator James Cook had visited Nootka Sound and charted the coast as far as Alaska, while British and American maritime fur traders had begun a busy era of commerce with the coastal peoples to satisfy the brisk market for sea otter pelts in China, thereby launching what became known as the China Trade.

In 1789 war threatened between Britain and Spain on their respective rights; the Nootka Crisis was resolved peacefully largely in favor of Britain, the much stronger naval power.

In 1793 Alexander MacKenzie, a Canadian working for the North West Company, crossed the continent and with his Aboriginal guides and French-Canadian crew, reached the mouth of the Bella Coola River, completing the first continental crossing north of Mexico, missing George Vancouver's charting expedition to the region by only a few weeks.

In the years after the War of 1812, there was considerable growth in British North America.

The population increased as immigrants from both the USA and Britain arrived to take up land that was free or inexpensive. The economy became more diversified as lumbering, farming, and shipbuilding developed in the Canadas and in the Mantimes. Finally, a sense of nationalism began to grow in parts of British North America. This feeling arose partly out of post-war patriotism and partly out of the shared experiences of a demanding colonial life.

As the colonies became more populous, political interest increased. In both the Canadas and the Maritimes friction between ruling elites and the ordinary colonists developed and was partially fuelled by the form of government in each colony British governors or lieutenant-governors picked their own officials, including the members of legislative or executive councils.

There were elected assemblies in each colony, but their powers were limited. Legislation might pass in the assembly, but be turned down by the legislative council. The assemblies, the voice of the people, found themselves frustrated by the power of appointed officials.

By the mid-1830s, economic distress increased the discontent that had been building during the 1820s In Lower Canada, where cultural prejudice against the Canadians added to the tension; Louis Joseph Papineau emerged as leader of the radical Patriot Party.

When the colonial authorities would not grant the reforms called for by Papineau and his followers, rebellion broke out in November 1837. But loyalist forces quickly defeated the badly organized and poorly led rebels Papineau and other leaders fled to the USA.

In Upper Canada, the reform movement was able to gain a majority in the assembly in several elections. Still, the reformers could not turn their program into legislation because of Tory control of the Legislative Council. When an anti-reform lieutenant governor, Sir Francis Bond Head, took over in 1836, some reformers became more radical. Their leader was William Lyon Mackenzie, a newspaper editor and member of the assembly. The Tories won the election of 1836, when Head directly intervened in the campaign. Mackenzie and his followers, spurred on by events in Lower Canada, took up arms in early December of 1837. Mackenzie's disorganization, and lack of widespread support among the colonists, doomed the rebellion. After a skirmish north of Toronto the main body of rebels fled.

An unstrung in the western districts of Upper Canada was equally unsuccessful. Throughout the following year some rebels and American sympathizers mounted raids on Upper Canada from the USA, but these received no popular support. In the aftermath of the rebellions came political change.

The British government sent out Lord Durham to act as Governor General of British North America and investigate the rebellion. The rebellions of 1837 against the British colonial government took place in both Upper and Lower Canada. In Lower Canada, a more substantial rebellion occurred against British rule.

In Upper Canada, a band of Reformers under the leadership of William Lyon Mackenzie took up arms in a disorganized and ultimately unsuccessful series of small-scale skirmishes around Toronto, London, and Hamilton. Both English- and French-Canadian rebels, sometimes using bases in the neutral USA, fought several skirmishes against the authorities.

The towns of Chambly and Sorel were taken by the rebels, and Quebec City was isolated from the rest of the colony. Montreal rebel leader Robert Nelson read the "Declaration of Independence of Lower Canada" to a crowd assembled at the town of Napierville in 1838. The rebellion of the Patriote movement was defeated after battles across Quebec. Hundreds were arrested, and several villages were burnt in reprisal. British Government then sent Lord Durham to examine the situation; he stayed in Canada only five months before returning to Britain and brought with him his Durham Report, which strongly recommended responsible government. A less well-received recommendation was the amalgamation of Upper and Lower Canada for the deliberate assimilation of the French-speaking population.

The Canadas were merged into a single colony, the United Province of Canada, by the 1840 Act of Union, and responsible government was achieved in 1848, a few months after it was accomplished in Nova Scotia. The parliament of United Canada in Montreal was set on fire by a mob of Tories in 1849 after the passing of an indemnity bill for the people who suffered losses during the rebellion in Lower Canada. Between the Napoleonic Wars and 1850, some 800,000 immigrants came to the colonies of British North America, mainly from the British Isles, as part of the great migration of Canada. These included Gaelic-speaking Highland Scots displaced by the Highland Clearances to Nova Scotia and Scottish and English settlers to the Canadas, particularly Upper Canada. The Irish Famine of the 1840s significantly increased the pace of Irish Catholic immigration to British North America, with over 35,000 distressed Irish landing in Toronto alone in 1847 and 1848.

In 1821, the North West Company and Hudson's Bay Company merged, with a combined trading territory that was extended by a licence to the North-Western Territory and the Columbia and New Caledonia fur districts, which reached the Arctic Ocean on the north and the Pacific Ocean on the west. The Durham Report of 1839 contained two main recommendations: the first called for the union of Upper and Lower Canada as a first step in the eventual assimilation of the French Canadians; the second recommended the granting of responsible government, a key demand of reformers.

The Colony of Vancouver Island was chartered in 1849, with the trading post at Fort Victoria as the capital. This was followed by the Colony of the Queen Charlotte Islands in 1853, and by the creation of the Colony of British Columbia in 1858 and the Stikine Territory in 1861, with the latter three being founded expressly to keep those regions from being overrun and annexed by American gold miners. The Colony of the Queen Charlotte Islands and most of the Stikine Territory were merged into the Colony of British Columbia in 1863 (the remainder, north of the 60th Parallel, became part of the North-Western Territory).

1816 Agents of the North West Company kill Robert Semple, governor of the Hudson's Bay

1817 The Rush-Bagot agreement limits the number of battleships on the Great Lakes.

1818 The 49th parallel is accepted as Canada's border with the US from Lake of the Woods to the R. M.

1821 The Hudson's Bay Company and the North West Company are amalgamated as the HBC.

1829 The Lachine and Welland Canals are completed.

1835 William Lyon Mackenzie becomes the first mayor of Toronto.

1836 Opening of Canada's first railway line from St. Johns, Que to La Prairie, Que.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	Events	When	Where	Score
1.				

THE ROAD TO CONFEDERATION (1840-1867)

The middle years of the 19th century were both satisfying and disturbing for British North Americans.

Immigrants from Europe streamed into the colonies, more land was cleared, and towns grew. Local industries were started, while lumbering and shipbuilding activities increased.

Montreal and Toronto became commercial centres and the ports of the Maritimes were prosperous, fuelled by shipbuilding and trade. Transportation improved as roads, canals, and, by the 1850s, railways were built. Some British North Americans looked beyond their borders and began to think of a federation of British colonies that included not only Canada and the Maritimes, but also the Red River settlement and the colonies in British Columbia.

Despite the prosperity, there were reasons to consider such an alliance. Until the mid-1840s, the colonies had enjoyed a preferential trading relationship whereby Britain reduced tariffs on colonial products. This advantage was lost in 1846 when Britain adopted free trade.

At first, the colonies found some advantage in entering into a limited free trade arrangement with the USA. But the Americans allowed this Reciprocity Treaty of 1854 to lapse in 1866. British North Americans would have to look to themselves as trading partners. There was concern in British North America about the USA that country seemed intent on fulfilling its "Manifest Destiny" to take over North America. The threat was especially clear during and after the American Civil War (1861-5). During the war, the Northern States were angered by British support for the South, and after the war, there was a fear that the large Northern army might march into British territory.

As well, there was a serious political problem in the colony of Canada. The union of Upper and Lower Canada in 1841 had resulted in the creation of a single legislature for the new colony, Canada.

By the 1860s this legislature was barely functioning. No single party could gain enough support from both Francophones and Anglophones to gain a majority. There had been 12 different governments in 15 years, and Canadian politicians were desperate for a solution.

Three powerful figures in Canada's legislature, John A. Macdonald, George Brown and George-Etienne Cartier formed a coalition and proposed a larger union of British North America as a way to end the political deadlock. In addition, this proposal would solve the problem of trade, and provide security against the American threat. Meanwhile on the east coast there was interest in a union of the Maritimes too. A conference had been called for Charlottetown in September 1864 to discuss that topic. When the leaders of the new Canadian coalition heard of this meeting, they asked for an invitation. At Charlottetown the British North American delegates decided on a federation of all the colonies. A second conference at Quebec in October, 1864 resulted in a plan for federal union.

A federal government would control defence, trade and other matters of national interest.

Provincial governments would have power over local matters such as roads and education.

The Seventy-Two Resolutions from the 1864 Quebec Conference and Charlottetown Conference laid out the framework for uniting British colonies in North America into a federation. They had been adopted by the majority of the provinces of Canada and became the basis for the London Conference of 1866, which led to the formation of the Dominion of Canada on July 1, 1867.

The term "dominion" was chosen to indicate Canada's status as a self-governing colony of the British Empire, the first time it was used about a country. With the coming into force of theBritish North America Act (enacted by the British Parliament), the Province of Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia became a federated kingdom in its own right.

Federation emerged from multiple impulses: the British wanted Canada to defend itself; the Maritimes needed railroad connections, which were promised in 1867. The final details were hammered out at another conference in London, England, in 1866. The British government, which supported this colonial initiative, passed the British North America Act in March of 1867.

On July 1, 1867, the provinces of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Ontario (Canada West) and Quebec (formerly Canada East), became the Dominion of Canada.

The BNA Act, now the Constitution Act, 1867, confirms the practice of official bilingualism, guaranteeing the use of French and English in the debates of the House of Commons and in the Senate, in federal courts and in publications of federal statutes. The provincial legislature, statutes and courts of Quebec are also made bilingual.

British-Canadian nationalism sought to unite the lands into one country, dominated by the English language and British culture. Many French-Canadians saw an opportunity to exert political control within a new largely French-speaking Quebec and fears of possible U.S. expansion northward.

On a political level, there was a desire for the expansion of responsible government and elimination of the legislative deadlock between Upper and Lower Canada, and their replacement with provincial legislatures in a federation. This was especially pushed by the liberal Reform movement of Upper Canada and the French-Canadian Parti rouge in Lower Canada who favored a decentralized union in comparison to the Upper Canadian Conservative party and to some degree the French-Canadian Parti bleu, which favored a centralized union.

1841 The Act of Union unites Upper and Lower Canada.

1843 Fort Victoria is built to bolster Britain's claim to Vancouver Island.

1846 Great Britain ends a preferential trading policy with the British North American colonies.

1848 Responsible government is achieved in the Canadas and in the Maritimes,

1849 The boundary of the 49th parallel is extended to the Pacific Ocean.

1849 Canada begins its policy of official bilingualism.

1849 All bills of the United Canada Parliament are given assent in both English and French.

1851 Britain transfers control of the colonial postal system to Canada.

1854 The Reciprocity Treaty between Canada and the U.S. is signed.

1857 Ottawa is named Canada's capital by Queen Victoria.

1860 Cornerstone of the Parliament buildings is laid.

1861 The Grand Trunk Railway through the length of the Province of Canada is completed.

1864 The Charlottetown Conference takes the first steps toward Confederation.

1864 The Quebec Conference sets out the basis for union.

1867 Britain's North American colonies are united to become the Dominion of Canada.

1867 Sir John A. Macdonald is Canada's first Prime Minister.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Fathers of Confidiration

THE NATION EXPANDS (1867-1885)

Soon after the Confederation of Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick and Nova Scotia in 1867, the new nation of Canada began to acquire more territory. Following several constitutional conferences, the 1867 Constitution Act officially proclaimed Canadian Confederation, initially with four provinces: Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick.

In 1869, guided by the national vision of Prime Minister John A. Macdonald, the federal government bought Rupert's Land from the Hudson's Bay Company. This was a huge territory, which included most of modem Manitoba, as well as parts of Saskatchewan, Alberta and the Northwest Territories.

Canada assumed control of Rupert's Land and the North-Western Territory to form the Northwest Territories, where the Metis' grievances ignited the Red River Rebellion and the creation of the province of Manitoba in July 1870. British Columbia and Vancouver Island (1866) joined the confederation in 1871, while Prince Edward Island joined in 1873.

The few Ontario immigrants in the Red River Settlement there welcomed this move; but the far more numerous Metis (descendants of French fur traders and Native people) were suspicious, especially because they had not been consulted beforehand. When newly appointed Lieutenant-Governor William McDougall tried to enter the settlement before the territory had officially been transferred to Canada, the Metis turned him back. In the absence of a legitimate government, the Metis, under their leader Louis Riel, seized Fort Carry on the Red River and proclaimed a provisional government.

The Metis demanded the right to vote, land laws, the official use of both French and English, and the provision of both Roman Catholic and Protestant schools. The Metis list of rights became the terms for negotiating Manitoba's entry into Confederation in 1870. In the same year, representatives from the colony of British Columbia arrived in Ottawa to discuss union. With the promise from Ottawa to build a transcontinental railway, British Columbia entered Confederation in 1871. Canada now stretched from sea to sea, but the work of nation building was still not complete.

In 1868 Nova Scotia elected an anti-Confederation provincial government and sent a delegation, led by veteran politician Joseph Howe, to London to seek a repeal of the union.

But Britain was unsympathetic, and in 1869 Macdonald seized the opportunity to offer Nova Scotia better terms and Howe a cabinet position. With the Nova Scotia situation resolved, Macdonald turned his attention to Prince Edward Island. The Islanders were more attracted to the idea of union after an expensive railway project nearly bankrupted the colony. Macdonald agreed to assume the colony's debts, offered a cash subsidy, and promised a steamer service to the mainland.

In 1873, Prince Edward Island agreed to the terms and became Canada's 7th province.

In the 1870s and 1880s railways were built to link the provinces of the new nation.

The Intercolonial Railway, joining central Canada to the Maritimes, was completed in 1876, but construction of a rail link to British Columbia ran into several delays. First, Macdonald's government was defeated in 1873 over charges of corruption associated with the railway project.

The new Prime Minister, Alexander Mackenzie, refused to fund railway projects because the country was the midst of a depression.

However, after Macdonald's re-election in 1878, railway building began in earnest. In February 1881 the Canadian Pacific Railway Company (CPR) was incorporated, and in November 1885 the last spike was driven at Craigellachie in British Columbia to complete the link to the Pacific. Even before it was fully completed, the CPR was used to carry troops to quell a rebellion in the spring of 1885.

Trouble had started several years earlier when settlers in the North-West Territory (modern Alberta and Saskatchewan) complained to the government about land title, shipping rates, and their lack of an elected government.

Among those who complained were the Metis, some of whom had moved farther west after the Red River troubles of 1870. When the federal government was slow to respond, the Metis, again under Louis Riel, rose up in March 1885 against the territorial council appointed by Ottawa.

By late April 5 Canadian soldiers, who had travelled by the new railway, were on the march against Riel and his Metis and Native followers. At the Battle of Batoche in May, the forces of General Middleton defeated the rebels. Riel was found guilty of treason by an English-speaking jury and executed. The Canadian parliament passed a bill introduced by the Conservative Cabinet that established a National Policy of tariffs to protect the nascent Canadian manufacturing industries.

To open the West, parliament also approved sponsoring the construction of three transcontinental railways (including the Canadian Pacific Railway), opening the prairies to settlement with the Dominion Lands Act, and establishing the North-West Mounted Police to assert its authority over this territory.

1869 Canada purchases Rupert's Land from the Hudson's Bay Company for £300,000.

1870 Louis Riel leads the Metis in resisting Canadian authority in Canada's northwest.

1870 The Metis negotiate with the Canadian government over the right to vote, land laws.

1870 The Manitoba Act creates the province of Manitoba.

1871 British Columbia joins Confederation upon the promise from Ottawa to build a transcontinental railway.

1872 Macdonald's Conservatives win federal re-election.

1873 Prince Edward Island joins Confederation. A period of economic depression begins.

1873 The North-West Mounted Police are formed.

1873 Alexander Mackenzie becomes Canada's second Prime Minister.

1874 Liberals win federal election.

1875 The Supreme Court of Canada is established.

1876 The Intercolonial Railway linking central Canada and the Maritimes is completed.

1876 The Indian Act of 1876 defines special status for aboriginal people living on land reserves.

1876 Status Indians have no vote in Canadian elections and are exempted from taxation.

1878 Conservatives under Macdonald win federal election.

1879 Macdonald introduces protective tariffs as part of his National Policy.

1881 The Canadian Pacific Railway is incorporated.

1885 The last spike of the transcontinental railway is driven at Craigellachie in Eagle Pass.

1887 Conservatives win federal election. Liberals choose Wilfrid Laurier as leader.

1889 The Dominion Women's Enfranchisement Association is created for female voting rights in Canada.

1891 Conservatives win federal election. Sir John A. Macdonald dies.

1891 Sir John Abbott takes office as Prime Minister.

1892 Sir John Thompson becomes Prime Minister. He establishes the Canadian Criminal Code.

1894 Sir Mackenzie Bowell is asked to form the fourth Conservative government since 1891.

AFTER CONFEDERATION ERA

Using the lure of the Canadian Pacific Railway, a transcontinental line that would unite the nation, Ottawa attracted support in the Maritimes and in British Columbia. In 1866, the Colony of British Columbia and the Colony of Vancouver Island merged into a single Colony of British Columbia; it joined the Canadian Confederation in 1871. In 1873, Prince Edward Island joined.

Newfoundland – which had no use for a transcontinental railway – voted no in 1869, and did not join Canada until 1949. In 1873 John A. Macdonald (First Prime Minister of Canada) created the North-West Mounted Police (now the Royal Canadian Mounted Police) to help police the Northwest Territories. Specifically the Mounties were to assert Canadian sovereignty over possible American encroachments into the sparsely populated land. The Mounties' first large-scale mission was to suppress the second independence movement by Manitoba's Métis, a mixed blood people of joint First Nations and European descent, who originated in the mid-17th century. The desire for independence erupted in the Red River Rebellion in 1869 and the later North-West Rebellion in 1885 led by Louis Riel. Suppressing the Rebellion was Canada's first independent military action. It cost about $5 mln. and demonstrated the need to complete the Canadian Pacific Railway. It guaranteed Anglophone control of the Prairies, and demonstrated the national government was capable of decisive action.

However, it lost the Conservative Party most of their support in Quebec and led to permanent distrust of the Anglophone community on the part of the Francophones.

In 1905 when Saskatchewan and Alberta were admitted as provinces, they were growing rapidly thanks to abundant wheat crops that attracted immigration to the plains by Ukrainians and Northern and Central Europeans and by settlers from the USA, Britain and eastern Canada.

The Alaska boundary dispute, simmering since the Alaska purchase of 1867, became critical when gold was discovered in the Yukon during the late 1890s, with the U.S. controlling all the possible ports of entry. Canada argued its boundary included the port of Skagway.

The dispute went to arbitration in 1903, but the British delegate sided with the Americans, angering Canadians who felt the British had betrayed Canadian interests to curry favour with the U.S.

In the 1890s, legal experts codified a framework of criminal law, culminating in the Criminal Code, 1892. This solidified the liberal ideal of "equality before the law" in a way that made an abstract principle into a tangible reality for every adult Canadian. Wilfrid Laurier who served 1896-1911 as the Seventh Prime Minister of Canada felt Canada was on the verge of becoming a world power, and declared that the 20th century would "belong to Canada".

In 1898, during the Klondike Gold Rush in the Northwest Territories, parliament created the Yukon Territory. The Cabinet of Liberal Prime Minister Wilfrid Laurier fostered continental European immigrants settling the prairies and Alberta andSaskatchewan became provinces in 1905.

Because Britain still maintained control of Canada's foreign affairs under the Confederation Act, its declaration of war in 1914 automatically broughtCanada into World War I. Volunteers sent to the Western Front later became part of the Canadian Corps, which played a substantial role in the Battle of Vimy Ridge and other major engagements of the war.

Out of approximately 625,000 Canadians who served in World War I, some 60,000 were killed and another 172,000 were wounded. The Conscription Crisis of 1917 erupted when the Unionist Cabinet's proposal to augment the military's dwindling number of active members with conscription was met with vehement objections from French-speaking Quebecers. The Military Service Act brought in compulsory military service, though, it, coupled with disputes over French language schools outside Quebec, deeply alienated Francophone Canadians and temporarily split the Liberal Party.

In 1919, Canada joined the League of Nationsindependently of Britain, and the 1931 Statute of Westminster affirmed Canada's independence.

Exercise 1. Digest the score of the information briefly in English.

THE LAURIER ERA (1896-1911)

Conservative Prime Minister John A Macdonald died in 1891, soon after winning a federal election. The Conservatives could not find a suitable successor and by 1896 there had been four Prime Ministers – John Abbott, John Thompson, Mackenzie Bowell and Charles Tupper.

During this period, the Conservatives had to deal with a crisis over school legislation introduced in Manitoba. The Manitoba legislature had replaced the dual school system (both Protestant and Catholic schools), which had been guaranteed in the terms of union, with a single Protestant system.

Francophone Catholics across Canada were already bitter about Louis Riel's execution. Now the Manitoba schools legislation convinced them that English Protestant Canadians wanted to stamp out French Catholic rights Extremists on both sides inflamed the issue, and the Conservatives' inability to settle the matter hurt them in the election of 1896. The Liberals, under Wilfrid Laurier, formed a government. Laurier settled the Manitoba school question by adopting a compromise approach.

Religious instruction would be allowed within the single system, and instruction in French could take place where numbers warranted. The issue died down, but Laurier remained sensitive to the tensions between Anglophone Protestants and Francophone Catholics.

Many English Canadians were swept up in a great wave of pro-imperial sentiment associated with the Diamond Jubilee of Queen Victoria. In Britain the event was seen as an opportunity to strengthen ties within the British Empire. Laurier acknowledged Canada's support for the Empire, but resisted proposals for a closer relationship with Britain and the other colonies. The Prime Minister did not wish to yield Canadian autonomy, nor did he wish to lose support in French Canada.

The issue of Canada's role in the Empire came to a head in 1899 during the Boer War (the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State fought against Britain). Once again steering a middle course, Laurier agreed to equip and transport Canadian volunteers to South Africa, but sent no official troops. Although this compromise did not satisfy all Canadians, it avoided a bitter dispute. For a time, imperial issues were forgotten, as Canadians enjoyed boom times after the turn of the century.

Laurier summed up the nation's mood when he declared that the "20th century is Canada's century" Impressive growth in both industrial and agricultural production provided support for his words. Canada's prospects appealed to immigrants who flocked to the industrial cities and to the farmland of the Prairies. Many of them were attracted by an extensive government advertising campaign and by the lure of free land in the west As a result of this influx, two new provinces, Alberta and Saskatchewan, were created in 1905. The immigrant tide boosted population from 5 371 315 in 1901 to 7 206 643 in 1911. The mood of the country was so confident that two new transcontinental railway building projects got under way in the early years of the century.

The international scene was not so bright. In 1903, the British sided with the Americans in the Alaska Boundary Dispute, a disagreement over the international boundary near the Klondike gold fields Canadians were dismayed, but Britain was less concerned about the Canadian claim than for the need to maintain good relations with the USA.

Tension in Europe was increasing and Britain found itself outside of the complicated system of allegiances which had developed there. The same concern led both the British government and the Canadian pro-imperialists to pressure Laurier into providing money to build British warships.

Again, Laurier staked out a middle position by introducing a Naval Service Act, which created a Canadian navy that could help Britain where the need arose.

Laurier's compromise on naval policy satisfied neither side Some French Canadians supported the views of Quebec nationalist Henn Bourassa who claimed Laurier had betrayed his people.

Anglophone pro-timpanists complained that Laurier's "tin pot navy" was not enough. Canada's naval policy became an issue in the 1911 election; as did the Liberal plan for free trade with the USA.

Conservative leader Robert Borden was able to use both to characterize Laurier as not only disloyal to Britain but favouring annexation to the USA.

The Conservatives won the election. Borden became Prime Minister and Laurier stayed on as leader of the Opposition, continuing to advocate conciliatory policies when the interests of French and English Canadians clashed. Laurier signed a reciprocity treaty with the U.S. that would lower tariffs in both directions. Conservatives under Robert Borden denounced it, saying it would integrate Canada's economy into that of the U.S. and loosen ties with Britain.

The Conservative party won the Canadian federal election, 1911.

1896 The economic depression ends. Bowell resigns, calling his cabinet a "nest of traitors".

1896 Sir Charles Tupper leads an internal government until the Liberals under Laurier win federal election.

1896 Clifford Sifton develops an immigration plan that will bring fanners from Europe to settle.

1896 Gold is discovered in the Klondike.

1897 Gold Rush begins in the Klondike.

1897 Clara Brett Martin is the first woman admitted to the bar of Ontario.

1898 Yukon becomes a separate entity from the Northwest.

1898 Kit Coleman, the first female Canadian war correspondent, covers the Spanish-American War.

1899 The first Canadian troops ever sent overseas are dispatched to the Boer War.

1901 Marconi receives the first transatlantic radio message at St. John's, Newfoundland.

1903 Canada loses the Alaska Boundary.

1904 Liberals win Federal election.

1905 The provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan are formed.

1907 The National Council of Women calls for "equal pay for equal work".

1908 Liberals win Federal election.

1909 The Department of External Affairs is formed.

1910 Laurier creates a Canadian navy via the Naval Service Bill.

1911 Robert Borden and the Conservatives win federal election, defeating Laurier.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and give it on the chart.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	When	Where	Score
1.				
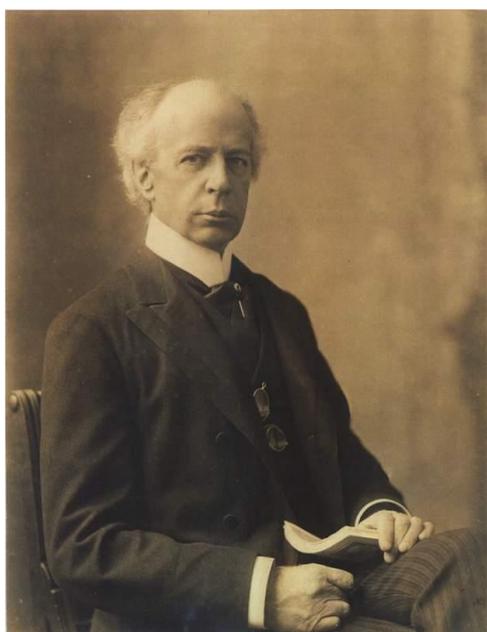
UNIT II. CANADA IN MODERN CENTURY

CANADA & THE FIRST WORLD WAR (1914-1918)

In August 1914, Britain declared war on Germany and Austro-Hungary.

The declaration automatically applied to Canada, as part of the British Empire. At first, there was an enthusiastic response, especially among recent British immigrants. When the minister of militia, Sam Hughes, called for 25 000 volunteers, nearly 33 000 appeared. In 1915, when the government asked the Canadian public to buy $50 million in war bonds, they bought $100 million.

But enthusiasm for war began to fade as the casualties mounted and the realities of trench warfare became known. Canadian troops sailed for Europe in October 1914 and, after training in Britain, went into action at Pyres, Belgium in April 1915. There they gained a reputation for courage, holding their positions in the face of a poison gas attack, a new weapon at the time.

Canadians took part in the costly battles at St. Eliot and Mont Sonel in 1916.

By the Battle of the Somme, in late summer of 1916, Canada had four army divisions in France; in the spring of 1917, all four were deployed in the attack on Vimy Ridge, which resulted in the first real Canadian victory of the war. But by now it was clear that every battle would result in tremble losses At Passchendaele in October 1917, the Canadians sustained more than 15 000 casualties.

Voluntary recruitment could not keep pace with the high casualty rates. Prime Minister Borden was forced to consider conscription to draft soldiers into the army and took the question to the electorate in 1917, unleashing one of the most bitterly fought campaigns in Canadian history.

In Quebec, Henn Bourassa rallied anti-conscription supporters and argued that Canada had done enough. In Ontario, Borden's supporters condemned French-Canadian anti-conscriptionists as traitors. For his part Borden introduced the Wartime Elections Act to help secure victory.

This act removed the right to vote from enemy aliens, even though some were Canadian citizens It gave the right to vote to women relatives of soldiers. In the election Borden won in every province except Quebec where he was soundly rejected. Conscription had created a deep division between Quebec and the rest of Canada and once in practice, it had little impact on the course of the war. When the first 400 000 conscripts were called up, 90% of them appealed for exemption, and by the war's end only about 24 000 conscripts had reached the front.

While the conscription crisis raged at home, Canadian soldiers played a major role in the events leading to an Allied victory. They took part in the successful battle at Amiens in August 1918 and helped to roll the Germans back to Moons by November. The Canadians were still fighting at Moons when the armistice was signed November 11, 1918. Canadians also served with distinction in other theatres of war. By 1918, Canadians made up almost 25% of the pilots in Britain's Royal Haying Corps. Other Canadians served in the Royal Navy or on coastal patrol in Canada's own small navy.

Some served in forestry corps overseas and others operated the railways behind the British lines. Some, including women, served as ambulance drivers at the front. Many Canadian women also played key roles as nurses overseas, and in the munitions factories in Canada.

Canada's war effort won the country a place in the Imperial War Cabinet during the war and a seat in the League of Nations afterwards. There were other benefits, too. Women's contributions to the war effort helped them win the right to vote in federal elections and in provincial elections in seven of the provinces by 1919 yet these advances came at a tremble cost.

Overseas, 68 300 Canadians had died. At home, bitterness over the conscription issue had created a division between French and English Canadians that would be remembered for decades.

The Canadian Forces and civilian participation in the First World War helped to foster a sense of British-Canadian nationhood. The highpoints of Canadian military achievement during the First World War came during the Somme, Vimy, Passchendaele battles and what later became known as "Canada's Hundred Days". The reputation Canadian troops earned, along with the success of Canadian flying aces including William George Barker and Billy Bishop, helped to give the nation a new sense of identity. The War Office in 1922 reported approximately 67,000 killed and 173,000 wounded during the war. This excludes civilian deaths in war-time incidents like the Halifax Explosion.

Support for Great Britain during the First World War caused a major political crisis over conscription, with Francophones, mainly from Quebec, rejecting national policies. During the crisis, large numbers of enemy aliens (especially Ukrainians and Germans) were put under government controls.

The Liberal party was deeply split, with most of its Anglophone leaders joining the unionist government headed by Prime Minister Robert Borden, the leader of the Conservative party.

The Liberals regained their influence after the war under the leadership of William Lyon Mackenzie King, who served as prime minister with three separate terms between 1921 and 1949.

On September 20, 1917, women gained a limited right to vote. The nursing sisters at the Canadian hospital in France during World War I were among the first women to vote in any general election. Women's political status without the vote was vigorously promoted by the National Council of Women of Canada from 1894 to 1918. It promoted a vision of "transcendent citizenship" for women.

The ballot was not needed, for citizenship was to be exercised through personal influence and moral suasion, through the election of men with strong moral character, and through raising public-spirited sons. The National Council position reflected its nation-building program that sought to uphold Canada as a White settler nation. While the woman suffrage movement was important for extending the political rights of White women, it was also authorized through race-based arguments that linked White women's enfranchisement to the need to protect the nation from "racial degeneration".

Women did have a local vote in some provinces, as in Canada West from 1850, where women owning land could vote for school trustees. By 1900 other provinces adopted similar provisions, and in 1916 Manitoba took the lead in extending full woman's suffrage.[154] Simultaneously suffragists gave strong support to the prohibition movement, especially in Ontario and the Western provinces.

The Military Voters Act of 1917 gave the vote to British women who were war widows or had sons or husbands serving overseas. Unionists Prime Minister Borden pledged himself during the 1917 campaign to equal suffrage for women. After his landslide victory, he introduced a bill in 1918 for extending the franchise to women. This passed without division, but did not apply to Quebec provincial and municipal elections. The women of Quebec gained full suffrage in 1940. The first woman elected to Parliament was Agnes Macphail of Ontario in 1921.

1914 Canada is automatically at war with Germany when Britain declares war.
1914 The first Canadian troops leave for England.
1914 European immigration to Canada increases. Total immigration – 3 mln. since 1891.
1915 Canadians face German gas attack at Pyres, Belgium. John McCrae writes "In Flanders Fields".
1916 The Parliament buildings are destroyed by fire.
1916 Canadian troops fight in the Battle of the Sonune.24,713 Canadians are killed.
1917 Income tax is introduced as a "temporary wartime measure".
1917 Prime Minister Sir Robert Borden sits as a member of the Imperial War Cabinet.
1917 The Military Service Bill is introduced, the Conscription Crisis between Quebec and English Canada.
1917 Unionist government under Borden wins federal election, in which women vote for the first time.
1918 Canadians break through German trenches at Amiens "the black day of the German army".
1918 The period from this date until the end of the war becomes known as "Canada's Hundred Days".

Exercise 1. Generate all events which brought the First World War.

CANADA IN THE 1920s

As the soldiers returned home, many expected to find a Canada ready to reward them for their sacrifices. What they found was a nation in the midst of painful post-war readjustment. Industry had to convert to peacetime production, but interest rates were so high; investment capital was scarce. Jobs were hard to find and wages were low, and tariffs on imported goods kept prices high.

By 1921, 300 000 men and women – more than 15% of the work force – were unemployed.

Farmers, especially on the Prairies, also suffered. During the war, the west had become the world's breadbasket; wheat prices had soared and many farmers had borrowed heavily to expand their production. But with the war's end, world markets collapsed; wheat prices tell by almost half within two years. These conditions, along with resentment over wartime profiteering by big business, created unrest.

The One Big Union movement, centered in western Canada, attempted to create a single union to represent all workers. The Winnipeg General Strike of 1919 grew out of the organizers' efforts and the general discontent. Although the Winnipeg workers were striking over such issues as the right to collective bargaining, better wages and improved working conditions; the opponents of the general strike characterized it as a communist conspiracy by raising the spectre of a revolution similar to the one in Russia two years earlier. The federal government sided with the anti-strike forces Immigration laws were amended to deport "alien" labour radicals; the strike leaders were arrested and the Royal North West Mounted Police fired into a noting crowd on June 21, 1919 – "Bloody Sunday" – killing 1 and wounding 30. The six-week strike was over and so was the growth of labour unions.

In 1919 alone there were more than 400 strikes, but after the Winnipeg General Strike, the federal government and most governments at the provincial level opposed union activities.

Throughout the 1920s there was a decline in union membership. The reasons for unrest and discontent varied from region to region in the 1920s. The government takeover of five financially troubled railways had led to the creation of the Canadian National Railways in 1919 and railway rates in the Maritimes were raised 40% to bring them up to central Canadian levels. Angry over the rail rates and feeling that Ottawa was making decisions on the basis of central Canada's interests, many Maritimers protested by forming the Maritimes Rights movement, aimed at winning transportation concessions and federal subsidies. At the same time it promoted regional rights and pride

Canadian farmers, resentful over low prices for farm products, high rail rates and high prices for manufactured goods, formed the United Farmers' movement. United Farmers' parties won provincial elections in Ontario in 1919, Alberta in 1921, and Manitoba in 1922. At the federal level, the Progressive Party embraced some of the program of the United Farmers' movement.

The Progressives called for free trade, nationalization (especially in the case of railways) and more direct democracy (referendum to decide a controversial issue). Although they were a new party; the Progressives were to play an important role in politics in the 1920s.

The election of 1921 marked new directions in Canadian politics. Both major parties had new leaders. Arthur Meighen had replaced Borden as Prime Minister William Lyon Mackenzie King had taken over as Liberal leader after Laurier's death. Of even greater significance was that for the first time, Canadians could vote for one of three parties at the federal level: the Liberals, the Conservatives or the Progressives. The Liberals won the 1921 election, but the Progressives finished second and formed the opposition. Their position in the House of Commons was even more important after the 1925 election in which the Conservatives under Meighen won the most seats, but King remained in power by claiming the support of the Progressives.

After 1925 the Progressives declined, and many of their supporters voted Liberal in King's 1926 election victory. But the influence of the Progressive movement was felt as King's government, anxious to keep their support, passed Canada's first Old Age Pension Act in 1927.

In foreign affairs, King made sure that Canada played a cautious role in the League Nations, because he feared that Canada would be drawn into international disputes.

In imperial matters his insistence on autonomy contributed to a redefinition of the empire at the Imperial Conference of 1926. There it was acknowledged that Canada and the other British dominions were autonomous even in their external affairs. As a result, by 1929, Canada had diplomatic posts in Washington, Paris and Tokyo and Britain had a high commissioner in Ottawa. The Governor General became a symbolic representative of the Crown rather than a representative of the British government.

At home, there were many signs that good times had finally come to Canada World markets for Canadian manufactured goods had revived, and wheat prices were soaring to new levels. New mining and lumbering areas were developed. By 1928, more than a billion dollars' worth of products was being extracted from the newly developed primary industries of the Canadian Shield.

Immigrants poured into Canada by the hundreds of thousands to provide labour in the growing industrial cities. Cars, radios, telephones, electrical appliances and other consumer goods were being bought, especially by middle-class Canadians, often using credit plans. Credit was also used to buy shares on the stock market, as the country became increasingly optimistic about its future.

On both sides of the Canadian-American border, the Roaring Twenties were in full swing and there seemed no end in sight to the good times.

1919 A general strike paralyses Winnipeg, where an armed charge kills 1 and injures 30.

1920 Canada joins the League of Nations at its inception.

1920 The flow of emigrants from the British Isles and Europe resumes, many going to urban centres.

1920 Federal legislation makes women eligible to sit in the House of Commons.

1920 The Northwest Mounted Police became the Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP).

1921 Liberals under Mackenzie King defeat Conservatives under Arthur Meighen in federal election.

1921 Agnes Macphail becomes the first woman elected to Parliament.

1921 Post-war economic depression puts more than 15% of the work force out of work.

1922 Canada declines to rally to Britain's side during the Chanak Crisis.

1923 The Canadian Northern and Transcontinental are merged to form the Canadian National Railways.

1923 Canada signs the Halibut Treaty with the US without a corroborating British signature.

1923 M. King leads opposition to a common imperial policy at an Imperial Conference in London.

1924 The Saskatchewan Wheat Pool begins operations.

1925 Mackenzie King's Liberals remain in power with the support of the Progressives.

1926 King's Liberals win federal election.

1926 An Imperial Conference defines British dominions as autonomous (Balfour Report)

1927 Britain's Privy Council awards Labrador to Newfoundland instead of to Quebec.

1927 The Diamond Jubilee of Confederation is marked by Canada's radio network broadcast.

1927 King's government passes Canada's first Old Age Pension Act.

1928 The Supreme Court of Canada rules that women are not "persons" who could hold public office.

1929 This decision is reversed by British Privy Council.

Exercise 1. Analyze the Canadian politics in the 1920s.

INTERWAR ON THE WORLD STAGE

As a result of its contribution to Allied victory in the First World War, Canada became more assertive and less deferential to British authority. Convinced that Canada had proven itself on the battlefields of Europe, Prime Minister Sir Robert Borden demanded that it have a separate seat at the Paris Peace Conference in 1919. This was initially opposed not only by Britain but also by the USA, which saw such a delegation as an extra British vote.

Borden responded by pointing out that since Canada had lost nearly 60,000 men, a far larger proportion of its men, its right to equal status as a nation had been consecrated on the battlefield.

British Prime Minister David Lloyd George eventually relented, and convinced the reluctant Americans to accept the presence of delegations from Canada, India, Australia, Newfoundland, New Zealand, and South Africa. These also received their own seats in the League of Nations.

Canada asked for neither reparations nor mandates. It played only a modest role at Paris, but just having a seat was a matter of pride. It was cautiously optimistic about the new League of Nations, in which it played an active and independent role. In 1923 British Prime Minister, David Lloyd George, appealed repeatedly for Canadian support in the Chanak crisis, in which a war threatened between Britain and Turkey. Canada refused. The Department of External Affairs, which had been founded in 1909, was expanded and promoted Canadian autonomy as Canada reduced its reliance on British diplomats and used its own foreign service. Thus began the careers of such important diplomats as Norman Robertson and Hume Wrong, and future prime minister Lester Pearson.

In 1931 the British Parliament passed the Statute of Westminster which gave each dominion the opportunity for almost complete legislative independence from London. While Newfoundland never adopted the statute, for Canada the Statute of Westminster became its declaration of independence.

DOMESTIC AFFAIRS

In 1921 to 1926, William Lyon Mackenzie King's Liberal government pursued a conservative domestic policy with the object of lowering wartime taxes and, especially, cooling wartime ethnic tensions, as well as defusing postwar labour conflicts. The Progressives refused to join the government, but did help the Liberals defeat non-confidence motions. King faced a delicate balancing act of reducing tariffs enough to please the Prairie-based Progressives, but not too much to alienate his vital support in industrial Ontario and Quebec, which needed tariffs to compete with American imports.

King and Conservative leader Arthur Meighen sparred constantly and bitterly in Commons debates. The Progressives gradually weakened. Their passionate leader, Thomas Crerar, resigned to return to his grain business, and was replaced by the more placid Robert Forke.

The socialist reformer J.S. Woodsworthgradually gained influence and power among the Progressives, and he reached an accommodation with King on policy matters. In 1926 Prime Minister Mackenzie King advised the Governor General, Lord Byng, to dissolve Parliament and call another election, but Byng refused, the only time that the Governor General has exercised such a power.

Instead Byng called upon Meighen, the Conservative Party leader, to form a government.

Meighen attempted to do so, but was unable to obtain a majority in the Commons and he, too, advised dissolution, which this time was accepted. The episode, the King-Byng Affair, marks a constitutional crisis that was resolved by a new tradition of complete non-interference in Canadian political affairs on the part of the British government.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	Events	When	Where	Score
1.				

THE GREAT DEPRESSION (1929-1939)

In 1929, Canadians looked with confidence toward the next decade and that confidence made the effects of the Great Depression of the 1930s even bitterer. The Depression was worldwide, but the effects were especially felt in Canada because about a third of the nation's gross national product was based on exports. The first signs of Canadian economic collapse appeared in October 1929 when wheat prices began to fall. In the same month the stock market collapsed, ruining thousands of shareholders, some of whom, on paper at least, had been millionaires.

Canada was hard hit by the worldwide Great Depression that began in 1929. Between 1929 and 1933, the gross national product dropped 40% (compared to 37% in the US).

Unemployment reached 27% at the depth of the Depression in 1933. Many businesses closed, as corporate profits of $396 million in 1929 turned into losses of $98 million in 1933. Canadian exports shrank by 50% from 1929 to 1933. Construction all but stopped (down 82%, 1929-33), and wholesale prices dropped 30%. Wheat prices plunged from 78c per bushel (1928 crop) to 29c in 1932.

Urban unemployment nationwide was 19%; Toronto's rate was 17%, according to the census of 1931. Farmers who stayed on their farms were not considered unemployed.

By 1930, the number of unemployed had doubled and the Conservatives, under R B. Bennett, won the 1930 federal election decisively as voters hoped a change in government would bring a change in fortune. By 1933, one in five Canadians was unemployed; 30% of the labour force was out of work, and one fifth of the population became dependent on government assistance. Wages fell as did prices. Worst hit were areas dependent on primary industries such as farming, mining and logging, as prices fell and there were few alternative jobs. Most families had moderate losses and little hardship, though they too became pessimistic and their debts become heavier as prices fell.

Some families saw most or all of their assets disappear, and suffered severely. Western Canada was hardest hit in "The Dirty Thirties" because of its reliance on wheat.

The Prairie Provinces also suffered from a drought, which lead to crop failure during these hard times. The combined results were devastating. In Saskatchewan, provincial income fell by 90% and two-thirds of the province's population had to go on welfare.

In 1930, in the first stage of the long depression, Prime Minister Mackenzie King believed that the crisis was a temporary swing of the business cycle and that the economy would soon recover without government intervention. He refused to provide unemployment relief or federal aid to the provinces, saying that if Conservative provincial governments demanded federal dollars, he would not give them "a five cent piece." His blunt wisecrack was used to defeat the Liberals in the 1930 election.

The main issue was the rapid deterioration in the economy and whether the prime minister was out of touch with the hardships of ordinary people. The winner of the 1930 election was Richard Bedford Bennett and the Conservatives. Bennett had promised high tariffs and large-scale spending, but as deficits increased, he became wary and cut back severely on Federal spending.

With falling support and the depression getting only worse, Bennett attempted to introduce policies based on the New Deal of President Franklin D. Roosevelt (FDR) in the USA, but he got little passed. Bennett's government became a focus of popular discontent. For example, auto owners saved on gasoline by using horses to pull their cars, dubbing them Bennett Buggies.

In the 1930s, welfare, or "relief" as it was then known, became a burden for municipal and provincial governments across the country. By 1935, 10% of Canadians were on relief.

Bennett's government did not intervene to rebuild the economy In the 1930s; politicians, economists and business leaders assumed that the Depression, like other downswings in the business cycle, would soon be followed by a recovery. Their experience, and most economic theory at the time, did not encourage them to consider major government spending as a way to stimulate a depressed economy. One of the few federally financed programs created involved sending single unemployed men to camps where they did manual work in return for their keep and a small allowance.

Working in isolated conditions, often at meaningless tasks, did nothing to satisfy the men and those in the British Columbia camps took action. In 1935 about 1500 camp inmates decided to present their complaints directly to Bennett in Ottawa. They began the "On to Ottawa" trek by taking over freight trains heading east. By the time they reached Regma, there were about 2 000 protesters and the railway refused to provide further transportation.

Representatives of the Trekkers met with Prime Minister Bennett in Ottawa, but the talks were inconclusive. When the delegation returned to Regma, Bennett decided to arrest the protest leaders.

On July 1, there was a bloody not in Regma involving the Trekkers, local police and the RCMP, which left one policeman dead and several dozen rioters, constables and local citizens injured.

The Trek was over and the protesters returned home over the next few days; but Bennett's handling of the affair hurt his image. In the election of 1935, the people turned to King again, in the hope that this time he could deal with the Depression. The Conservative failure to restore prosperity led to the return of Mackenzie King's Liberals in the 1935 election.

In 1935, the Liberals used the slogan "King or Chaos" to win a landslide in the 1935 election. Promising a much-desired trade treaty with the U.S., the Mackenzie King government passed the 1935 Reciprocal Trade Agreement. It marked the turning point in Canadian-American economic relations, reversing the disastrous trade war of 1930-31, lowering tariffs, and yielding a dramatic increase in trade. The worst of the Depression had passed by 1935, as Ottawa launched relief programs such as the National Housing Act and National Employment Commission.

The Canadian Broadcasting Corporation became a crown corporation in 1936. Trans-Canada Airlines (the precursor to Air Canada) was formed in 1937, as was the National Film Board of Canada in 1939. In 1938, Parliament transformed the Bank of Canada from a private entity to a crown corporation.

One political response was a highly restrictive immigration policy and a rise in nativism.

Times were especially hard in western Canada, where a full recovery did not occur until the Second World War began in 1939. One response was the creation of new political parties such as the Social Credit movement and the Cooperative Commonwealth Federation, as well as popular protest in the form of the On-to-Ottawa Trek. After 1935, economic conditions began to improve slowly, yet federal politicians did little to speed this recovery. The failure of the Liberals and the Conservatives to deal with the Depression led to the rise of reform parties. A socialist party, the Co-operative Commonwealth Federation (CCF) won seven seats in the 1935 election and elected members to several provincial legislatures. Other new parties appeared at the provincial level.

In Alberta, the Social Credit Party promised $25 prosperity certificates to each resident; but the plan fell flat because the province did not have the power to issue currency.

In Quebec, Maurice Duplessis established the Union National and promised economic reform. But the Union National, like the other parties, could not end the Depression, the effects of which faded only with the outbreak of World War II in 1939.
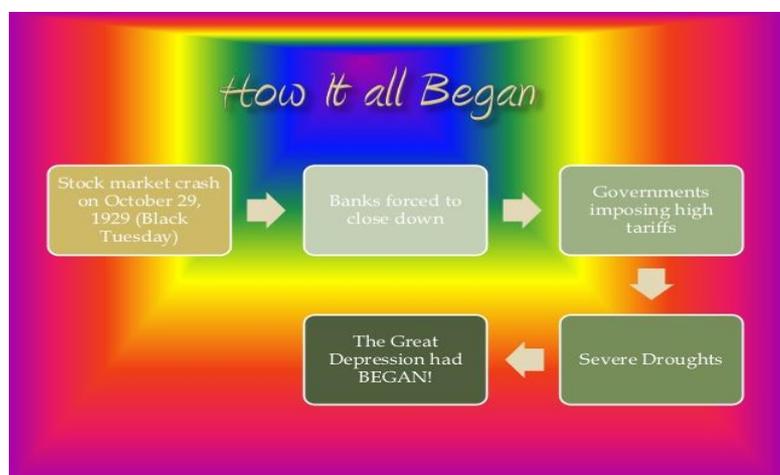
1929 The Great Depression begins.

1930 Cairine Wilson is appointed Canada's first woman senator.

1930 The Canadian Federation of Business and Professional Women's Clubs is organized.

1930 Conservatives under R.B. Bennett win federal election.

1931 The Statute of Westminster grants Canada full legislative authority domestically, in external affairs.

1931 The Governor General becomes a representative of the Crown.

1932 Ottawa Agreements provide for trade between Canada and other Commonwealth nations.

1932 The Co-operative Commonwealth Federation (CCF) is founded at Calgary.

1933 One in five Canadians is unemployed.

1934 The Bank of Canada is formed. The Dionne quintuplets are born in Callander.

1935 10 % of Canadians rely on welfare or "relief".

1935 Liberals under Mackenzie King win federal election.

1935 The Canadian Wheat Board is created.

1936 Union National under Maurice Danplessis wins its first election in Quebec.

1937 The Commission is appointed to investigate the financial relationship between the provinces.

1937 First regular flight of Trails Canada Air Lines.

1938 Franklin D. Roosevelt becomes first US President in office to visit Canada.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Political leaders gather for a portrait atop the Citadel of Quebec during the second Quebec Conference in Quebec, Canada, on August 19, 1943.

CANADA IN WORLD WAR II (1939-1945)

While most Canadians focused attention on the effects of the Depression at home, events in Europe during the 1930s were moving the world closer to another global conflict. After taking over Austria and Czechoslovakia, Germany invaded Poland in 1939; Britain and France responded by declaring war. Following Britain's action, King quickly summoned Parliament. The Great Depression in Canada during the early 1930s saw an economic downturn, leading to hardship across the country.

In response to the downturn, the Co-operative Commonwealth Federation (CCF) in Saskatchewan introduced many elements of a welfare state in the 1940s and 1950s. On the advice of Prime Minister William Lyon Mackenzie King, war with Germany was declared effective 10 September 1939 by King George VI, seven days after the United Kingdom. The delay underscored Canada's independence.

The first Canadian Army units arrived in Britain in December 1939.

In all, over a million Canadians served in the armed forces during World War II and approximately 42,000 were killed and another 55,000 were wounded.

Parliamentary support for the war declaration was based in part on King's known preference for a limited Canadian role and his assurance that there would be no conscription. Initially, only one Canadian division was sent to Britain. The war restored Canada's economic health and its self-confidence, as it played a major role in the Atlantic and in Europe. During the war, Canada became more closely linked to the U.S. The Americans took virtual control of Yukon in order to build theAlaska Highway, and were a major presence in the British colony of Newfoundland with major airbases.

Mackenzie King and Canada were largely ignored by Winston Churchill and the British government despite Canada's major role in supplying food, raw materials, munitions and money to the hard-pressed British economy, training airmen for the Commonwealth, guarding the western half of the North Atlantic Ocean against German U-boats, and providing combat troops for the invasions of Italy, France and Germany in 1943-45. The government successfully mobilized the economy for war, with impressive results in industrial and agricultural output. The depression ended, prosperity returned, and Canada's economy expanded significantly.

On the political side, Mackenzie King rejected any notion of a government of national unity.

The Canadian federal election, 1940 was held as normally scheduled, producing another majority for the Liberals. Building up the Royal Canadian Air Force was a high priority; it was kept separate from Britain's Royal Air Force. The British Commonwealth Air Training Plan Agreement, signed in December 1939, bound Canada, Britain, New Zealand, and Australia to a program that eventually trained half the airmen from those four nations in the Second World War.

After the start of war with Japan in December 1941, the government, in cooperation with the U.S., began the Japanese-Canadian internment, which sent 22,000 British Columbia residents of Japanese descent to relocation camps far from the coast. The reason was intense public demand for removal and fears of espionage or sabotage. The government ignored reports from the RCMP and Canadian military that most of the Japanese were law-abiding and not a threat.

But by 1940, France had fallen and Britain faced invasion. King abandoned the concept of limited participation and decided to dispatch more troops. By late 1942, Canada had five divisions overseas. Canadian soldiers first saw action in December 1941 during the unsuccessful defence of Hong Kong. In August 1942, 5 000 Canadians took part in the disastrous raid on the French port of Dieppe, suffering casualties of 2 200 killed or captured.

Canadian troops played important roles in many key battles of the war, including the failed 1942 Dieppe Raid, the Allied invasion of Italy, the Normandy landings, the Battle of Normandy, and the Battle of the Scheldt in 1944. Canada provided asylum for the Dutch monarchy while that country was occupied and is credited by the Netherlands for major contributions to its liberation from Nazi Germany. In 1945, a first task of the United National Relief and Rehabilitation Administration (UNRRA) was the repatriation of an estimated 60 million people displaces by the Second World War.

While UNRRA helped 98% return home, more than one million refugees remained who could not or would not return to live under the communist regimes of Eastern Europe. Western Europe could not absorb the people. A new international agency, the International Refugee Organization (IRO), was established in 1945 under the auspices of the United Nations.

In November 1946, Prime Minister Mackenzie King announced the approval of emergency measures to bring some of the refugees and displaced persons in camps from Europe.

A Canadian immigration officer went to Germany in January 1947 to make preliminary arrangements and by March 1947 two inspection teams were in place. Canada resettled nearly 170,000 refugees from 1947 to 1952. Over the years since 1979, refugees have been accepted after being designated political prisoners or oppressed persons, coming from Poland (after the repression of the Solidarity labour movement in the 1980s), as well as Argentina, Chile, Uruguay, El Salvador and Guatemala.

The resettlement of Convention refugees, as designated by the Geneva Convention has also continued. From 1979 to 1994, refugees from Ethiopia, El Salvador, Iraq, Iran, former Yugoslavia and Afghanistan accounted for 75% of this group.

Other programmes have assisted various groups including Women at Risk, and Iranians of the Baha'i faith. Special measures have been instituted to help groups such as Italian earthquake victims, Haitians in Canada, citizens of former Yugoslavia, Vietnamese families seeking reunification.

After the Tiananmen Square massacre in June of 1989 Chinese nationals were informed of the options available to them under existing provisions, including seeking permanent resident status under humanitarian guidelines. The Canadian economy boomed during the war as its industries manufactured military materiel for Canada, Britain, China, and theSoviet Union. Despite another Conscription Crisis in Quebec in 1944, Canada finished the war with a large army and strong economy.

Despite these setbacks, the Canadian army played a major role in defeating enemy forces in Italy and took part in the Allied landings at Normandy in June of 1944. After taking key targets in France, Canadian soldiers moved northward to liberate Holland in 1945.

Canadians contributed to the war effort in other important ways. The Royal Canadian Navy grew from six destroyers and less than 2 000 personnel in 1939 to 471 warships, 99 688 men and 6 500 women by the war's end in 1945. The navy helped win the Battle of the Atlantic against German submarines by providing protection to the convoys of merchant ships carrying essential supplies from North America to Britain. (Despite the protection German U-boats sank 5 150 merchant ships.).

Canadians also fought in the air as members of Britain's Royal Air Force, and, in increasing numbers throughout the war, in the Royal Canadian Air Force (RCAF).

By 1945, there were 48 RCAP squadrons overseas. Other members of the RCAP were involved in the British Commonwealth Air Training Plan operating from Canadian airfields trained 131 000 aircrew from around the Commonwealth. Canada also produced a wide variety of munitions, and provided important food supplies to the Allied war effort. Much of Canada's war production went directly to Britain, so did more than $3 billion in financial assistance.

While the contributions of Canadian men and women to the war effort were significant, the conflict raised disturbing issues at home. In reversing his earlier stand against conscription, Prime Minister King called for a national plebiscite on the issue in 1942.

In all provinces except Quebec the electorate voted for conscription; relations between Quebec and the rest of Canada were strained, although not as severely as in World War I. In a move that would later become controversial, Japanese Canadians were interned and their property was confiscated in the name of national security after the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbour in 1941.

The interned included Japanese Canadians who had fought for Canada in World War I and more than 40 years later the Canadian government would officially apologize to the interned and their families. By the war's end, more than a million Canadians had served in the armed forces and more than 42 000 had died.

Canada's war effort enhanced its international image. At the same time, Canada had developed closer ties with the USA as the country's interests shifted away from Britain and Europe. A national plebiscite releases Mackenzie King from his pledge of no conscription but reveals deep divisions between Quebec and the rest of Canada. Canadians of British ancestry now make up 49.7% of the population, of French descent 30.3% and of other ethnic backgrounds 20%.

William Mackenzie King was voting in the plebiscite on the introduction of conscription for overseas military service. The Battle of the Atlantic began immediately, and from 1943 to 1945 was led by Leonard W. Murray, from Nova Scotia. German U-boats operated in Canadian and Newfoundland waters throughout the war, sinking many naval and merchant vessels, as Canada took charge of the defenses of the western Atlantic. The Canadian army was involved in the failed defence of Hong Kong, the unsuccessful Dieppe Raid in August 1942, the Allied invasion of Italy, and the highly successful invasion of France and the Netherlands in 1944-45.

The Conscription Crisis of 1944 greatly affected unity between French and English-speaking Canadians, though was not as politically intrusive as that of the First World War. Of a population of approximately 11.5 mln., 1.1 mln. Canadians served in the armed forces in the Second World War.

Many thousands more served with the Canadian Merchant Navy. In all, more than 45,000 died, and another 55,000 were wounded.

1939 Canada declares war on Germany after remaining neutral for following the British declaration.

1939 Quebec Premier Maurice Duplessis opposed Quebec participation in the war.

1940 Unemployment insurance is introduced. Liberals win federal election.

1940 The Permanent Joint Board of Defence is formed between Canada and the US.

1941 Canadians are captured when Hong Kong falls to Japanese.

1941 Immigration has changed Canadian demographic structure.

1943 Ernest C. Manning wins first of nine successive elections for the Social Credit in Alberta.

1944 Canadian troops push further inland. Canadian forces fight as a separate army.

1944 Saskatchewan elects Tommy Douglas's CCF, the first socialist government in North America.

1944 Maurice Duplessis regains office for the Union National in Quebec.

1945 War in Europe ends. One million Canadians fought in WW II; 42,042 were killed.

1945 Canadians killed while fighting for other Allied forces numbered 4,500.

1945 Liberals win federal election. First family allowance payments are made.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	Events	When	Where	Score
1.				
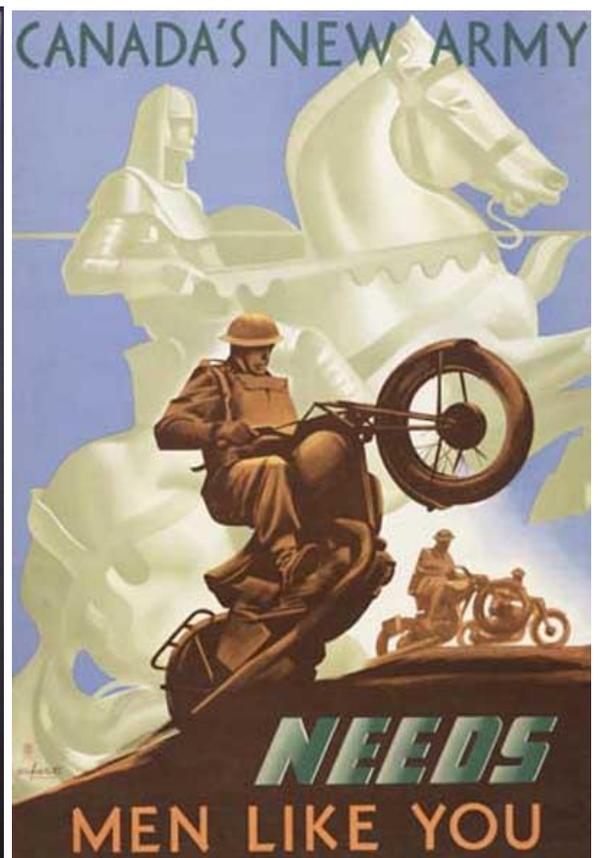
POST-WAR CANADA: 1945-1968

Prosperity returned to Canada during the Second World War and continued in the proceeding years, with the development of universal health care, old-age pensions, and veterans' pensions.

The financial crisis of the Great Depression had led the Dominion of Newfoundland to relinquish responsible government in 1934 and become acrown colony ruled by a British governor.

The financial crisis of the great depression had led the Dominion of Newfoundland to relinquish responsible government in 1934 and become a crown colony ruled by a British governor. After two bitter referendums, Newfoundlanders voted to join Canada in 1949 as a province.

Canada's post-war economic growth, combined with the policies of successive Liberal governments, led to the emergence of a new Canadian identity, marked by the adoption of the current Maple Leaf Flag in 1965, the implementation of official bilingualism (English & French) in 1969, and the institution of official multiculturalism in 1971. Socially democratic programs were also instituted, such as Medicare, the Canada Pension Plan, and Canada Student Loans, though provincial governments, particularly Quebec and Alberta, opposed many of these as incursions into their jurisdictions.

In 1948 the British government gave voters three Newfoundland Referendum choices: remaining a crown colony, returning to Dominion status (that is, independence), or joining Canada.

Joining the USA was not made an option. After bitter debate Newfoundlanders voted to join Canada in 1949 as a province. In the years following World War II, Canadians enjoyed a standard of living that was in stark contrast to the Depression years. The economy had boomed during the war and the gross national product had doubled. The war had prompted development in new industries, which continued to expand in peacetime. Consumer spending had increased dramatically during the war, and continued to rise with the post-war baby boom. This boom, along with large numbers of European immigrants, resulted in a 40% population increase between the war's end and 1958.

In Canada's quickly growing cities and suburbs, home ownership was made easier by the National Housing Act, designed to make mortgages easier to obtain. This example of government involvement in the economy was characteristic of the times.

By 1945, unemployment insurance and family allowance legislation had been passed and other social welfare measures were being discussed. Prime Minister King retired in 1948, and was followed as Liberal leader by Louis St. Laurent. One of St. Laurent's first achievements was the entry of Newfoundland into Confederation in 1949. In 1951, his government increased old age pensions and, in 1957, introduced a hospital insurance plan. St. Laurent negotiated with the USA to build the St. Lawrence Seaway, an impressive feat of engineering completed in 1959.

In 1956, however, the government used closure (a limit on debate) to cut off the parliamentary debate concerning the building of the trans-Canada pipeline for oil and gas.

In the election the following year, the Conservatives under John Diefenbaker won a minority victory. In 1958, Diefenbaker called another election to consolidate his position. This time the Conservatives swept the country, winning 208 of 265 seats. Western agriculture found huge new markets when the government arranged wheat sales to China. In 1960, Diefenbaker's government introduced the Bill of Rights to protect the rights of all Canadians, and granted Native Canadians the right to vote in federal elections. Despite continuing popular support for the British Commonwealth, the government of Canada signed the North American Air Defence Agreement (NORAD) with the USA in order to increase security during a time of international tension. But it could not deal with an economic recession that led to a devalued dollar and high unemployment.

Also, the Prime Minister dealt Canada's fledging aircraft industry a serious blow when he cancelled production of the Canadian-made Avro Arrow fighter jet, and his refusal to allow nuclear warheads on the American missiles based in Canada earned him the enmity of the US government.

In the election of 1962, his government was returned to power, but in a minority situation that forced another election in 1963.

The 1963 election also resulted in a minority government situation, but this time, the Liberals, under Lester B. Pearson, were in power. As Prime Minister, Pearson, a career diplomat, concentrated on domestic matters. His government relied on the support of the New Democratic Party to hold a majority in the House of Commons and the partnership produced legislation that broadened social welfare by introducing Medicare, the Canada Pension Plan and the Canada Assistance Plan.

Canadian nationalism was heightened with the adoption of the maple leaf flag in 1965, and in the same year another federal election produced a Liberal government one seat short of a clear majority. The opening of the world's fair, Expo in Montreal, in Canada's centennial year, 1967 marked a year of celebration across the country.

The foreign policy of Canada during the Cold War was closely tied to that of the USA.

Canada was a founding member of NATO (which Canada wanted to be a transatlantic economic and political union as well). In 1950, Canada sent combat troops to Korea during the Korean War as part of the United Nations forces. The federal government's desire to assert its territorial claims in the Arctic during the Cold War manifested with the High Arctic relocation, in which Inuit were moved from Nunavik (the northern third of Quebec) to barren Cornwallis Island; this project was later the subject of a long investigation by the Royal Commission on Aboriginal Peoples.

In 1956, the United Nations responded to the Suez Crisis by convening a United Nations Emergency Force to supervise the withdrawal of invading forces. The peacekeeping force was initially conceptualized by Secretary of External Affairs and future Prime Minister Lester B. Pearson.

Pearson was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1957 for his work in establishing the peacekeeping operation. Throughout the mid-1950s, Louis St. Laurent (12th Prime Minister of Canada) and his successor John Diefenbaker attempted to create a new, highly advanced jet fighter, the Avro Arrow.

The controversial aircraft was cancelled by Diefenbaker in 1959. Diefenbaker instead purchased the BOMARC missile defense system and American aircraft. In 1958 Canada established (with the USA) the North American Aerospace Defense Command (NORAD).

During the 1960s, Pearson was sensitive to growing nationalism in Quebec. His government established a Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism in 1963, to demonstrate that Quebec's interests could be served by federalism, and he encouraged some of those closely associated with the Quiet Revolution to run for federal office. Quebec had been transformed from traditional to modern attitudes towards education, social reform and industrialization, a movement known as the Quiet Revolution, under Premier Jean Lesage. The Quebec government was implementing the ideas of the Quiet Revolution, and championed provincial rights with its slogan "masters in our own house".

This sentiment took centre stage during Centennial celebrations. Visiting French President Charles de Gaulle ended a Montreal speech with the cry "Long live free Quebec" which set off a storm of diplomatic protest and delighted local nationalists. Despite growing nationalist sentiment, many Quebeckers, including Pierre Trudeau went to Ottawa. Trudeau was elected to the House of Commons in 1965, and was named Minister of Justice in 1967.

In 1968, following Pearson's retirement, Trudeau became Liberal leader.

1947 Imperial Oil discovers the Leduc oil field.

1948 Louis St. Laurent succeeds Mackenzie King as Prime Minister.

1949 Under Premier Joey Smallwood, Newfoundland becomes Canada's 10th province.

1949 Canada joins NATO.

1950 The Korean War begins. Canadian troops participate as part of a United Nations force.

1951 The mid-century census reports Canada's population as 14,009,429.

1951 Post-war immigration to Canada exceeds 100,000 annually during the 1950s.

1951 C. Whitton the first woman to be elected mayor of a major Canadian city is elected in Ottawa.

1952 Vincent Massey becomes the first native-born Governor General of Canada.

1952 Canada's first television stations begin broadcasting in Montreal and Toronto.

1952 W.A.C. Bennett begins Social Credit's administration in British Columbia.

1953 Canada's National Library is established in Ottawa. The Stratford Festival opens.

1953 The Korean War ends (July 27); total Canadian casualties are 314 killed and 1 211 wounded.

1953 Liberals under St. Laurent defeat Conservatives under Drew in federal election.

1954 An economic slump interrupts the post-war boom. Canada's first subway opens in Toronto.

1954 Sixteen-year-old Marilyn Bell becomes the first person to swim Lake Ontario.

1955 The Canadian Labour Congress is formed.

1956 The Liberals use closure to limit the Pipeline Debate.

1957 Conservatives under John Diefen – baker win federal election and form minority government.

1957 Ellen Pairclough becomes the first woman federal cabinet minister.

1957 The Canada Council is created to help foster Canadian cultural life.

1957 Lester B. Pearson wins Nobel Prize for his role in resolving the Suez Crisis.

1957 Canadian supply and services troops are sent to work with a UN force around the Gulf of Aqaba.

1958 Conservatives under Diefenbaker win 208 seats in federal election.

1958 Coalmine disaster at Springhill, NS, results in death of 74 miners.

1959 The Avro Arrow project is terminated, with a loss of almost 14,000 jobs.

1959 The St. Lawrence Seaway is opened.

1960 Liberals under Jean Lesage win provincial election in Quebec, inaugurating the Quiet Revolution.

1960 A Canadian Bill of Rights is approved by Parliament.

1960 Native people get the right to vote in federal elections.

1960 During the 1960s French is recognized as a language of instruction.

1961 The New Democratic Party replaces the CCF.

1962 Conservatives are reduced to minority status in federal election.

1962 Social Credit wins 30 seats in the House of Commons.

1962 The Saskatchewan NDP introduces the first Canadian Medicare plan.

1962 Trans-Canada Highway officially opens. Canadian-made satellite Alouette is launched.

1963 Liberals under Pearson win federal election and form a minority government.

1963 The Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism begins its work.

1964 Canadians get social insurance cards.

1964 Canadian troops join UN forces in Cyprus, a posting that continues until 1993.

1965 Canada gets a new flag. The Autopact between Canada and the US is signed.

1965 Canadian Roman Catholic Churches begin to celebrate mass in English.

1965 Liberals win federal election to continue as a minority government.

1966 The Canada Pension Plan is established. The CBC begins colour television broadcasting.

1967 The Canadian army, navy and air forces are unified to become the Canadian Armed Forces.

1967 Montreal hosts a world's fair, Expo 67. Canada celebrates its Centennial.

1967 French President Charles de Gaulle delivers his "Vive Quebec Libre" speech in Montreal.

1967 The federal Department of Manpower and Immigration establishes the "points system" for immigrants.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Make up some dialogues from the information above.

Exercise 3. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

THE TRUDEAU YEARS (1968-1984)

In the 1960s, what became known as the Quiet Revolution took place in Quebec, overthrowing the old establishment which centred on the Roman Catholic Archdiocese of Quebec and led to modernizing of the economy and society. Québécois nationalists demanded independence, and tensions rose until violence erupted during the 1970 October Crisis.

John Saywell says, "The two kidnappings and the murder of Pierre Laporte were the biggest domestic news stories in Canada's history". In 1976 the Parti Québécois was elected to power in Quebec, with a nationalist vision that included securing French linguistic rights in the province and the pursuit of some form of sovereignty for Quebec. This culminated in the 1980 referendum in Quebec on the question of sovereignty-association, which was turned down by 59% of the voters.

In 1965, Canada adopted the maple leaf flag, although not without considerable debate and misgivings among large number of English Canadians. The World's Fair titled Expo 67 came to Montreal, coinciding with the Canadian Centennial that year. The fair opened April 28, 1967, with the theme "Man and his World" and became the best attended of all world expositions until that time.

Legislative restrictions on Canadian immigration that had favoured British and other European immigrants were amended in the 1960s, opening the doors to immigrants from all parts of the world.

While the 1950s had seen high levels of immigration from Britain, Ireland, Italy, and northern continental Europe, by the 1970s immigrants increasingly came from India, China, Vietnam, Jamaica and Haiti. Immigrants of all backgroundstended to settle in the major urban centres, particularly Toronto, Montreal and Vancouver. During his long tenure in the office (1968-79, 1980-84), Prime Minister Pierre Trudeau made social and cultural change his political goals, including the pursuit of official bilingualism in Canada and plans for significant constitutional change.

The west, particularly the petroleum-producing provinces like Alberta, opposed many of the policies emanating from central Canada, with the National Energy Program creating considerable antagonism and growing western alienation. Multiculturalism in Canada was adopted as the official policy of the Canadian government during the prime ministership of Pierre Trudeau.

The Liberals won a majority victory in the election of 1968. Trudeau was a strong federalist, determined to show that Ottawa could promote the rights of French Canada.

The Official Languages Act of 1969 recognized both English and French as official languages, and required federal institutions to provide services in both languages. Although the legislation was supported by all parties, it was not universally popular, even in Quebec.

In the October Crisis of 1970 separatist extremists belonging to the FLQ (Front de Liberation du Quebec) kidnapped British Trade Commissioner James Cross, and killed Quebec cabinet minister Pierre Laporte. Trudeau used the War Measures Act to apply emergency measures of arrest, detention and martial law. This move was generally accepted, but was criticized by advocates of civil rights, especially since the FLQ had little real support and the Act was in effect across the country.

In his early years in power, Trudeau attempted to concentrate decision-making in Ottawa, and his newly created Prime Minister's Office led to western Canadian accusations of an eastern-dominated federal government. At the same time opposition parties charged that Trudeau was undermining both the power of the cabinet and of Parliament.

The Liberals were almost defeated in the election of 1972, but retained office through a minority government that saw the New Democrats, under David Lewis, hold the balance of power. During this period the Foreign Investment Review Agency was set up (1973) to protect the Canadian economy against foreign domination; business critics claimed that it discouraged investment.

By 1974, the Liberals had regained a majority; their agenda was dominated by an economy battered by inflation. The government tried a variety of economic measures, including a three-year imposition of wage and price controls under the Anti-Inflation Act of 1975. Although the controls may have had some effect, world conditions, especially the international oil crisis, kept inflation high.

In 1976, the separatist Party Quebecois under Rene Levesque defeated the provincial Liberals, led by Robert Bourassa in the Quebec election. This election fuelled public uncertainty over the future of Quebec (and Canada), while continuing inflation and western alienation also undermined Liberal support. In the 1979 election, the Liberals lost, and Conservative leader Joe Clark took office as head of a minority government. Clark's government was short-lived as it suffered defeat in the House of Commons that same year.

The Liberals won the election of 1980, and Trudeau, lured out of planned retirement by the sudden election, embarked on an eventful term of office. He and members of his government actively campaigned on the victorious NO side in the 1980 Quebec referendum on sovereignty association.

The Liberals brought in the National Energy Program in the same year, again attempting to regulate ownership and control in part of the economy, and again succeeding in alienating foreign and local business interests. Resistance to the NEP, particularly in the west, was deep and persistent.

Then, after a long (18 months) and difficult campaign waged in Parliament, at federal-provincial meetings and in the media, Trudeau succeeded in getting an agreement on patriating the Canadian constitution amongst all provinces except Quebec. Patriation officially took place when Queen Elizabeth proclaimed the new Constitution Act in Ottawa on April 17, 1982. The Charter of Rights and Freedoms is also proclaimed, entrenching bilingualism in the federal jurisdiction and providing for minority language education rights across Canada.

Finally, another series of constitutional conferences resulted in the 1982 patriation of Canada's constitution from the United Kingdom, concurrent with the creation of the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms. In 1999, Nunavut became Canada's third territory after a series of negotiations with the federal government. At the same time, Quebec underwent profound social and economic changes through the Quiet Revolution of the 1960s, giving birth to a modernnationalist movement.

The radical Front de libération du Québec (FLQ) ignited the October Crisis with a series of bombings and kidnappings in 1970 and the sovereignist Parti Quebecois was elected in 1976, organizing an unsuccessful referendum on sovereignty-association in 1980.

Attempts to accommodate Quebec nationalism constitutionally through the Meech Lake Accord failed in 1990. This led to the formation of theBloc Quebecois in Quebec and the invigoration of the Reform Party of Canada in the West. A second referendum followed in 1995, in which sovereignty was rejected by a slimmer margin of 50.6 to 49.4 p%. In 1997, the Supreme Court ruled that unilateral secession by a province would be unconstitutional and the Clarity Act was passed by parliament, outlining the terms of a negotiated departure from Confederation.

By 1984 the country was mired in a recession and in no mood for the international interest.

Trudeau was pursuing; he retired and John Turner became Liberal leader and Prime Minister for a brief period. The Liberal government was at the end of its mandate and parliament was dissolved.

After nearly 16 years of Liberal government, the voters were eager for a change.

1968 Pierre Elliott Trudeau succeeds Pearson as Prime Minister.
1968 A Royal Commission on the Status of Women is appointed. Canadian divorce law is reformed.
1969 Saturday postal deliveries end. Abortion law is liberalized.
1969 English and French become official languages of federal administration.
1969 New Brunswick declares official bilingualism.
1969 The breathalyser comes into use as a test for alcohol-impaired drivers.
1970 Quebec labour and immigration minister Pierre Laporte is kidnapped and found murdered.
1970 The federal government invokes the War Measures Act, leading to the arrest of 465 people.
1971 A policy of multiculturalism is adopted by the federal government.
1971 Canadian Gerhard Herzberg wins the Nobel Prize in chemistry.
1972 Liberals win federal election with 109 seats to the Conservatives 107.
1973 The separatist Party Quebecois becomes the official Opposition in Quebec.

1973 Canadian troops are sent to the Middle East and serve with the UN Emergency Task Force.

1974 Liberals under Trudeau win federal "election and form majority government.

1974 Pauline McGibbon becomes the first female governor in the British Commonwealth.

1975 The CN Tower, the world's tallest freestanding structure is completed in Toronto.

1975 Television cameras are allowed inside the House of Commons for the first time.

1975 Federal government imposes wage and price controls in an effort to fight inflation.

1975 Grace Hartman is elected president of the Canadian Union of Public Employees.

1976 Canada announces 200-nautical-mile coastal fishing zone.

1976 Death penalty is abolished in a free vote (130-124) in Parliament.

1976 Montreal hosts Olympic Games (July 17-31).

1976 Team Canada wins the first Canada Cup hockey series.

1976 The Party Quebecois under Rene Levesque wins provincial election in Quebec.

1977 Highway signs in most of Canada become metric.

1978 Soviet nuclear-powered satellite crashes in Canadian north.

1979 Conservatives under Joe Clark win federal election.

1979 Antonine Maillet wins the prestigious French literary prize for her novel Pelagie-la-Charette.

1980 Liberals win federal election. Canada boycotts the Olympic Games in Moscow.

1980 Jeanne Sauve becomes the first female Speaker of the House of Commons.

1980 0 Canada becomes Canada's national anthem.

1981 The census indicates increases of new Canadians from Asia, the Caribbean and Latin America.

1982 Bertha Wilson becomes Canada's first woman to be appointed a justice of the Supreme Court.

1982 Canada gains a new Constitution and Charter of Rights and Freedoms.

1983 Jeanne Sauve is Canada's first woman to be appointed Governor General.

1984 Canada approves a US plan to test unarmed cruise missiles in western Canada.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				
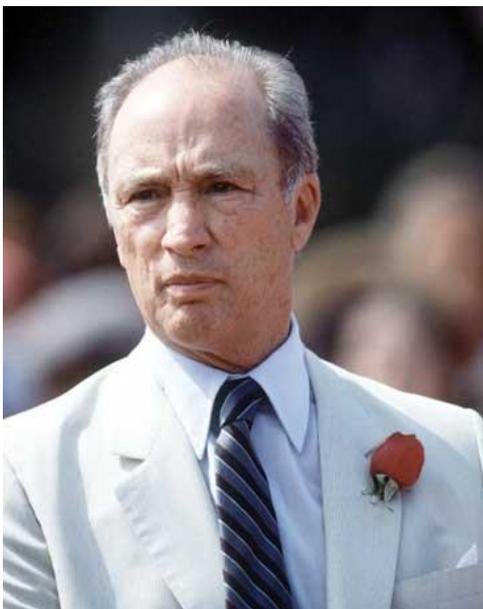
MULRONEY IN POWER (1984-1993)

In 1982, the Canada Act was passed by the British parliament and granted Royal Assent by Queen Elizabeth II on March 29, while the Constitution Act was passed by the Canadian Parliament and granted Royal Assent by the Queen on April 17, thus patriating the Constitution of Canada.

Previously, the constitution has existed only as an act passed of the British parliament, and was not even physically located in Canada, though it could not be altered without Canadian consent.

At the same time, the Charter of Rights and Freedoms was added in place of the previous Bill of Rights. The patriation of the constitution was Trudeau's last major act as Prime Minister; he resigned in 1984. On June 23, 1985, Air India Flight 182 was destroyed above the Atlantic Ocean by a bomb on board exploding; all 329 on board were killed, of whom 280 were Canadian citizens. The Air India attack is the largest mass murder in Canadian history.

The Progressive Conservative (PC) government of Brian Mulroney began efforts to gain Quebec's support for the Constitution Act 1982 and end western alienation.

In 1987 the Meech Lake Accord talks began between the provincial and federal governments, seeking constitutional changes favourable to Quebec. The failure of the Meech Lake Accord resulted in the formation of a separatist party, Bloc Québécois. The constitutional reform process under Prime Minister Mulroney culminated in the failure of the Charlottetown Accord which would have recognized Quebec as a "distinct society" but was rejected in 1992 by a narrow margin.

Under Brian Mulroney, relations with the USA began to grow more closely integrated. In 1986, Canada and the U.S. signed the "Acid Rain Treaty" to reduce acid rain.

In 1989, the federal government adopted the Free Trade Agreement with the USA despite significant animosity from the Canadian public who were concerned about the economic and cultural impacts of close integration with the USA.

On July 11, 1990, the Oka Crisis land dispute began between the Mohawk people of Kanesatake and the adjoining town of Oka, Quebec. The dispute was the first of a number of well-publicized conflicts between First Nations and the Canadian government in the late 20th century.

In August 1990, Canada was one of the first nations to condemn Iraq's invasion of Kuwait, and it quickly agreed to join the U.S.-led coalition. Canada deployed destroyers and later a CF-18 Hornet squadron with support personnel, as well as a field hospital to deal with casualties.

In the 1984 general election, the Conservatives, under Brian Mulroney, won a decisive victory, taking 211 of 282 seats in the House of Commons, including 58 seats in Quebec, a former Liberal stronghold. In contrast to the previous government, the Conservatives sought to strengthen ties with the USA and took steps to attract more foreign investment to Canada. The recession of the early 80s was over and business and government were both ready to expand.

One of the goals of the Mulroney government was to amend the Constitution Act of 1982 to obtain the support of Quebec. The Prime Minister and 10 provincial premiers reached an agreement, which became known as the Meech Lake Accord, on such an amendment in 1987; the agreement was to be taken to provincial legislatures and to parliament for approval by June 23, 1990.

Also in 1987, the government negotiated a Canada-U.S free trade agreement (FTA), which provided for the elimination of all cross-border tariffs over 10 years. But the deal was rejected by both opposition parties and Liberal leader John Turner announced that the Liberal-dominated senate would not approve free trade unless the Conservatives obtained public support in a general election.

Mulroney called an election for November 1988. The campaign that followed was fractious, emotions ran high and there were wide fluctuations in public opinion. Anti-PTA sentiment was split between the opposition parties and the Conservatives won a second majority government. The FTA was approved in December and took effect January 1, 1989.

As the deadline for ratification of the Meech Lake Accord approached, its confirmation became increasingly uncertain Provincial governments had changed in the interim.

Both Manitoba and Newfoundland indicated that they had reservations about the agreement.

Despite a last-minute first ministers' conference and a great deal of political pressure, the Manitoba legislature failed to ratify the accord and Newfoundland withdrew its consent; the deal lapsed in 1990. The following years were marked by numerous federal-provincial conferences, a variety of proposals and pressure from Quebec to include recognition of its distinct society. In August 1992 a new federal-provincial agreement was reached (the Charlottetown Accord) in time to be considered in a referendum Quebec premier Robert Bourassa had pledged to hold on the future of Quebec.

The other provinces also took part in a national referendum on the terms of the accord, which included not only recognition of Quebec as a distinct society, but also provisions to transfer mining, forestry, telecommunications and many other jurisdictions to the provinces. Canadians from all walks of life grappled with the issues raised by the terms of the Charlottetown.

Accord and the question dominated national media. The referendum was held on October 26, 1992 and the deal was rejected by 54.8% of the voters. The Conservatives' second term of office was also marked by the introduction of the Goods and Services Tax (GST), a tax designed to replace the manufacturers' tax and spread the tax burden more evenly across the economy.

This tax was deeply unpopular and the Liberal-appointed members of the senate vowed to block its passage in the upper chamber. Mulroney responded by temporarily increasing the number of senators to 112, with new appointees who would support the measure.

The tax was the subject of heated debate and much protest across the country as Canadians transferred then frustration over the endless constitutional discussion, the now faltering economy and disappointment over the results of FTA to the government.

The GST took effect on January 1, 1991 and the Conservative government continued to pursue wider trade agreements by joining the U S. and Mexico in negotiations for a North American Free Trade Agreement that would supersede the FTA Amid much controversy, the deal was signed in December and the government's popularity continued to plumb the depths of the popularity polls.

Mulroney announced his decision to step aside as leader; Kim Campbell became the new leader of the Conservatives and the country's first female Prime Minister after a June leadership convention.

As the Conservative mandate drew to a close, Campbell attempted to present herself as a brand-new Prime Minister at the head of a brand-new government. In the election in October 1993, Canadian voters made it clear they did not accept this stance; the Liberals under Jean Chretien won a lopsided victory in an election that changed the political map of the country.

The new government took office with a record number of rookie MPs, the Loyal Opposition was made up of members of the separatist Bloc Quebecois, with the Reform Party from western Canada nearly matching the BQ's number of seats. The Conservatives elected only 2 members and the NDP also fared poorly at the hands of the electorate. In addition to the issues of Quebec sovereignty, a number of crises shook Canadian society in the late 1980s and early 1990s.

These included the explosion of Air India Flight 182 in 1985, the largest mass murder in Canadian history; the Ecole Polytechnique massacre in 1989, a university shooting targeting female students; and the Oka Crisis of 1990, the first of a number of violent confrontations between the government and Aboriginal groups. Canada joined the Gulf War in 1990 as part of a US-led coalition force and was active in several peacekeeping missions in the 1990s, including the UNPROFOR mission in the former Yugoslavia.

1984 Trudeau is succeeded as Prime Minister under Mulroney win federal election with 211 seats.

1984 The Pope visits Canada.

1984 Marc Garneau becomes the first Canadian in space, aboard US space shuttle Challenger (Oct 5).

1984 Council for the Northwest Territories recognizes the use of aboriginal languages.

1985 The Quebec provincial Liberals under Robert Bourassa defeat the Party Quebecois.

1986 The Expo 86 world's fair is held in Vancouver.

1986 Canada joins other Commonwealth nations in economic sanctions against South Africa.

1987 Ontario passes the first pay equity legislation for the private sector enacted in North America.

1987 A free vote in Parliament on restoration of capital punishment defeats the proposal 148-127.

1987 A free trade agreement between Canada and the USA is set out.

1987 The founding assembly of the Reform Party of Canada is held.

1988 Canada is left without an abortion law.

1988 Yukon Territory passes language legislation recognizing the use of aboriginal languages.

1988 Mulroney's Progressive Conservatives win a second consecutive majority in the federal election.

1989 The Free Trade Agreement takes effect.

1989 The federal government announces a new goods and services tax to take effect.

1989 Audrey McLaughlin becomes Canada's first female national party leader

1990 Revisions to the Criminal Code provide choice of language in criminal hearings.

1991 Canadian military personnel participate with the Allied forces in the assault against Iraq.

1992 A year-long crisis in the Atlantic fisheries results in a two-year shutdown of the cod fishery.

1994 Most of the country west of the Rockies endures the coldest winter since the 1950s.

1995 In June the worst forest fire season in northern parts of central Canada begins.

1996 Canada and Israel signed a free trade deal.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	When	Where	Score
1.				
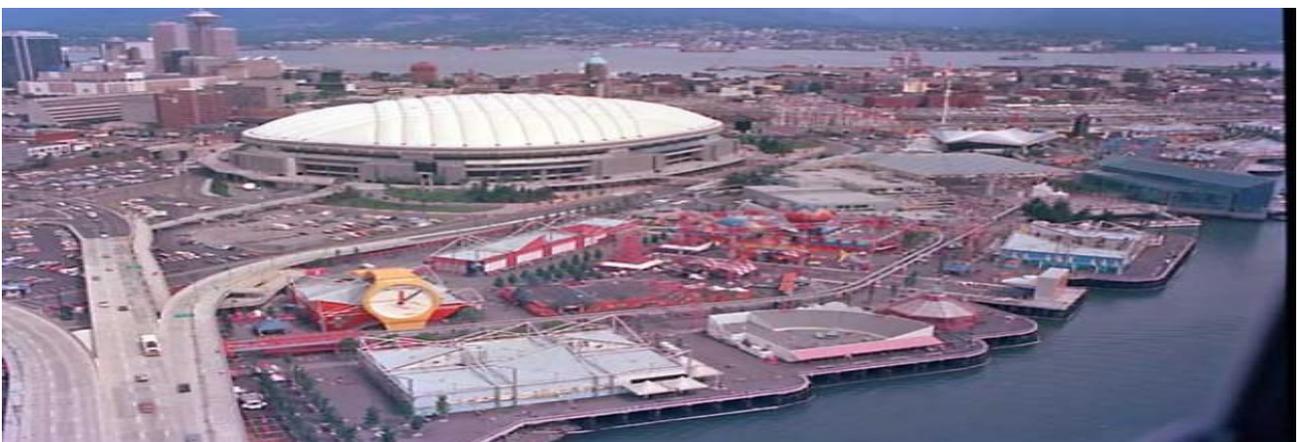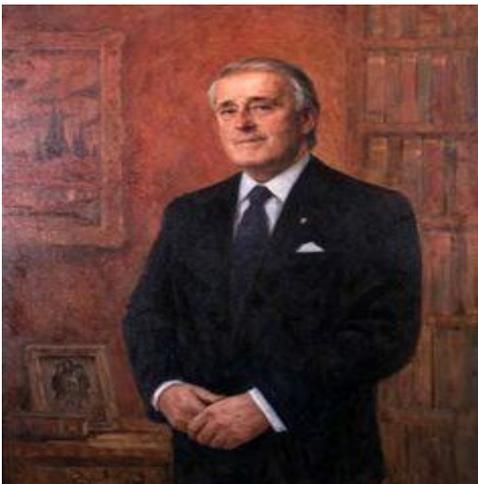
RECENT HISTORY: 1992-PRESENT

Following Mulroney's resignation as prime minister in 1993, Kim Campbell took office and became Canada's first female prime minister. Campbell remained in office for only a few months: the 1993 election saw the collapse of the Progressive Conservative Party from government to two seats, while the Quebec-based sovereigntist Bloc Québécois became the official opposition.

Prime Minister Jean Chrétien of the Liberals took office in November 1993 with a majority government and was re-elected with further majorities during the 1997 and 2000 elections.

In 1995, the government of Quebec held a second referendum on sovereignty that was rejected by a margin of 50.6% to 49.4%.In 1998, the Canadian Supreme Court ruled unilateral secession by a province to be unconstitutional; Parliament passed the Clarity Act outlining the terms of a negotiated departure. Environmental issues increased in importance in Canada during this period, resulting in the signing of the Kyoto Accord on climate change by Canada's Liberal government in 2002.

The accord was in 2007 nullified by Prime Minister Stephen Harper's Conservative government, which proposed a "made-in-Canada" solution to climate change. Canada became the fourth country in the world and the first country in the Americas to legalize same-sex marriage nationwide with the enactment of the Civil Marriage Act. Court decisions, starting in 2003, had already legalized same-sex marriage in eight out of ten provinces and one of three territories. Before the passage of the Act, more than 3,000 same-sex couples had married in these areas. The Canadian Alliance and PC Party merged into the Conservative Party of Canada in 2003, ending a 13-year division of the conservative vote.

The party was elected twice as a minority government under the leadership of Stephen Harper in the 2006 federal election and 2008 federal election. Harper's Conservative Party won a majority in the 2011 federal election with the New Democratic Party forming the Official Opposition for the first time. Under Harper, Canada and the USA continued to integrate state and provincial agencies to strengthen security along the Canada-USA border through the Western Hemisphere Travel Initiative. From 2002 to 2011, Canada was involved in the Afghanistan Wars part of the U.S. stabilization force and the NATO-commanded International Security Assistance Force.

In July 2010, the largest purchase in Canadian military history, totalling C$9 billion for the acquisition of 65 F-35 fighters, was announced by the federal government. Canada is one of several nations that assisted in the development of the F-35 and has invested over C$168 mln. in the program.

Canada sent troops to Afghanistan in 2001, but declined to join the US-led invasion of Iraq in 2003. In 2009, Canada's economy suffered in the worldwide Great Recession, but it has since largely rebounded. In 2011, Canadian forces participated in the NATO-led intervention into the Libyan civil war, and also became involved in battling the Islamic Stateinsurgency in Iraq in the mid-2010s.

On October 19, 2015, Stephen Harper's Conservatives were defeated by a newly resurgent Liberal party under the leadership of Justin Trudeau and which had been reduced to third party status in the 2011 elections. Multiculturalism (cultural & ethnic diversity) has been emphasized in recent decades. Ambrose and Mudde conclude that: "Canada's unique multiculturalism policy, which is based on a combination of selective immigration, comprehensive integration, and strong state repression of dissent on these policies. This unique blend of policies has led to a relatively low level of opposition to multiculturalism".

The map of Canada today

CHAPTER IV. ECONOMICAL DEVELOPMENT
UNIT I. ECONOMY & SOCIAL ACTIVITIES

INTRODUCTION

Canada is the world's 11th-largest economy as of 2015, with a nominal GDP of approximately US$1.79 trillion. It is a member of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) and the Group of Eight (G8), and is one of the world's top ten trading nations, with a highly globalized economy. Canada is a mixed economy, ranking above the US and most western European nations on the Heritage Foundation's index of economic freedom, and experiencing a relatively low level of income disparity. The country's average household disposable income per capita is over US$23,900, higher than the OECD average. Furthermore, the Toronto Stock Exchange is the 7th largest stock exchange in the world by market capitalization, listing over 1,500 companies with a combined market capitalization of over US$2 trillion as of 2015.

In 2014, Canada's exports totalled over C$528 billion, while its imported goods were worth over $523 billion, of which approximately $349 billion originated from the USA, $49 billion from the European Union, and $35 billion from China. The country's 2014 trade surplus totalled C$5.1 billion, compared with a C$46.9 billion surplus in 2008.

Since the early 20th century, the growth of Canada's manufacturing, mining, and service sectors has transformed the nation from a largely rural economy to an urbanized, industrial one.

Like many other developed nations, the Canadian economy is dominated by the service industry, which employs about three-quarters of the country's workforce.

However, Canada is unusual among developed countries in the importance of its primary sector, in which the forestry and petroleum industries are two of the most prominent components.

Canada is one of the few developed nations that are net exporters of energy. Atlantic Canada possesses vast offshore deposits of natural gas, and Alberta also hosts large oil and gas resources.

The vastness of the Athabasca oil sands and other assets results in Canada having a 13% share of global oil reserves, comprising the world's third-largest share after Venezuela and Saudi Arabia. Canada is additionally one of the world's largest suppliers of agricultural products.

The Canadian Prairies are one of the most important global producers of wheat, canola, and other grains. Canada's Ministry of Natural Resources provides statistics regarding its major exports; the country is a leading exporter of zinc, uranium, gold, nickel, aluminium, steel, iron ore, coking coal and lead. Many towns in northern Canada, where agriculture is difficult, are sustainable because of nearby mines or sources of timber.

Canada also has a sizeable manufacturing sector centred in southern Ontario and Quebec, with automobiles and aeronautics representing particularly important industries.

Canada's economic integration with the USA has increased significantly since World War II. The Automotive Products Trade Agreement of 1965 opened Canada's borders to trade in the automobile manufacturing industry. In the 1970s, concerns over energy self-sufficiency and foreign ownership in the manufacturing sectors prompted Prime Minister Pierre Trudeau's Liberal government to enact the National Energy Program (NEP) and the Foreign Investment Review Agency (FIRA).

In the 1980s, Prime Minister Brian Mulroney's Progressive Conservatives abolished the NEP and changed the name of FIRA to Investment Canada, to encourage foreign investment.

The Canada-USA Free Trade Agreement (FTA) of 1988 eliminated tariffs between the two countries, while the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) expanded the free-trade zone to include Mexico in 1994.

In the mid-1990s, Jean Chrétien's Liberal government began to post annual budgetary surpluses, and steadily paid down the national debt. The global financial crisis of 2008 caused a major recession, which led to a significant rise in unemployment in Canada. By October 2009, Canada's national unemployment rate had reached 8.6 %, with provincial unemployment rates varying from a low of 5.8 % in Manitoba to a high of 17 % in Newfoundland and Labrador.

Between October 2008 and October 2010, the Canadian labour market lost 162,000 full-time jobs and a total of 224,000 permanent jobs. Canada's federal debt was estimated to total $566.7 billion for the fiscal year 2010-11, up from $463.7 billion in 2008-09.

In addition, Canada's net foreign debt rose by $41 billion to $194 billion in the first quarter of 2010. However, Canada's regulated banking sector (comparatively conservative among G8 nations), the federal government's pre-crisis budgetary surpluses, and its long-term policies of lowering the national debt, resulted in a less severe recession compared to other G8 nations.

As of 2015, the Canadian economy has largely stabilized and has seen a modest return to growth, although the country remains troubled by volatile oil prices, sensitivity to the Eurozone crisis and higher-than-normal unemployment rates. The federal government and many Canadian industries have also started to expand trade with emerging Asian markets, in an attempt to diversify exports; Asia is now Canada's second-largest export market after the USA. Widely debated oil pipeline proposals, in particular, are hoped to increase exports of Canadian oil reserves to China. Canada has a developed market economy that is export-directed and closely linked with that of the USA.

The nation's economy grew sporadically – at times strongly – in the late 20th century.

Low world prices for oil, gas, and wheat, some of Canada's major exports, were largely responsible for its periods of slower growth at high rate of inflation and persistently high unemployment continued to vex the country's policy-makers, Canada continues, however, to be ranked with Switzerland, Sweden, and the USA as one of the most affluent countries in the world.

The gross national product (GNP) is growing much faster than the population: the SNP per capita is among the highest in the world. The Canadian economy depends heavily on agriculture, which employs about 4 % of the labour force. In the early 1990s Canada had some 280,000 farms, which averaged 242 hectares (598 acres) in size.

The annual value of farm output amounted to C$24.2 billion in 1993. Because of its abundant production and relatively small population, Canada is a leading exporter of food products. Farms in Canada are about equally divided between crop raising and livestock production.

Wheat is the most important single crop, and the Prairie Provinces of Alberta, Manitoba, and Saskatchewan form one of the greatest wheat-growing areas of the world, with an average annual production of more than one-fifth of the world's supply.

One-half of Canada's wheat is grown in Saskatchewan. The Prairie Provinces also grow a large percentage of the coarse grains and oilseeds produced in Canada. After wheat, the major cash receipts from field crops are obtained from sales of canola, vegetables, barley, maize, potatoes, fruits, tobacco, and soybeans. Annual output totals in the early 1990s included (in metric tons) wheat, 29.9 mln.; barley, 10.9 mln.; maize, 5.6 mln.; canola, 3.7 mln.; potatoes, 2.9 mln.; and oats, 3.0 mln.

Livestock and livestock products account for about 50 % of yearly farm cash receipts.

Ranching prevails in the west, and the raising of livestock is a general enterprise, except in parts of Alberta and Saskatchewan, where beef cattle form a specialized industry. Ontario and Quebec rank highest in production of dairy products, with about 71 % of the national output; in poultry farming, with 64 %; and in egg production, with 54 %. Quebec produces 82 % of the maple products, and Ontario produces 89 % of the nation's tobacco crop. In early 1990s the livestock population of Canada included about 14.7 mln. cattle and calves, of which approximately 1.2 mln. were milk cows; 10.7 mln. hogs; and 949,000 sheep and lambs. Fruit farming is done in Ontario, British Columbia, and Quebec, with apples contributing about 40 % of the total value.

Berries, peaches, grapes, and cherries are other important crops.

Tomatoes, onions, carrots, turnips, peas, and beans are major vegetable crops; Ontario produces about one-half of the total vegetable crops followed by Quebec and British Columbia.

Agriculture accounts for less than 5% of the GNP and employs a comparable percentage of the work force. Canada is one of the world's major grain producers, with approximately four-fifths of its farmland located in the Prairie Provinces between the Great Lakes and the Rocky Mountains wheat is the chief export crop; others included feed grains, oilseeds, apples, potatoes, and maple syrup.

Forestry is a major source of Canada's wealth, and forest products annually account for nearly 14 % of Canadian exports. Forests cover some 4.2 mln. km² of the country, and the provincial and federal governments own about 90 % of this land. Canada has more than 150 varieties of native trees; about 80 % of them are softwoods, such as spruce, Douglas fir, hemlock, cedar, pine, and balsam. Canada's annual timber harvest in the early 1990s was about 186 mln. cu m.

Forestry sustains a complex and diversified export and domestic industry, employing more than 250,000 people. Canada leads the world in newsprint production, with about 28 %, and accounts for more than one-half of world exports; most of the Canadian export is sent to the USA.

The sawmill and planning-mill industry is centred in British Columbia. Quebec and Ontario lead the nation in pulp and paper production. The timber industry in Canada is extremely well developed, and forest resources are vast. Canada is the leading exporter of wood and wood products, with exports regularly accounting for more than 10 % of the country's total exports. The fishing resources of the country are harvested from the north-western Atlantic and north-eastern Pacific oceans and from the most extensive bodies of fresh water in the world. In the early 1990s the number of people employed in fishing or fish-processing operations was approximately 114,600.

Canada is a leading exporter of fish products, with annual exports in the early 1990s valued at about C$2.6 billion, or about three-quarters of the country's annual production.

The USA receives more than one-half of exports, followed by Japan and the nations of the European Union. The catch, which totalled about 1.2 mln. metric tons annually in the early 1990s, includes herring, redfish, scallops, salmon, flatfish, lobsters, and crab.

Northern cod, formerly a large part of the catch, has been under a fishing ban imposed by federal government order in 1992, owing to the near-extinction of the fish.

The government has provided emergency assistance payments and job retraining to people thrown out of work by this action in the Maritimes, where the economic impact has been heavy.

Fishing is also an important export industry and fish are caught both in the country's rivers and lakes and in the ocean. A general trend toward larger catches from marine fisheries can be attributed in part to the official extension of Canadian fishing Jurisdiction to 200 nautical miles (370 km) off the east and west coasts. Furs are another significant export product.

Fur trapping had an important role in Canada's early economic development, and the practice continues today. The value of trapped and farm-raised pelts rose from $25.6 million in the 1960-1961-time period to C$147.4 mln. in 1986-1987, but declined rapidly in the late 1980s and early 1990s.

Production was worth just C$42.2 mln. in 1990-1991. Farming operations consist mainly of raising mink, which contributes more than 90% of the annual value of pelts from fur farms, with fox accounting for virtually all the remainder.

The fur farms are mainly concentrated in Ontario, Nova Scotia, Quebec, and British Columbia. In the early 1990s, 1.9 million pelts of all types were harvested annually. Trapping is carried on primarily in northern Canada; Ontario, Quebec, Alberta, Saskatchewan, and Manitoba are the main producers of wildlife pelts. Canada is very rich with mineral resources: non-ferrous metals, rare and precious metals, uranium, iron ore, natural gas, coal, asbestos, potash, potassium salts. The Foothills of the Rocky Mountains, Alberta and the Appalachians and the coastal provinces are rich with coal deposits.

Iron ore is occurred in the Lake Superior district, Labrador Peninsula and the Cordillera Mountains. The Canadian Shield is a natural store of nickel, copper, iron, platinum, uranium and cobalt.

In the Appalachians a lot of asbestos, coal, gold, silver and non- ferrous metals are occurred.

The Cordillera Mountains are rich with non-ferrous and precious metal.

Canada's mineral industry is among the largest contributors to exports. In addition to crude petroleum and natural gas, principal export items are copper, nickel, lead, zinc, and their products, as well as iron ore, primary iron, and steel. The mining industry in Canada has a long history of exploration.

The most significant period of growth, however, has been since World War II ended in 1945, with mineral discoveries in every region of the country. Mining is an important source of national wealth; in 1992 annual mineral production was valued at about C$36 billion.

The Canadian mining industry is strongly oriented toward exports, and Canada is one of the world's leading mineral exporters. The USA, the European Union, and Japan are the leading purchasers of Canadian minerals. The growth of the mining industry is due in part to petroleum and natural gas discoveries in western Canada; development of huge iron-ore deposits in Labrador and Quebec; the discovery and development of large deposits of nickel in Ontario and Manitoba, uranium in Ontario and Saskatchewan, and potash in Saskatchewan; extraction of sulphur from natural gas in the western provinces; development of copper, lead, and zinc deposits; and the production of gold in Ontario, Quebec, British Columbia, and Northwest Territories.

The leading minerals, in order of value, are crude petroleum (591.2 million barrels annually in the early 1990s), natural gas (118.9 billion cu m/4.2 trillion cu ft), natural gas by-products (26.6 mln. cu m/939 mln. cu ft), gold (157,600 kg/347,300 lb), copper (744,700 metric tons), zinc (1.2 mln.metric tons), nickel (189,100 metric tons), coal (64.6 mln. metric tons), and iron ore (32.8 mln.metric tons).

These minerals together typically account for more than four-fifths of the value of annual mineral production. Alberta leads the country by a wide margin in the yearly value of mineral output; it is usually followed by Ontario, British Columbia, Saskatchewan, Quebec, and Manitoba.

Canada usually leads the world in the annual production of asbestos and zinc and ranks second in production of nickel, potash, and uranium. Other minerals in which the country is among the leading producers are cobalt, copper, gold, gypsum, iron ore, lead, molybdenum, natural gas, platinum-group metals, silver, sulphur, and titanium concentrates. The mining industry is subject to market fluctuations that adversely affect dependent local economies.

The Canadian economy is largely dependent on manufacturing, and industry, which employs about 15 % of the labour force, and accounts for about 17% of the annual gross domestic product.

Manufacturing has grown remarkably since 1945. In the early 1990s the leading manufactures, measured by value of output, were transportation equipment, food products, paper and allied products, chemicals and chemical products, primary metals, refined petroleum and coal products, electrical and electronic products, fabricated metal products, wood, and printed materials.

The most important manufacturing provinces are Ontario, which now accounts for more than one-half the manufacturing production of Canada, and Quebec, which accounts for nearly one-fourth.

The chief manufacturing cities include Toronto, Montreal, Hamilton, Vancouver, Windsor, Winnipeg, and Kitchener. Manufacturing and construction together account for one-third of the GNP and employ approximately one-quarter of the work force. Food and beverage manufacturing, petroleum refining, and the production of motor vehicles are among the dominant industries. Other important industries include pulp and paper production, meatpacking, and iron and steel production.

Machinery, transport equipment, and high technology products sake up the leading exports.

Although exploitation of the country's mineral resources has been a major factor in Canada's economic development, it has also been a major cause of the massive capital inflow that has resulted in the domination of Canadian industry by foreign corporations, primarily American companies.

Exercise 1. Write out all figures from the information above and explain them.

ENERGETIC DEVELOPMENT

Endowed with many fast-flowing rivers, Canada is the world's leading producer of hydroelectricity.

More than 85 % of the country's hydroelectric output is generated in the provinces of Quebec, Ontario, Newfoundland, and British Columbia. In 1979 the first of three planned hydroelectric stations on La Grande River, near James Bay in Quebec, began operations; when completed in 1985, these installations, owned and operated by Hydro-Quebec, had a capacity of 10.3 mln. kilowatts, more than any other hydroelectric complex in Canada or in the USA. The powerhouses on La Grande River constitute the first phase of a larger hydroelectric project that is projected. Churchill Falls, in the Labrador region of Newfoundland, is another major Canadian hydroelectric facility.

Since the early 1950s, Canada has sought to use its abundant resources of natural uranium to generate electricity. The first nuclear power plant, a demonstration station at Rolphton, Ontario, was completed in 1962. A huge nuclear plant was opened at Pickering, Ontario in the early 1970s.

In addition, a great complex of nuclear facilities on the Bruce Peninsula, in Ontario, owned and operated by Ontario Hydro, was completed in the early 1990s. No new nuclear facilities are under construction or in the design stages. In the early 1990s Canada had an installed electricity-generating capacity of 112 mln. kilowatts. During that period, the annual output of electricity was about 511 billion kilowatt-hours, of which 63% was provided by hydroelectric plants, 17 % by nuclear power plants, and 20% by conventional plants using fossil fuels. Canada exports about 10 % of its energy production to the USA. Almost all private, non-agricultural activities are dominated by American influences through either corporate ownership of Canadian assets or the growing dependence of Canadian producers on American market trends and financial markets.

The services sector accounts for more than one-half of the NP and employs two-thirds of the work force, about two-thirds of Canada's electricity is generated by waterpower. Fossil fuel and nuclear power produce the remaining one-third in roughly equal quantities.

The important characteristic of Canadian trade unionism is its international orientation.

Two-thirds of all trade unions belong to unions with international (mainly U.S.) affiliations.

The Federal Government is involved in the development of natural resources throughout Canada; but agricultural operations and a majority of industrial operations are privately owned.

National economic policy has been somewhat conditioned by the dependence of private-sector growth on foreign influence. Canadian economic development has been affected by foreign trade far more than that of most developed nations. Exports and imports combined represent about one-half of the GNP. Much of the growth in Canadian foreign trade can be attributed to the integration of the Canadian market into the American market. Canadian exports to the USA account for almost three fourths of total exports, and imports from the USA account for about two-thirds of total imports. Until the early 20th century, Canada was primarily an agricultural nation.

Since then it has become one of the most highly industrialized countries in the world. To a large extent the manufacturing industries are supplied with raw materials produced by the agricultural, mining, forestry, and fishing sectors of the Canadian economy. Between 1973 and 2000 Canada's output of goods and services, or gross domestic product (GDP), increased in real terms by about three-quarters to 1974. Canada has strong economic ties with the United Kingdom and other European communities. But the growing Japanese market has replaced the United Kingdom as Canada's second largest export market. Exports to China and Australia have also increased dramatically.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	Events	When	Where	Score
1.				

THE CONSUMER PRICE INDEX
Currency & Banking

The unit of currency in Canada is the Canadian dollar, which consists of 100 cents (C$1.36 equals U.S.$1; 1996). The Bank of Canada has the sole right to issue paper money for circulation.

Chartered commercial banks operated more than 7600 domestic branches in the early 1990s and had combined assets exceeding C$635 billion. Under the Bank Act of 1980, no Canadian subsidiary of a foreign bank may hold assets equal to more than 16 % of the assets of the entire banking system.

A major revision of the Bank Act in 1992 permitted banks, trust companies, and insurance companies to diversify into each other's markets. In the mid-1990s there were 9 domestic and 54 foreign-owned banks operating in Canada. Most foreign-owned and major domestic banks have their head offices in Toronto; a few are based in Montreal. Trust and mortgage loan companies, provincial savings banks, and credit unions also provide banking services. Securities exchanges operate in Toronto, Montreal, Winnipeg, Calgary, and Vancouver.

The Consumer price Index (CPI) is a weighted average of the cost of selected goods and services – food, clothing, housing and health care – that are normally purchased by Canadian households. The fact that it's an index means that the prices are noted regularly – usually monthly – so the changes in the prices can be recorded over time. It is weighted so that price changes for items that form a small part of overall purchases don't affect the index more than they should.

For example, if the price of milk goes up 5% it should have more effect on the CPI than if the price of stamps goes up 5% because Canadians usually buy more milk than postage stamps.

Why do they keep track of these prices? The CPI is a measure of the purchasing power of your dollar, and tracking changes in the CPI will tell you why you have more or less money in your pocket at the end of the week. If you haven't changed your spending habits but you start having trouble making ends meet, it's likely because the price of things that you usually buy has risen.

The CPI is also broken down by category so you can see whether the increase is due to a rise in food prices or the price of home heating fuel. When the price of many items in the CPI basket rises, the collective change becomes known as inflation.

Everyone starts feeling the pinch and begins to look for ways to increase their income – by asking for a raise in pay or taking on a part – time job. If prices go down, for example if the price of cigarettes is cut dramatically, your purchasing power has increased because you have more money to spend. These changes in the CPI are studied by many institutions and can affect labour – management contracts, social program payments and child support payments.

Payments for the Canada Pension Plan, Old Age Security and the Guaranteed Income Supplement have an adjustment built in to take changes in the CPI into account.

This is referred to as "indexing for inflation". Some labour contracts contain clauses providing for cost-of-loving allowance (COLA) in order to protect workers from rapidly rising prices during the life of the contract. In order to compare prices for a series of years and not just from one year to the next, a base year is chosen – right now its 1986 – and subsequent prices are compared to the prices in the base year. That is why, on the charts opposite, the figures for 1986 are shown as 100; cost for other years are shown as percentage of those costs. In 1950, the basket of goods and services cost 19% of what it cost in 1986; in 1996, the items cost 135,6% of what they cost in 1986.

From time to time the base year is changed; right now, Statistics Canada is updating all data to change the base year to 1991. Not only do prices fluctuate generally, but also it costs more to live in some parts of the country than in others. CPI is calculated for provinces and major urban centres in order to measure not only the change in the cost of living, but the differences across the country.

The CPI is not the only index to monitor prices in the economy. Statistics Canada also publishes price indexes relating to raw materials, industrial products, new housing and farm products.

The CPI however, remains the benchmark for Canadian consumers. Prices increase for several reasons: thing production costs, limited availability of the commodity, unfavourable exchange rates pushing up import prices, excessive consumer demand and too much currency in the economy.

Canadian consumers ended 1996 in a spending spree that saw domestic consumption grow by a 7.2 % annual rate in the final quarter – the biggest increase in ten years.

Low interest rates encouraged the purchase of big-ticket items such as cars and appliances, and economists were optimistic about growth in 1997. The only discouraging note was the fact that many of the purchasers were on credit. Canadians have traditionally had high rates of savings, but by the end of 1996 overall savings dropped to the lowest levels in 35 years.

Despite signs of economic recovery, even more Canadian consumers lost their battle with debt in 1996. Across the nation, personal bankruptcies rose by 22% over 1995: since 1994 there has been a 48% jump in such declarations 36% more BC consumers went bankrupt in 1996 than in the previous year, while New Brunswickers had an increase of nearly 60%. Ontario's total consumer bankruptcies were 30,035 an increase that matched the national average.

While business bankruptcies only rose by 7% between 1995 and 1996, the deficiency of business assets versus liabilities – at $ 2,815,518,931 – left consumers in the dust. The shortfall of assets versus liabilities for all 1996 bankruptcies combined was $ 4,669,244,304.

Car sales, which have been flat since 1988 when they hit a high of $ 1,5 mln., showed a small gain in 1996. 1.18 mln. cars and trucks were sold – a 3.5% increase over the 1.14 mln. total in 1995.

While GM felt the effects of a 3-week strike in the fall, Ford had an increase of 5.2% and Chrysler's sales of light trucks and cars went up 6.45%.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	Events	When	Where	Score
1.				

Car assembly plant in Oakville, Ontario; Port of Vancouver

Research laboratory, RIM's BlackBerry; Ice wine grapes, Niagara Region, Ontario

THE FEDERAL BUDGET

The Alternative Federal Budget (AFB) was first released in 1995 and has been an annual event ever since. It is a complete budget within a coherent macroeconomic framework and is presented as a progressive alternative to budgets of the federal government, which, in recent years have been extremely conservative and damaging to many Canadians. It is put together by representatives of some 50 groups across the country, representing social action groups and trade unions.

It is coordinated by the Canadian Centre for Policy Alternatives (CCPA), a national progressive 'think tank' based in Ottawa, which has close links with the labor movement, a Winnipeg based coalition for social justice which has many years experience developing alternative budgets at the provincial and civic levels. The motivation both for the exercise and the willingness of participants to undertake the numerous compromises necessary to produce such a budget, was to counter the unprecedented attack on public spending, public sector employment and public services by the newly elected Liberal government which began in the 1994/95 Budget and to develop an alternative progressive economic agenda which could carry some credibility nationally.

Initially, the Liberals announced a deficit to GDP target of 3 % in the 1994 Budget, en route to an eventual balanced budget, and cuts to program spending which would have reached some $3.3 billion by 1996/97. It was these cuts that the first AFB was attempting to forestall.

In the 1995 Budget, the government went much further and announced the need for structural reform of how government operates, including deep cuts in the level of federal program spending not simply lower spending growth, but a substantial reduction in actual dollars spent.

They announced sharp cuts in program spending, averaging 18% over three years but reaching as high as 49 % in spending on regional agencies, 35 % on human resources, 32 % on the environment and 21 % on foreign aid.

Even more ominously, the Liberals announced that federal transfers to the provinces for support of social programs would be reformed and, in the process, slashed by over $7 billion.

Severe cutbacks to the Unemployment Insurance scheme were also announced, as was the means testing of Old Age Security payments. These and other measures would reduce program spending by over $10 billion in two years, to meet the 3 % deficit target by 1996/97, constituting the biggest proportionate cutbacks in government spending of any western nation in recent history.

A further $5.5 billion would be cut in the ensuing two years, reducing program spending from $118 billion or 15.9 % of GDP to some $103 billion or 11.9 % of GDP by 1998/99.

The Liberal government had no electoral mandate for this fiscal bloodletting: on the contrary, it had been elected on a platform of economic revitalization, job creation and maintenance of social programs. The cuts were portrayed as being inevitable, as if the government had no other choice.

The AFB was designed to challenge this myth or, as Bruce Campbell, coordinator of the project has put it, 'to counter the corrosive orthodoxy of inevitability' Before elaborating on how the AFB sought and seeks to address Canada's fiscal situation, further explanation of the structure of the federal budget and the government's rationale for its cut and slash approach to fiscal policy is in order.

Once the $42 billion cost of servicing debt was taken into account, however, it was running a deficit of $37.5 billion, equal to 5 % of GDP. Total federal government debt outstanding was almost $546 billion, the equivalent of 73 % of GDP and growing annually, of course, by the amount of the deficit. The absolute and relative burdens of the deficit and the debt provided the government with its rationale for slashing government spending from 1994 onwards.

The Liberals argued that these debt/deficit figures were too high and were unsustainable. Large operating surpluses were needed, they said, in order to prevent the debt ratio from rising exponentially, as it would as long as the rate of interest on debt exceeded the growth of GDP, as had been the case since the early 1980s. The way to achieve those surpluses was to cut program spending.

Bringing down the debt and deficit to GDP ratios by doing so, they argued, would reduce interest rates, stimulate economic growth and protect the future of Canada's social programs.

In a nutshell, the attack on Canada's social programs was necessary in order to protect them: such was the Liberal government's doublespeak.

The first is that personal income tax is by far the most important source of revenue, accounting for over 45 % of the total in 1994/95 and 48 % in 1999/2000.

Second, unemployment insurance contributions find reflection in current revenues of the federal government and are an important revenue source.

Third, Corporate Income Tax brings in only about 13 % of total revenue, while the Goods and Services Tax (GST) also accounts for about 13 % of total revenue or about $22 billion in 1999/2000.

Finally, total revenue as a share of GDP rose steadily in the 1990s, from 16.4 % to a peak of 17.7 % before tax cuts were announced suggesting that the tax structure is quite 'income elastic'.

The federal government estimates that a 1% increase in real GDP improves the budget balance (reduce the deficit or increase the surplus) by $1.3 billion in the first year rising to $1.7 billion by year four. On the expenditure side, elderly benefits are the single largest expenditure, consisting of the Old Age Security (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS).

These programs have been important in helping reduce poverty among the elderly quite dramatically in the last generation, from 27 % for men and 38 % for women in 1980 to about 12 % for men and 24% for women in 1996. This poverty rate is, of course, still unacceptably high and especially so for women. In 1996, the government announced plans to replace the OAS, GIS and the aged and pension tax credits with a single income tested Seniors' Benefit, based on family income.

This was supposed to slow the growth in costs of public pensions by reducing benefits for high-income seniors, but the fear was that it might well reduce the income of older women who have little or no personal income. The second major item of expenditure is that on unemployment insurance benefits, renamed euphemistically in 1996, employment insurance benefits.

The first thing to note about these is that they are considerably less than the UI income on the revenue side of the budget, by $4.1 billion in 1994/95 and by an estimated $7.1 billion in 1998/99.

In other words, the government is making a surplus on the UI account, even though these monies are contributed by workers and employers for insurance purposes. By the end of 1999 it is estimated that the cumulated surplus on the books of the UI Fund will reach $25 billion, but this is a fiction since the underlying cash has been used by the government in deficit reduction.

Secondly, UI benefits have been cut back so drastically, first by the former Tory government and since by the Liberals, to the point that whereas in 1998 over 81% of the unemployed were receiving benefits, by 1993 that had fallen to 73 % and by 1999 to a catastrophically low level of around 36 %. For women the coverage was even lower, at 31%. The post 1994 cutbacks under the Liberals have reduced benefit periods, benefit rates, increased entrance requirements, and have been particularly hard on workers in the Atlantic and northern regions of Canada, and on seasonal and part time workers, many of whom are women and/or youth.

The third major item of spending is that on federal provincial transfers. Equalization payments are made to provinces with less than average tax capacity and are written into the constitution.

These have been left unchanged so far by the Liberals although the right wing Fraser Institute and C. D. Howe Institute, together with their parliamentary mouthpiece, the Reform Party, have argued for drastic reductions. The Canada Health and Social Transfer was introduced in 1996/97 to replace the Canada Assistance Plan (CAP) and the Established Programs Financing (EPF).

The CAP had been a 50:50 cost shared program between provinces and the federal government meeting the costs of social assistance. It would rise as the unemployment rate rose and fall as economic conditions improved and as the number of people on social assistance and related programs fell.

EPF provided block grants for health, subject to the requirements of the Canada Health Act, and for post secondary education. The new CHST rolled all these into one, abolished the cost sharing, anti cyclical nature of transfers for those on social assistance and cut the total cash involved dramatically. AFBs have been prepared in each year since 1995 and their content has changed to meet the changing economic, social and political environment and to take advantage of new skills and insights available to the exercise as word of its existence and support for it have spread.

The basic objectives and principles of the exercise have, however, been relatively unchanged.

Though rarely stated explicitly, the objectives have always been to draw together a broad spectrum of social activists across the country to develop a coherent, progressive economic and social policy for Canada and to demonstrate its feasibility in terms of affordability by integrating it into a complete, multi year budget framework. All the participants have shared this basic objective but beyond that some have sought to lobby the Liberals, especially what is left of the progressive wing of that party, to try to offset to some degree the influence in the cabinet of Bay Street (the financial sector) which many see as being exercised through the Minister of Finance, Paul Martin.

Others have sought to use the AFB to widen the parameters of the debate on economic and social policy in the country, especially up to the 1997 election when the presence in the House of the social democratic part, the New Democratic Party (NDP) was negligible.

Influencing the platform of the NDP has always been an objective of some participants. Finally, some have placed more stress on getting people across the country more involved in grass roots political activism, using the AFB as a tool for mobilization.

The basic principles underlying the AFB are commitments to:

- full employment;
- a more equitable distribution of income;
- the eradication of poverty;
- economic equality between men and women;
- the protection of civil, political, economic, social and cultural rights;
- improvement in the environment;
- the strengthening of social programs and public services and;
- the creation of a more just, sustainable and peaceful world order.

Any organization subscribing to these principles is entitled to a seat on the national Steering Committee, which meets in Ottawa, and which is the final arbiter of what actually goes in the budget.

A Winnipeg Working Group of CHOICES member operated, until 1999, on more or less parallel lines. CHOICES and CCPA each provide a coordinator for the AFB.

This is a unique structure for a national exercise as rarely does a regional organization in Canada operate in tandem with a national one and have so much input into national decisions.

The policy content was, until 1999, developed in a series of Policy Groups composed of interested people from across the country and their proposals were fed into the Steering Committee and the Winnipeg Working Group. Local participation across the rest of the country is secured in a number of ways, through budget schools (most of which are organized out of Winnipeg), seminars, workshops and press conferences. CHOICES and the CCPA put together the final document and the CCPA publishes the main document and arranges for its translation into French.

A Larger, Framework Document, outlining policy issues in some depth, was the foundation for the budget as are a number of technical papers, some of which are thrashed out in special workshops.

In 1997 and 1998 a number of detailed background papers were published as The Alternative Budget Papers. More popular versions of the budget are always prepared by CHOICES for circulation across the country and sometimes by the Canadian Labor Congress, which helps fund the exercise.

The budget is launched in Ottawa and in a number of centers across the country simultaneously a week or two before the government's budget.

Eradication of poverty has always been a major objective of the budget exercise and anti poverty groups have always played a major role in the exercise. The approach taken has been a multi faceted, holistic one recognizing the complex origins and forms of poverty in Canada. Anti poverty measures take the form of:

- increasing employment and access to jobs;
- promoting regional development initiatives;
- restoring unemployment insurance benefits to levels where workers;
- can truly consider themselves 'insured' against unemployment;
- raising federal transfers to provinces for enhanced social assistance payments to those not working who are not covered by UI;
- introduction of a national drug plan, initially, for low income earners;
- increased funding for child care to enable care givers the opportunity to work outside the home;
- increased retirement benefits for low income elderly;
- funds for youth employment creation;
- enhanced services to Aboriginal People and people with disabilities;
- restoration of funding for social housing;
- significant reductions in taxes on low-income families.

The unique position of women in the labour market and especially in the care economy and the public sector should be allowed for in budgets with appropriate recommendations for recognizing, rewarding and improving their position. Tax and expenditure proposals should be closely examined for their impact on women's unpaid labour, their status in the market labour economy and their income from social programs. Sustainable forestry and sustainable fisheries are also the goal of the AFB and monies are provided to encourage this. A pilot chemical taxation scheme will help reduce the use of and pollution from a variety of toxic industrial chemicals. The AFB also strengthens the regulatory role of the federal government on environmental matters.

Students, health activists, anti poverty groups, environmentalists, women's groups, third world support groups, churches, child care and social housing advocates have put aside time from their own pressing problems and overburdened agendas to sit down with national representatives of equally stressed trade unions to hammer out a compromise economic, social and political agenda, reflected in the general philosophy, the broad priorities and the specific details of the AFB.

The government has also introduced a number of tax measures since 1995, which are consistent with AFB proposals. Future budgets will concentrate on how to secure more local and regional input. It is expected that the high school education program will play an important role in this.

Just as the amount public debt has grown in the modern era, so have the interest payments due on that debt. Statistics Canada has calculated the amount of interest paid on the various levels of public debt throughout the years and the results show stead 7 growth since the 1940s.

Despite signs of economic recovery, even more Canadian consumers lost their battle with debt in 1996. Across the nation, personal bankruptcies rose by 25% over 1995; since 1994 there has been a 48% jump in such declaration; 36% more BC consumers went bankrupt in 1996 than in the previous year, while New Brunswickers had an increase of nearly 60%.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

A TRADING NATION

Canada has always been a trading nation and commerce remains the engine of economic growth. As Canadians, we could not maintain our standard of living without engaging in trade with other nations. In 1988, Canada enacted free trade with the USA.

Mexico became a partner in 1994 in the broader North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), with over 444 million people and over $1 trillion in merchandise trade in 2008. Today, Canada has one of the ten largest economies in the world and is part of the G8 group of leading industrialized countries with the USA, Germany, the United Kingdom, Italy, France, Japan and Russia.

Post-war Canada enjoyed record prosperity and material progress. The world's restrictive trading policies in the Depression era were opened up by such treaties as the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), now the World Trade Organization (WTO). The discovery of oil in Alberta in 1947 began Canada's modern energy industry. In 1951, for the first time, a majority of Canadians were able to afford adequate food, shelter and clothing.

Between 1945 and 1970, as Canada drew closer to the USA and other trading partners, the country enjoyed one of the strongest economies among industrialized nations.

Today, Canadians enjoy one of the world's highest standards of living – maintained by the hard work of Canadians and by trade with other nations, in particular the USA. Canada enjoys close relations with the USA and each is the other's largest trading partner.

Over three-quarters of Canadian exports are destined for the USA. In fact we have the biggest bilateral trading relationship in the world. Integrated Canada-USA supply chains compete with the rest of the world. Canada exports billions of dollars worth of energy products, industrial goods, machinery, equipment, automotive, agricultural, fishing and forestry products, and consumer goods every year. Millions of Canadians and Americans cross every year and in safety what is traditionally known as "the world's longest undefended border."

Canada's economy includes three main types of industries:

▪ *Service industries* provide thousands of different jobs in areas like transportation, education, health care, construction, banking, communications, retail services, tourism and government. More than 75% of working Canadians now have jobs in service industries.

▪ **Manufacturing industries make products to sell in Canada and around the world.**

Manufactured products include paper, high technology equipment, aerospace technology, automobiles, machinery, food, clothing and many other goods. Our largest international trading partner is the USA.

▪ **Natural resources industries include forestry, fishing, agriculture, mining and energy.**

These industries have played an important part in the country's history and development.

Today, the economy of many areas of the country still depends on developing natural resources, and a large percentage of Canada's exports are natural resources commodities.

CANADIAN INCOME TAX

Income tax was introduced in 1917 as a temporary measure to finance Canada's participation in World War I. The law introducing the tax (the Income War Tax Act) was shorter and much simpler than our current legislation. It imposed tax at graduated rates, ranging from 4% on the first $1500 to 25% for income over $ 1 00 000. This "*temporary*" tax was not repealed when the war ended.

But on January 1, 1949, the federal government removed '*war*' from the title and gave the statute the name it has today – the Income Tax Act. This act has been amended many times – most notably in 1972 when a major overhaul of the tax system broadened the tax base and introduces a tax on capital gains. This is still the basis of our federal income tax laws today. In 1988, all personal exemptions and many deductions were changed to non-refundable tax credits. Unlike deductions, which reduce taxable income, credits are used to reduce the amount of tax payable.

The term "*non-refundable*" refers to the fact that, although you can use these credits to reduce or eliminate your federal tax payable, any unused portion is not refundable to you. In some cases, however, you may be able to transfer the unused portion of the credits to someone else.

Because the credits are calculated by multiplying eligible amounts by 17% – the same as the lowest personal tax rate – the change makes no difference to those whose income falls within the lowest tax bracket. But it increases taxes for most of those with higher incomes.

For 1997, the federal income tax rates for individuals were: 17% on income up to $ 29590; 26% on income between $ 29590 and $ 59180; and 29% on income in excess of $ 59180.

Provincial Income Tax

Every province except Quebec collects income tax from its residents by "piggy-backing" on the federal tax. Each province imposes taxes of a fixed percentage based on the amount of income tax an individual must pay to the federal government. The federal government collects the tax, and then remits the appropriate amounts to the provincial governments. Quebec, however, chooses to collect its own provincial income tax, so Quebec residents must file both the federal return filed by all Canadian taxpayers, and the Quebec provincial income tax return.

Filling Tax Returns

Though corporations must file tax returns each year, individuals need only file if they owe taxes or they are eligible to claim tax credits such as the Child Tax Credit or the Goods and Services Tax Credit. Persons owing money must file a return by Apr. 30 of the year following the taxation year.

Failure to do so makes the taxpayer liable to a late-filing penalty of 1% per month on the amount outstanding, to a maximum of 12 months, plus interest on amounts owing.

Tax Freedom Day, 1997

Tax Freedom Day is the day of the year on which Canadians begin to work for themselves.

Until that point, everything they earn is paid out in taxes levied by federal, provincial and municipal governments. The concept of tax freedom day was developed by the Fraser Institute, a Vancouver-based, Canadian economic research organization.

According to the Institute's calculations, the average Canadian family in 1997 had an income of 55069, out of which it paid taxes totalling $ 27131 – a rate of 49,3%.

This corresponded to the 180th day of the year, June 30. In 1961, the earliest year covered by the Institute's calculations, the average Canadian family had earned enough to pay its taxes by May 3.

Tax freedom day falls on a different date in each province due to variations in provincial and municipal taxes. The earliest tax freedom day in 1997 – May 19 – was in Prince Edward Island; the latest – July 12 – was in Saskatchewan.

Exercise 1. Differentiate the various taxes.

Exercise 2. Explain the notion "Tax Freedom Day".

Foreign Trade

The Canadian balance of payments is a measure of all yearly business transactions between Canada and the world. These transactions are in 2 accounts; current account and capital account.

The current account notes all Canadian payments for imported goods and services and all money received for Canadian exports of goods and services. The capital account records all investment transactions (stocks, bonds real estate, new companies, loans, foreign currency trading, and interest payments) between Canada and other countries.

Voisey's Bay

Despite the growth in the "new economy", Canada's old economy of resource-based industries remains a strong performer. For just one example, the last five years have seen enormous excitement generated by a huge nickel / cobalt / cooper find in a remote part of Labrador.

Analysts have described the lode as the "nickel mining discovery of the century". What makes the find at Voisey's Bay so significant? Not only is the ore high grade, it is close to the surface and close to water. Mining and transportation operations would be affordable and the minerals could be produced at a profit. Estimates in late 1996 indicated that the discovery contained 150 mln. tonnes of ore and the copper and cobalt operations would cover the costs of mining the nickel.

The site was discovered in 1993 by two Newfoundland prospectors who were looking for diamonds for Diamond Fields Resources, but keeping an eye out for other promising finds. Among other things, they were looking for outcroppings of rock known as "gossans".

There are rusty red in colour and often indicate the presence of minerals; they are a prospector's visual clue that riches lie below. Albert Chislett and Chris Verbiski entered the mining history books at the end of a long summer of protecting in Labrador when they spotted a telltale outcropping late on a September day. On their first physical visit they estimated that what became known as Discovery Hill contained at least 18 million tons of copper. Cobalt and huge nickel resources are present – 1997 estimates indicate that the Voisey's Bay mine could produce up to 270 mln. pounds of nickel every year, for 20 years.
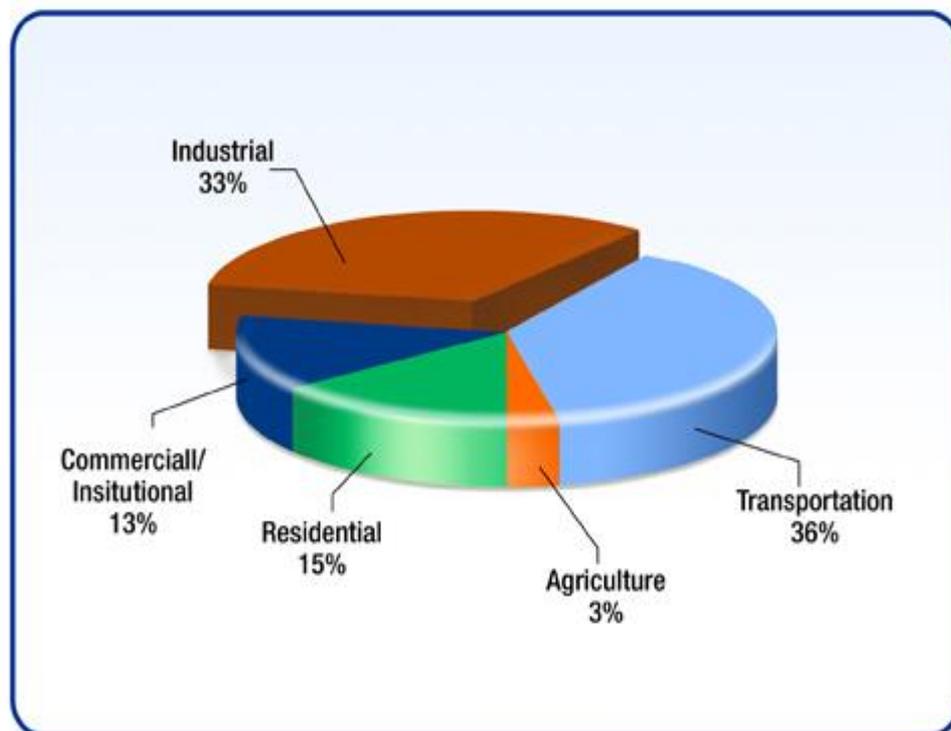
Proportions in economy in Canada

CANADA'S HEALTH SYSTEM

All levels of government share the responsibility for social welfare in Canada. The federal government administers comprehensive income-maintenance measures, such as the Canada Pension Plan, Canada Assistance Plan, old-age security pensions, family allowances, youth allowances, and unemployment insurance, in which nationwide coordination is necessary.

The federal government gives aid to the provinces in meeting the costs of public assistance; it also provides services for special groups, such as Native Americans, veterans, and immigrants.

Administration of welfare services is mainly the responsibility of the provinces, but local authorities, generally with financial aid from the province, often assume the provision of services.

Provincial governments have the major responsibility for education and health services in Canada, with municipalities also assuming authority over matters delegated to them by provincial legislation. Health and Welfare Canada is the chief federal agency in health matters.

The Medical Care Act, passed in 1966, has permitted the federal government to contribute about half the cost of the Medical Care Insurance Program (Medicare), with the respective province contributing the remainder. The program establishes the minimum criteria: (1) comprehensive coverage, to cover all medically required services rendered by physicians and surgeons; (2) universal availability to all residents; (3) portability, to cover temporary or permanent change in residence to another province; and (4) nonprofit basis.

Canadians enjoy one of the lowest rates of infant mortality in the industrialized world and one of the highest life expectances – a child born in 1994 could expect to live 78.2 years. This favourable health status can in part be attributed to our national health care system. Canada's health system is financed by public money, but delivered by private practitioners in an interlocking set of ten provincial and two territorial health insurance plans. The system was designed to provide universal access to coverage for medically necessary hospital, in-patient and out -patient physician services.

A Federal-Provincial Partnership

Constitutionally, responsibility for health care belongs to provincial and territorial governments, however the system is referred to as a national health insurance plan because all of the provincial and territorial hospital and medical insurance plans are linked through principles defined nationally.

Each province or territory manages and delivers health services for their own residents. They plan, finance and evaluate the provision of hospital care, physician or other health care services, some aspects of prescription care and public health. The federal government's role is to set and administer national standards of care (under the Canada Health Act for example), help finance provincial services through transfer payments, and fulfil its responsibilities to provide health services to veterans, native Canadians living on reserves, military personnel, inmates of federal penitentiaries and the RCMP.

How does the system work?

When Canadians need medical care, most go to the physician or clinic of their choice and present the health insurance card issued to all eligible residents of the province. Canadians do not pay directly for insured hospital or physician's services. Instead, their doctors, as private practitioners, are paid on a fee for service basis and submit their claims to the provincial plan for payment.

The doctors are not employed by the government: most work in independent or group private practices and enjoy a high degree of autonomy. Other doctors work in community health centres, hospital-based group practices or with hospital out-patient departments.

In the hospital sector, over 95% of Canadian hospitals are private, non-profit institutions run by community-based boards. Hospitals have control of the day-to-day allocation of resources provided they stay within their operating budgets. Hospitals are primarily accountable to the communities they serve, not to the provincial bureaucracy. The for-profit hospital sector is made up mostly of long-term care facilities or specialized services such as addiction centres.

In addition to insured hospital and physician services, provinces and territories also provide public coverage for health services outside the national health insurance framework for certain population groups (seniors, children or welfare recipients).

These supplementary health benefits can include prescription drugs, dental care, vision care, or equipment and appliances. Supplementary health services are usually privately financed and Canadians must pay extra for non-insured health benefits (such as private rooms in hospitals).

Under most provincial laws, private insurers are forbidden to offer coverage that duplicates services provided by the Canadian health system.

How is the system financed?

Canada's health system is financed mostly through taxation, in the form of provincial and federal personal and corporate income taxes. Some provinces use additional funding methods such as sales taxes, payroll levies or lottery proceeds to add revenue. Alberta and British Columbia collect health care premiums. These premiums are not set according to the payer's need of the system, nor are payment a pre-condition for treatment.

Performance of the service sector

The services-producing industries include community, business and personal services industries (51,5% of all service employment), trade (23,7%), transportation, storage and communications (8,5%), public administration (8,2%) and finance, insurance and real estate (8,1%). While employment growth in 1996 was fairly poor for the entire service sector, the core of community, business and personal services posted only a dismal 1% growth – due largely to falling employment in educational, health and social services. In contrast, business and personal services grew by 2,6%.

Canada's food guide to healthy eating

Canada's Food Guide, revised in November of 1992, recognizes that the amount of food each Canadian needs every day from the four food groups and other foods depends on age, body size, activity level, whether the individual is male or female, and if the individual is pregnant or breast-feeding. That's why the Food Guide gives a range of possible servings for each food group – young children can choose the lower number recommended servings from a particular group, while male teenagers can go to the higher number. Most other people can choose servings somewhere in between.

Canada's food guide recommends every day:

- 5 to 12 servings from the grain products group. An example of one serving would be one slice of bread; 30g of cold cereal or 175 ml of hot cereal. Two servings would be a bagel, pita or bun; or 250 ml of rice or pasta.
- 5 to 10 servings of vegetables and fruit. One serving would be one medium size vegetable or fruit; 125 ml of fresh, frozen or canned vegetables or fruit; 250 ml of salad; or 125 ml of rice.
- 2 to 3 servings of meat or alternatives. One serving would be 50-100 g of meat, poultry or fish; 1-2 eggs; 125-250 ml of beans; 100 g of tofu; or 30 ml of peanut butter.
- Recommended servings of milk products vary according to age: 2-3 servings for children aged 4-9; 3-4 servings for young people aged 10-16; 2-4 servings for adults; and 3-4 servings for pregnant or breast-feeding women. Examples of one serving would be 250 ml of milk; 50 g of cheese or 175 g of yoghurt.

Taste and enjoyment can also come from other foods and beverages that are not part of the four food groups. Some of these foods are higher in fat or calories, so it is recommended that these foods he used in moderation. The important things to remember are: enjoy a variety of foods from each group every day and choose lower-fat foods more often.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Make up some dialogues from the information above.

CANADA'S LABOUR MOVEMENT IN THE 1990'S

During the first half of 1997, Statistics Canada reported that nearly one-third (just over 3,5 mln.) Canadian workers belonged to a union. Another 332,000 employers were not union members, but were covered by collective bargaining agreements.

Unions remained strongest in the public sector where 73% of workers belonged compared to 22% in the private sector. (Public sector employees account for only 19% of Canada's employees, but they are 43% of Canada's union membership). Newfoundland and Quebec have the highest unionisation rates; Ontario and the Maritimes are below average, and Alberta has the lowest.

SOCIAL SECURITY

Canada assistance plan

The Canada Assistance Plan (CAP), introduced in 1996, was replaced by the Canada Health and Social Transfer as of April 1. 1996. CAP enabled the federal government to contribute to shareable costs incurred by provinces, territories and municipalities in providing social assistance and welfare services to March 31, 1996. Due to the magnitude of the CAP programs, and the complexity of setting all outstanding provincial claims, the CAP Act will not officially be repealed until March 31, 2000.

The provinces are responsible for the design and administration of social assistance programs.

While all these programs have key features in common, each is governed by its own set of regulations, and these vary from province to province.

The new EL system consists of two parts – Income Benefits and Active Re-employment Benefits.

El Income Benefits provide temporary income support for claimants while they look for work. Eligibility requirements are structures to include part-time as well as full-timework. Starting in 1997, every hour of work, including part-time, will count towards determining eligibility. Also a new Family Income Supplement will increase benefits for low-income claimants with children.

Active Re-employment Benefits: Unemployed workers will receive help returning to work through a set of active re – employment benefits and support measures. Beginning in 1996, targeted wage subsides, self-employment assistance and job creation partnerships were made available in all provinces and territories. Targeted earnings supplements will be tested in various regions across Canada before they are more widely available. Skills loans and grants will be implemented with the agreement of an individual province and territory.

Eligibility: Claimants will require 12 to 20 weeks of work within a 52-week period, depending on the local unemployment rate. The higher the rate, the fewer weeks of work are required. Some claimants will require 26 weeks of work to be eligible to receive employment insurance if they are entering the workforce for the first time or are entering the workforce. To qualify for sickness, maternity or parental benefits, all claimants still require 20 weeks of work regardless of where they live.

Income Benefits: Claimants will receive 55% of their average insured earnings to a maximum of $ 413 per week. Insurable earnings will be based on earnings in the last 12 to 20 weeks of work prior to filing a claim.

Maximum Claim Period: For claimants with 40 or more weeks of work, and who are in regions where the unemployment rate is higher than 10% the maximum claim period will be 45 weeks. However, for most people the length of their eligibility will not change.

Intensity Rule: The Intensity Rule applies to claimants who use El frequently. For every additional 20 weeks of benefits after the first 20 weeks collected in a five-year period, the claimant's regular benefit rate will be reduced by 1%, to a maximum of 5%. Any weeks of benefits collected after 1996 will be taken into account for determining the benefit rate for future claims. Claimants receiving the Family Income Supplement will be exempt from the Intensity Rule.

Exercise 1. Illustrate the advantages and disadventages of Canadian assistance plan.

CANADA & QUEBEC PENSION PLAN

The Canada and Quebec Pension Plan were instituted in 1996 to provide benefits to Canadians who have contributed to the plan during their working lives. Both plans pay a monthly retirement benefit in addition to a one-time death benefit, survivor benefits for the spouse and dependent children of a deceased contributor and benefits to the severely disabled and their families.

Payments to the plan are made by all workers between the ages of 18 and the time they claim retirement (between the ages of 60 and 70). Payments are based on a contribution rate, which in 1996 was 5.6% of "pensionable earnings". This payment is shared equally by employers and employees; self-employed persons must pay the entire amount themselves. The contribution rate is scheduled to increase steadily, reaching 9.1% in 2011. Contributions are not paid if income falls below an annual minimum ($ 3500 in 1997) or on income above an annual maximum ($ 35800 in 1997).

Retirement benefits from the plan are based on lifetime earnings and generally amount to 25% of average annual income, adjusted for inflation. The maximum monthly benefit at age 65 in 1997 was $ 736.81. Spouses in a continuing marriage and partners in a common-law relationship may apply to receive an equal share of the retirement pension earned by both parties during their life together.

A provision that allows divorced couples to divide CPP credits earned during marriage was introduced in 1978. On January1, 1987, the provision was expanded to include legally-separated married spouses and those living in a common – law union. In March 1991 a further amendment allowed those previously denied a division due to a property waiver to have their situation remedied.

Since January 1987, Canadian eligible for CPP benefits that retire before age 65 can receive partial pensions beginning as early as age 60. Those who begin collecting at 60 receive 70% of the amount they would be entitled to at age 65.

For each month past age 60 that a person delays retirement, an additional half percentage point is added – so that someone retiring at age 61 would receive 76 of their full (age 65) pension while someone postponing retirement to age 70 would receive 130 %.

The Canada Pension Plan is administered by the federal government while the Quebec Pension Plan is administered b the Government of Quebec's Pension Board. Essentially the same rules and benefits apply to each.

OLD AGE SECURITY, GUARANTEED INCOME SUPPLEMENT & SPOUSE'S ALLOWANCE

The Old Age Security (OAS) program, introduced in 1952, provides pensions to persons 65 years and older who meet Canadian residence requirements. Full monthly pensions ($ 403,51 per month as of April 1, 1997) are given to persons who have lived in Canada for 40 years since the age of 18; some persons who have lived in Canada for 10 consecutive years are also eligible for full pensions. Partial pensions, introduced in 1977, are based on the number of years a pensioner has lived in Canada. The Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) was introduced in 1966 to assist those with little or no income other than their OAS pension. The amount of income supplement depends upon the pensioner's income, marital status and spouse's income.

Generally, the maximum GIS payment is reduced by $1 for every $ 2 of income a pensioner has above his / her old age security pension. For example, in April 1997 a single pensioner with no personal income received OAS benefits of $ 403,51 per month and an income supplement of $ 479,53 per month. If this person had a private pension of $ 400 per month, the GIS would be reduced $ 200 to $ 279,53 per month. Spouse's Allowance (SPA) benefits are payable to person's aged 60 to 64 whose spouses have died or those with low income whose spouse receives an Old Age Security pension.

Like Guaranteed Income Supplement benefits, the amount of the SPA benefit is dependent on income and marital status. The maximum SPA benefit payable in April 1997 was $ 790, 31 for widows and widowers and $ 715,86 for spouses of OAS pensioners.

EDUCATION

According to a 2012 report by the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), Canada is the most educated country in the world; the country ranks first worldwide in the number of adults having tertiary education, with 51 % of Canadian adults having attained at least an undergraduate college or university degree. Canada spends about 5.3% of its GDP on education.

The country invests heavily in tertiary education (more than 20 000 USD per student). As of 2014, 89 % of adults aged 25 to 64 have earned the equivalent of a high-school degree, compared to an OECD average of 75%. Since the adoption of section 23 of the Constitution Act, 1982, education in both English and French has been available in most places across Canada.

Canadian provinces and territories are responsible for education provision. The mandatory school age ranges between 5-7 to 16-18 years, contributing to an adult literacy rate of 99 %.

In 2002, 43 % of Canadians aged 25 to 64 possessed a post-secondary education; for those aged 25 to 34, the rate of post-secondary education reached 51 %.

The Programme for International Student Assessment indicates that Canadian students perform well above the OECD average, particularly in mathematics, science, and reading.

The earliest Canadian schools, which were conducted by French Catholic religious orders, date from the early 17th century. Higher education was inaugurated in 1635 with the founding of the collage des Jesuits in the city of Quebec. It was not until the transfer of Canada from French to British jurisdiction in 1763 that an educational system began to emerge that encompassed church, governmental, and private secular schools. The early 19th century saw the establishment of the large universities, beginning with McGill University in 1821 and followed by the University of Toronto in 1827 and the University of Ottawa in 1848.

Since World War II ended in 1945, a notable expansion in higher education has occurred.

Many new institutions have been founded, and the older universities have increased in size, scope, and influence. The federal and provincial governments fund the university system in Canada, and students pay only a small portion of the cost. Universities are still the predominant institutions offering higher education, but the number of no university post-secondary institutions, particularly community colleges, has increased sharply in recent decades.

The educational system in Canada is derived from the British and American traditions and the French tradition, the latter particularly in the province of Quebec. English or French is the language of instruction, and some schools provide instruction in both official languages. Each of the ten provinces has responsibility for establishing and maintaining its own school system.

In Quebec, the French-Canadian tradition is followed by the Roman Catholic schools.

The province also maintains Protestant schools, however, which are widely attended. Although Canada does not have a central ministry of education, the federal government provides schools for children of Native Americans on reserves, inmates of federal penitentiaries, and the children of military personnel. Under the Constitution Act the organization and administration of public education are provincial responsibilities. The federal government is directly concerned only with the provision of education in the Yukon and Northwest territories, in Indian schools throughout Canada, for inmates of federal penitentiaries, for the families of members of the Canadian forces on military stations, and for the operations of three military colleges. In addition, it finances vocational training of adults and provides financial supports to the provinces for the operating costs of post-secondary education.

Because each of the 10 provinces has the authority and responsibility for organizing its education system as it sees fit, policies and practices vary from province to province, but each has a department of education headed by a minister who is a member of the provincial Cabinet.

In addition, Ontario has a Department of Colleges and Universities with a minister of its own.

Most Canadian children have one year of kindergarten before they enter an eight-grade elementary school at age 6 or 7.

At 14 years of age, 90 % of those who entered grade 1 enter a regular four-year secondary school.

Traditionally, a higher education was chiefly the preserve of universities. Education is generally compulsory for children from ages 6 or 7 to ages 15 or 16, depending on the province in which they live, and it is free until the completion of secondary school studies.

In the early 1990s Canada had more than 16,000 elementary and secondary schools, with a total enrollment of nearly 5.3 million students. In the early 1990s Canada maintained 19 specialized schools for the blind and the deaf. These institutions together enrolled about 2400 pupils, who were instructed by some 575 teachers. Canada had several schools for mentally handicapped children.

Nursing education, formerly concentrated at special schools attached to hospitals, has been transferred to community colleges, which numbered 203 in the early 1990s. Similarly, teacher training has been shifted from specialized institutions to colleges and universities.

Now, although universities still account for about 60% of full-time students, post secondary education is available in institutions without degree-granting status – regional colleges in British Columbia, institutes of technology in Alberta, institutes of applied arts and technology in Ontario, and community colleges in Quebec.

Elementary
Grade 1 to 6

High School
Grade 7 to 11

CEGEP
Grade 12 - Univ 1 OR
3 Year Vocational Degree

University
3 Year Bachelors
5 Year Masters
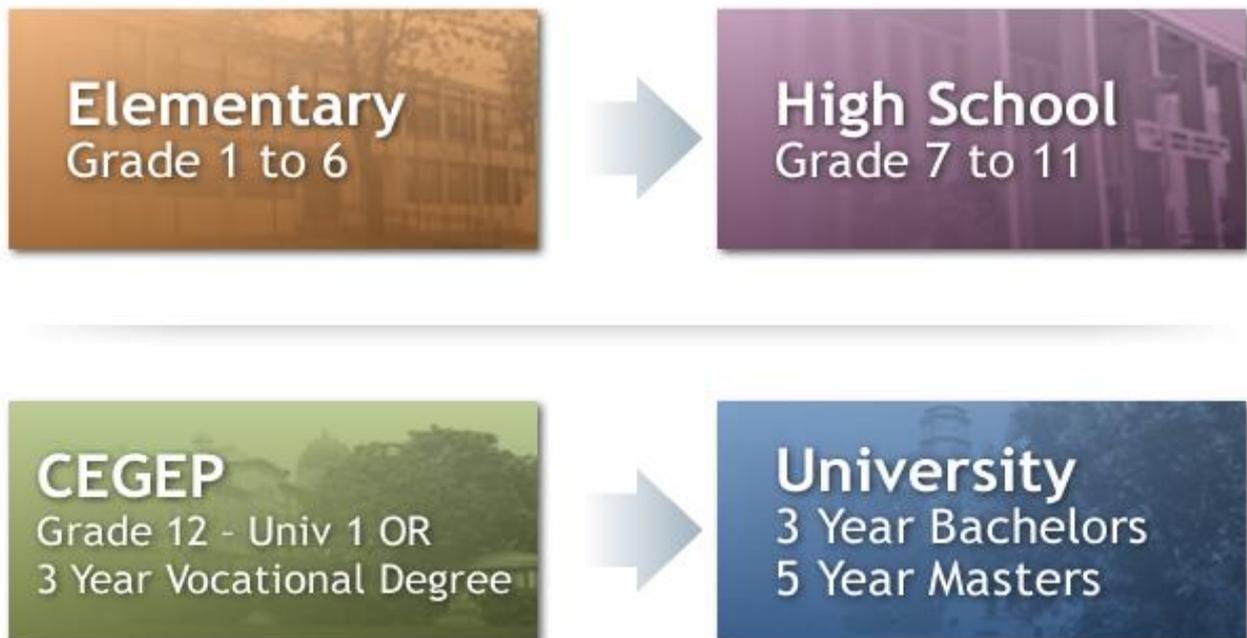
In the early 1990s Canada had 69 degree-granting universities and colleges, which together enrolled some 572,900 full-time students with many faculties and research institutes and more than 40,000 students, such as the University de Quebek (a multicampas university), the University of Toronto, and the University of British Columbia. Among the country's larger universities are the following:

- the University of Alberta (1906) & the University of Calgary (1945), in Alberta;
- the University of British Columbia (1908) & Simon Friseur University (1963), in British Columbia;
- the University of Manitoba (1877); the University of Monkton (1864) & the University of New Brunswick (1785), in New Brunswick;
- Memorial University of Newfoundland (1925);
- Acadia University (1838) & Dollhouse University (1818), in Nova Scotia;
- Carleton University (1942), McMaster University (1887), the University of Ottawa (1848), the University of Toronto (1827), the University of Waterloo (1957), & York University (1959), in Ontario;
- the University of Prince Edward Island (1969); Concord University (1974), Laval University(1852), McGill University (1821), the University of Montreal (1878), & the University of Quebec (1968), in the city of Quebec; & the University of Saskatchewan (1907).

The oldest university in Canada, Lavan, in Quebek, was founded during the French regime.

Universities in English-speaking Canada were established after the American Revolution.

University of King's College in Nova Scotia and what is now the University of New Brunswick were patterned after King's College (Columbia University) in pre-Revolutionary New York City.

Most other universities in pioneer days were begun by churches, but almost ail have since become secular and entirely financially dependent on the provincially dependent on the provincial governments. In the 1960s Ontario established a number of new post secondary institutions.

One of the new universities, the University of Waterloo, has a cooperative program (alternating academic and work terms) and has gained an international reputation in mathematics, computer science, and remote sensing. There are no truly private universities in Canada.

A somewhat unusual characteristic has been the system of "affiliated colleges" linked to a "parent" degree-granting institution even though separated from it physically. English is the language of instruction at most places, French in several, and a few are bilingual.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Event	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

Doctoral Degrees (3+ Years)

Master's Degrees (1-3 Years)

Bachelor's Degrees (1-4 Years)

University

Diploma

Community College (1-4 Years)

Apprenticeship Vocational & Technical Training (1-4 Years)

Six Grade 12 University Prep Courses & Strong Secondary School Grades

Ontario Secondary School Diploma

SecondarySchool Ages 12-18 (6 Years)

Primary School Ages 6-12 (6 Years)

Early Childhood Education Ages 4-5

Doctorate (3+ years)

Master's (1-3 years)

9+ years

College Diploma (1-4 years)

Bachelor's (3-4 years)

Apprenticeship/ Vocational & Technical Training (1 to 4 years)

High School

TRADITIONS

The winter holiday season is the most festive time of the year in Canada. Canadian people start celebrating Christmas Day on December 25. In Canada the spirit of Christmas arrives about a month before the holiday itself. Late in November streetlights and store windows are decorated with the traditional Christmas colours of red and green. Santa Claus, shepherds, angels appear in shop windows.

Winter scenes with snowman, skaters and skiers decorate cards and windows. To earn extra money for gifts in December many Canadians get part-time jobs delivering mail of selling gifts trees ornaments, or greeting cards. Many families go to Church on Christmas Eve and Christmas   morning.

After services, they gather around the tree and open their gifts. Then they sit down to enjoy a traditional Christmas dinner – turkey or ham, potatoes, vegetables and cranberry sauce.

Dessert is usually fruitcake, plum pudding or mince pie. Many   Canadian children believe that on Christmas Eve Santa Claus (a fat, jolly man who wears a red suit, red hat and long white beard) slides down their chimney to bring them gifts. As in Great Britain, Canadian children   hang stockings by the fireplace, hoping that Santa Claus will fill them with candy and toys.

On Christmas Day everyone sings Christmas Carols and sends Christmas Cards with greetings to friends and relatives. Every December 31 is New Yea's Day. This day has traditionally been the occasion for starting new programmes and giving up bad habits. Many Canadians take New Year resolutions, promising to improve their behaviour.

Typical New Year resolutions are to spend less money, give up smoking, begin a diet or control one's temper. From the ancient times to the present New Year's customs have been connected with saying good-bye to the past and looking forward to a better future. St. Valentine Day falls on February 14. People used to send cards called valentines to members of opposite sex.

There seems to be no limit to the variety of cards. They are happy or sad, romantic or humorous, serious or ridiculous. But you must not say who you are in the card.

The person receiving it must be left to wonder. There used to be a custom in Canada on St. Valentine Day: the name of boys and girls are mixed up and drawn out by chance. The person whose name comes after yours is your Valentine for the year. April the first is known as All Fool's Day.

To some people it is a favourite holiday on which jokes are played. Some of them are used so often that they now become traditional. One can tell somebody that something is wrong with his or her dress when in fact all is in order. It is a merry holiday of ails ages children and grown-ups. July 1 is Canada Day is Canadian National holiday.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Tradition	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

STATUARY HOLIDAYS IN THE PROVINCES & TERRITORIES

Newfoundland
St. Patrick's Day   March 16
St. George's DaY   April   20
Civic Holiday August 3
Memorial Day June   29
Civic Holiday   August 3
Regatta Day / Civic Holiday
Prince Edward Island
Natal DaY   August 3
Nova Scotia
Heritage Day   August 3
Yukon Territory
Discovery Day   August
Northewest Territory
National Day   June 24

Ontario
Civic Holiday   August 3
Manitoba
Discovery Day   June   22
Saskatchewan
Orangemen's Day   July 13
fixed by municipal council orders
Alberta
Alberta Family Day February 16
British Columbia
British Columbia Day   August 3
New Brunswick
New Brunswick Day   August 3
Quebec
Civic Holiday. August 3

SPECIAL BIRTHDAY & ANNIVERSARY GREETINGS

▪ Greetings from the **Prime Minister** are sent on the occasion of a 25th wedding anniversary or a 70th birthday.

▪ Greetings from the **Governor General** are sent on the occasion of a 50th wedding anniversary or a 90th or 95th birthday.

▪ Greetings from Her Majesty the Queen are sent on the occasion of a 60th wedding anniversary or a 100th birthday.

ANNIVERSARY GIFTS

Some traditional suggestions when you just don't know what to get for that special anniversary.

1st …………………….paper, wine, flowers	13th ……………………………..lace, clocks
2nd ………………….cotton, books	14th …………………………..ivory, iron, steel
3rd …………………..leather, house plants	15th …………………………..crystal, peals
4th…………………….fruit, flowers, pottery	20th …………………………..Chinaware
5th ……………….wood, crystal, glass	25th …………………………..silver
6th …………………iron wood	30th …………………………..peal, coral
7th …………………cooper, wool	35th …………………………..coral, jade
8th ………………..bronze, wood	40th …………………………..ruby
9th ………………….pottery, willow, leather	45th …………………………..sapphire
10th ………………aluminium, art	50th …………………………..gold
11th ………………steel, Gourmet Cookware	55th …………………………..emerald

NATIONAL PUBLIC HOLIDAYS & OTHER IMPORTANT DATES

- New Year's Day – January 1
- Sir John A. Macdonald Day – January 11
- Good Friday – Friday immediately preceding Easter Sunday
- Easter Monday – Monday immediately following Easter Sunday
- Vimy Day – April 9
- Victoria Day – Monday preceding May 25 (Sovereign's Birthday)
- Fête Nationale (Quebec) – June 24 (Feast of St. John the Baptist)
- Canada Day – July 1
- Labour Day – First Monday of September
- Thanksgiving Day – Second Monday of October
- Remembrance Day – November 11
- Sir Wilfrid Laurier Day – November 20
- Christmas Day – December 25
- Boxing Day – December 26

Exercise 1. Render the main idea of the information.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Public Holiday	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

UNITII. ENTERTAINMENT

INTRODUCTION

Canadian artists have a long history of achievement in which Canadians take pride. Artists from all regions reflect and define our culture and forms of creative expression and have achieved greatness both at home and abroad.

Canadians have made significant contributions to literature in English and in French. Novelists, poets, historians, educators and musicians have had a significant cultural impact. Men and women of letters included Stephen Leacock, Louis Hémon, Sir Charles G.D. Roberts, Pauline Johnson, Émile Nelligan, Robertson Davies, Margaret Laurence and Mordecai Richler. Musicians such as Sir Ernest MacMillan and Healey Willan won renown in Canada and abroad. Writers such as Joy Kogawa, Michael Ondaatje and Rohinton Mistry have diversified Canada's literary experience.

In the visual arts, Canada is historically perhaps best known for the Group of Seven, founded in 1920, who developed a style of painting to capture the rugged wilderness landscapes.

Emily Carr painted the forests and Aboriginal artifacts of the West Coast. *Les Automatistes* of Quebec were pioneers of modern abstract art in the 1950s, most notably Jean-Paul Riopelle.

Quebec's Louis-Philippe Hébert was a celebrated sculptor of historical figures. Kenojuak Ashevak pioneered modern Inuit art with etchings, prints and soapstone sculptures.

Canada has a long and respected performing arts history, with a network of regional theatres and world-renowned performing arts companies.

The films of Denys Arcand have been popular in Quebec and across the country, and have won international awards. Other noteworthy Canadian filmmakers include Norman Jewison and Atom Egoyan. Canadian television has had a popular following.

Sports have flourished as all provinces and territories have produced amateur and professional star athletes and Olympic medal winners. Basketball was invented by Canadian James Naismith in 1891. Many major league sports boast Canadian talent and in the national sport of ice hockey, Canadian teams have dominated the world. In 1996 at the Olympic Summer Games, Donovan Bailey became a world record sprinter and double Olympic gold medallist. Chantal Petitclerc became a world champion wheelchair racer and Paralympic gold medalist. One of the greatest hockey players of all time, Wayne Gretzky, played for the Edmonton Oilers from 1979 to 1988.

In 1980, Terry Fox, a British Columbian who lost his right leg to cancer at the age of 18, began a cross-country run, the "Marathon of Hope", to raise money for cancer research. He became a hero to Canadians. While he did not finish the run and ultimately lost his battle with cancer, his legacy continues through yearly fundraising events in his name. In 1985, fellow British Columbian Rick Hansen circled the globe in a wheelchair to raise funds for spinal cord research.

Canadian advances in science and technology are world renowned and have changed the way the world communicates and does business. Marshall McLuhan and Harold Innis were pioneer thinkers.

Science and research in Canada have won international recognition and attracted world-class students, academics and entrepreneurs engaged in medical research, telecommunications and other fields. Since 1989, the Canadian Space Agency and Canadian astronauts have participated in space exploration, often using the Canadian-designed and built Canadarm. Gerhard Herzberg, a refugee from Nazi Germany, John Polanyi, Sidney Altman, Richard E. Taylor, Michael Smith and Bertram Brockhouse were Nobel Prize-winning scientists.

CULTURAL LIFE & INSTITUTIONS

The federal government especially encourages the arts through the Canada Council, established in 1957, which awards fellowships and grants. It favors decentralizing policies that bring cultural resources within reach of the most isolated communities.

Since 1972 it has supported a multicultural policy to reflect the varied influences that make up the mosaic of Canadian life, including the culture of aboriginal peoples.

The *Gemini Awards* were established in 1986 to honour outstanding contribution to the Canadian television industry. Given out annually by the Academy of Canadian Cinema and Television the Geminis grew out of the former ACTRA Awards, last presented in 1985.

The *Juno Awards* were established in 1975 to honour achievement in the Canadian recording industry. The name was chosen to honour Pierre Juneau, former head of the Canadian Radio – television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC), which instituted "Canadian content" requirements in the nation's broadcast industry. Nominations for most major Juno categories are determined by record sales, the actual winners are selected by a vote of members of the Canadian Academy of Recording Arts & Sciences.

There were no awards; the presentation of the Junos was moved from the fall to the spring so that the next awards were presented in the spring of 1989. The 1989 awards cover 1988 releases.

Awards and citations from the CCMA are presented during Country Music Week, which was held in Calgary since1981. In 1992 it was broadcasted in the US and Europe.

Stephen Butler Leacock was born in England in 1869. His education included Upper Canada College, a B.A. at U of T, and a Ph.D from the University of Chicago. He taught at UCC, and later lectured in political science at McGill. His literary output included works in history, economics and political science, although by far the most popular were his humour books. By the time of his death in 1944, he was the best-known humourist in the English-speaking world.

Canada's highest award for humour is named in Leacock's humour and is given annually at a ceremony in his hometown of Orillia, Ontario. The Canadian Academy of recording Arts and Sciences instituted a Hall of Fame Award in 1978 to honour Canadians who have contributed to the greater international recognition of Canadian artists and music.

```
                    THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF CANADA

        ACADEMY I:              ACADEMY II:            ACADEMY III:
     Academy of Arts           Academy of               Academy
      and Humanities         Social Sciences           of Science

  Division I:   Division II:   Division III:   Division I:   Division II:   Division of    Division of    Division   Division of
  Humanities    Lettres et     The Arts /      Social        Sciences      Applied        Earth,         of         Mathematical
                Sciences       Les Arts        Sciences      Sociales      Sciences and   Ocean, and     Life       and Physical
                Humaines                                                   Engineering    Atmospheric    Sciences   Sciences
                                                                                          Sciences
```

GALLERIES & MUSEUMS

The Group of Seven held its first exhibition at the Art Gallery of Toronto in May 1920.

The original members included J. E. H. MacDonald, Lawren Harris, A. Y. Jackson, Arthur Lismer, F. H. Varley, Frank Johnston and Franklin Carmichael. In 1924, Johnston resigned from the Group and, in 1926; A. J. Casson was invited to join. In the later years of the Group, two new members, Edwin Holgate and Lionel Lemoine Fitz Gerald, were added.

The Group held its final exhibition in December 1931 and disbanded in 1932. Tom Thomson, who drowned in 1917, was never a member of the Group of Seven, though his boldly-coloured works depicting the rugged landscape of northern Ontario became associated with its style of painting.

By breaking with the traditional, European painting style popular in Canada in the 1920s, The Group of Seven made a huge impact on Canadian art. Although originally reviled by and popularity by the 1930s. Today, the Group's paintings are exhibited in every major gallery in Canada.

MAJOR PUBLIC GALLERIES IN CANADA

Art Gallery of Greater Victoria

Art Gallery of Nova Scotia

Art Gallery of Ontario

Art Gallery of Windsor

Beaverbrook Art Gallery

Confederation Centre Art Gallery & Museum

Edmonton Art Gallery

Thunder Bay Art Gallery

Vancouver Art Gallery

McMichael Canadian Art Collection

Montreal Museum of Fine Arts

Musee d'Art Contemporain de Montreal

Musee du Quebec

National Gallery of Canada

Dunion Art Gallery

London Regional Art & Historical Museum

Winnipeg Art Gallery

MUSEUMS & LIBRARIES

Of Canada's more than 2100 museums, archives, and historic sites, the most important are in the National Capital Region. These include, in Hull, Quebec, the Canadian Museum of Civilization, which celebrates Canada's multicultural heritage; and, in Ottawa, the Canadian Museum of Nature, the National Museum of Science and Technology, and the National Gallery of Canada. The latter exhibits European art, a growing collection of Asian art, and a large body of work by Canadians. The National Museum Policy has encouraged and supported the growth of regional museums.

The ***Royal Ontario Museum*** in Toronto has collections of art, life and earth sciences, and Canadian. Among more specialized museums are Upper Canada Village, a restoration of 18th- and 19th-century buildings in Morrisburg, Ontario; the Royal Canadian Mounted Police Museum, in Regina, Saskatchewan; and the Royal British Columbia Museum, in Victoria, which contains important displays of Native American artefacts.

The ***National Library*** of Canada, in Ottawa, issues the national bibliography and maintains union catalogs of the collections of more than 300 other libraries. Its holdings, including a comprehensive collection of Canadian newspapers, exceed 14.5 million items.

The Canada Institute for Scientific and Technical Information, also in Ottawa, is the centre for the dissemination of scientific and technical data. Provinces and cities have their own libraries. Particularly outstanding university libraries are those of McGill, Toronto, British Columbia.

Exercise 1. Retell in your own words the score of the information above.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.

	Cultural object	When	Where	Score
1.				

LITERATURE

Canadian literature is often divided into French- and English-language literatures, which are rooted in the literary traditions of France and Britain, respectively. There are four major themes that can be found within historical Canadian literature; nature, frontier life, Canada's position within the world, all three of which tie into the garrison mentality. By the 1990s, Canadian literature was viewed as some of the world's best. Canada's ethnic and cultural diversity are reflected in its literature, with many of its most prominent modern writers focusing on ethnic life. Arguably, the best-known living Canadian writer internationally is Margaret Atwood, a prolific novelist, poet, and literary critic.

Numerous other Canadian authors have accumulated international literary awards; including Nobel Laureate Alice Munro, who has been called the best living writer of short stories in English; and Booker Prize recipient Michael Ondaatje, who is perhaps best known for the novel *The English Patient*, which was adapted as a film of the same name that won the Academy Award for Best Picture.

Canadian literature reflects the varied background of Canada's people and the diverse geography and regions of the country. During the late 1600's and 1700's, colonists from both France and England established the first permanent European settlements in Canada.

Since that time, most Canadian literature has been written in French or English – the nation's two official languages Canadian literature, after the French – speaking province of Quebec.

One of the central themes of Canadian writers is the "idea of North". Images of Canada's awe – inspiring northern landscape dominate its literary history.

These images appeared as early as the travel narratives of the mid-1500's and continue in Canadian writing today. Sense of moving east, west, or north and of making human contact in the face of an indifferent nature also shapes Canadian writing.

The literature helps link the vast nation of urban centres and small towns. It also sends people from the prairies on voyages of discovery father west to the Pacific coast. Like many nations with colonial beginnings, Canada has struggled to create its own identity.

This struggle appears in a long tradition of writers who have developed Canadian voices to express the experience of being in Canada. Their books enable Canadians to understand who they are and to interpret themselves to the world. A Canadian voice began to emerge slowly in Canadian literature in the 00's and blossomed after the end of World War II in 1945.

The publication of Canadian literature in languages other than English and French is another sign of the growth of a distinct Canadian voice.

The nation of Canada as a nation of duality characterizes its literature. Canadians focus on both their central government and their distinctive regions.

They have two official languages. In addition, Canadians have conflicting feelings about the USA – a country with which they have much in common, but against which they define themselves. Author Margaret Atwood has said that to live in Canada is to choose a "violent duality".

This quality is a constant theme and challenge for Canadian writers.

The history of Canadian literature is interesting chiefly as the record of the attempts of a young nation to establish its own identity, to find its own language, and to come to terms with its own environment. There are as yet no giants, no great world figures, among Canadian writers.

A few writers – Thomas Chandler Haliburton (1796-1865) and Louis Honore Frechette (1839-1908) in the 19th century, Gilberte Parker (1862-1932), Bliss Carman (11861-1929), Stephen Leacock (1869-1944), and Louis Hemon (1880-1913) in the early 20th century, and most recently Mazo de la Koche (1885-1961), Malcolm Lowry (1909-1957), Ethel Wilson (1890), Margaret Laurence (1926) have earned international reputations, but in most cases their reputations have faded with time.

There are other writers whom Canadians cherish, sometimes as much as if not more than those who are internationally known; but no one would claim that any of these writers are in the first rank by world standards.

The quantity and quality of Canadian writings have made steady progress, and recently spectacular progress, but it has not yet achieved a level of rivalry with the great literatures of such countries as France, England, Russia, and the USA.

This fact is partly attributable to the youth of Canada, which celebrated its first centennial in 1967. But there are other reasons. The country and its culture have had to grow up in the shadow of its two founding nations – England and France – and of its great neighbour, the USA.

It has been difficult to avoid merely imitating these exemplars, and to find a distinctive Canadianism, which is not a mere compromise between French, English and American ways.

Futhermore, unlike the USA and France, Canada has had no revolution, has undergone no great national crisis to shock it into self-awareness.

The minor crises of Canadian history – the Conquest of 1759, the war of 1812, the Rebellions of 1837, Confederation in 1867, and the two world wars have all stimulated increased cultural activity and hastened the progress of self-definition, but none of them stirred the country to its depths.

The Governor General's Literary Awards

The Canada's foremost literary prizes are presented annually to recognize and reward Canadian writers. The awards were initiated in 1937 by the Canadian Authors' Association with the agreement of Governor General Baron Tweedsmuir (novelist John Buchan), and were administered by the Association until 1958. The Awards are now administered by the Canada Council which appoints juries composed of literary specialists who select the best English- and French-language works in each of 6 categories: drama, fiction, poetry, non-fiction, and beginning in 1987, children's literature (text and illustration) and translation.The juries review all books by Canadian authors, illustrators and translators published in Canada or abroad during the previous year. In the case of translation, the original work must also be a Canadian-authored title. Winners receive a medal from the Governor General, $ 10,000 and a specially-bound copy of their award – winning book.

The *Man Booker Prize for Fiction* (formerly known as the **Booker-McConnell Prize** after the company Booker-McConnell began sponsoring the event in 1968 and commonly known simply as the **Booker Prize**) is aliterary prize awarded each year for the best original novel, written in the English language, and published in the UK. When administration of the prize was transferred to the Booker Prize Foundation in 2002, the title sponsor became the investment company Man Group, which opted to retain "Booker" as part of the official title of the prize. The foundation is an independent registered charity funded by the entire profits of Booker Prize Trading Ltd, of which it is the sole shareholder.

The winner of the Man Booker Prize is generally assured of international renown and success; therefore, the prize is of great significance for the book trade. From its inception, only Commonwealth, Irish, and Zimbabwean citizens were eligible to receive the prize; in 2013, however, this eligibility was widened to any English language novel. Since 1984, the value of the Booker Prize has been £ 15,000.

The Booker Prize is greeted with great anticipation and fanfare. It is also a mark of distinction for authors to be selected for inclusion in theshortlist or even to be nominated for the "longlist".

BOOKS & MAGAZINES & NEWSPAPERS

The Government of Canada is committed to ensuring that readers everywhere have opportunities to connect with a broad range of Canadian-authored books by providing funding and support to the Canadian book industry, professional writers, Canadian periodicals and small publishers.

In 2014, Canada's daily newspaper circulation (paid and free) stood at 5,312,018 copies on an average publishing day and 31,765,434 copies over the course of a week.

There were 91 paid dailies in Canada last year and 13 free dailies for a grand total of 104 daily newspapers. There were eight less daily newspapers publishing by the end of 2014: one paper ceased publishing, two papers merged and six free distribution papers closed.

Currently there are approximately 122 English and French-language daily newspapers in Canada; 95 of these newspapers are paid-for while the remaining 27 papers are free publications.

The largest daily newspaper in Canada is the Toronto Star with a circulation of more than 252,000 paid copies each weekday, about 392,000 on Saturdays and about 276,000 on Sundays. Each week, the Toronto Star sells almost 2 mln. copies.

As of June 2014 there are 1,040 community newspapers in Canada and more than 1,100 editions. Of these papers, 800 are members of the Canadian Community Newspapers Association (CCNA).Community newspapers publish more than 20.6 mln. copies each week and the majority of circulation is free (controlled) accounting for 19.7 million copies weekly. Total circulation is 4.9% higher than last year with the growth coming from controlled circulation papers. Community newspapers publish in both broadsheet and tabloid formats, although 88% of all editions are tabloids.

The most recent research from ComBase demonstrates that community newspaper readership remains strong, with 74% of Canadian adults reading their community newspaper. According to the 2008/2009 study, 25% of community newspaper readers read only their local paper.

According to the latest research data from the Newspaper Audience Databank (NADBank), almost 8 out of 10 adults living in markets where daily newspapers are available read either a printed edition or visited a newspaper website each week. Migration to newspaper websites continues, but the printed edition remains the most popular way to read a newspaper. Across all markets 73% read a printed edition of a daily newspaper each week and 71% of readers read only the printed edition.

The 2010 study also showed that 15 mln. (78% reach) adults read a daily newspaper or visited a newspaper website each week up from 14.7 mln. in 2009.

The Canadian newspaper industry's contribution to environmental sustainability is significant, and we're committed to doing more. Canada is a global leader in waste paper recovery, with some of the highest rates of waste diversion of old newspapers in the world. Canadians recycle 80% of their newsprint. Newspaper suppliers in the Canadian forest industry have reduced green house gas emissions by 10 times what is required under Kyoto (Forest Products Association of Canada). In many provinces, newspapers partner with governments and waste management agencies to get the job done.

Canada lays claim to having the oldest surviving newspaper in North America. The Quebec Gazette was established in Quebec City on June 21, 1764. The Quebec Gazette survives today as the roots of the weekly Quebec Chronicle-Telegraph. The Montreal Gazette is Canada's oldest continuously published newspaper. It was launched on June 3, 1778, by Fleury Mesplet.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Event	When	Where	Score
1.				

THEATRE & MUSIC

The performing arts in Canada are supported by government and private grants. The National Arts Center, in Ottawa, opened in 1969, has a resident symphony orchestra and theater companies in French and English. Visiting opera and dance companies perform there, and in summer its terraces along the Rideau Canal are the scenes of band concerts and arts and crafts fairs.

A number of major theater, opera, dance, and musical groups are found in the large cities; these groups also tour the provinces and travel abroad. The chief theatrical centers are the cities of Quebec, Montreal and Toronto. The theaters of these cities make an effort to present new Canadian plays as well as imports and classics. Opera companies include the Canadian Opera, in Toronto; two companies in Montreal; and six in the west – in Vancouver, Victoria, Calgary, Edmonton, Winnipeg, and Saskatoon. Among the principal dance companies are the National Ballet of Canada, the Royal Winnipeg Ballet, and Les Grand's Ballets Canadians (Montreal).

The Toronto Dance Theatre presents modern dance. The prominent orchestras include the Montreal Symphony, the Toronto Symphony, and the Vancouver Symphony. Canadians and visitors also enjoy summer festivals, such as the Stratford Shakespeare Festival in Ontario; the Shaw Festival at Niagara-on-the-Lake, Ontario; and Cultures Canada, a series of multicultural events in Ottawa.

Local traditions are preserved in the Highland Games on Cape Briton Island, Nova Scotia; the Sherbrooke Festival de Cantons (Quebec), celebrating French-Canadian culture and cuisine; and the Ukrainian Festival in Dauphin, Manitoba. Discovery Day in Damson, Yukon Territory, marks the 1896 discovery of gold. A large variety of smaller festivals are held throughout the country.

Theatre in Canada has a long history, if not a crowded one. In a wilderness sparsely settled late in the 18th century, the stage was recognized as an attribute of civilization, despite some opposition. Early Roman Catholic attempts to discourage this irreverent offspring of the church were followed, more persistently, by a Puritan disapproval that still holds the stage less respectable than sporting events.

The survival of living theatre was threatened more violently by scientific development.

For a thinly populated country, the 20th century media film, radio and television seemed particularly suited. They obviated both the tours between widely separated communities and the organizing of regional productions for limited audiences.

By the third decade of the 20th century, the stage in Canada was almost entirely deserted as a profession. Most determined talents left the country to seek opportunities elsewhere, although a few eventually remained to create a much respected, government -–supported radio theatre, notably in the Canadian Broadcasting Corporations stage series, directed by Andrew Allan.

As the century unfolded, it became apparent that the new media were unique forms of communication and expression, not substitutes for the involvement of actors and audiences is an ancient exchange. Emulating the British acceptance of cultural subsidy by setting up the Canada Council (through the Massey report, 1951) and other bodies, the country began to develop regional theatres, each serving large areas.

The exchange between these was encouraged by the centennial Commission, established to celebrate the 100th anniversary of confederation in 1976. It was planned that such exchanges would be regularized by 1970 with the opening of the National Arts centre in Ottawa.

In addition to housing visiting provincial companies, this was to offer a winter home to the best-known Canadian company, that of the Stratford Festival, and also for a new French – language troupe, to constitute together Canada's National Theatre. Also in 1967, attention was paid to the state of dramatic writing in Canada, until then largely a borrowing nation.

The Dominion Drama festival, the Canadian Theatre Centre and other bodies advanced the production of new plays by Canadians. Principal dramatists up to this point included Robertson Davies, Lister Sinclair, Marcel Dube and Gratien Gelinas.

Exercise 1. Write a brief outline of the theatre and music life in Canada.

The Canadian music industry is the sixth largest in the world producing internationally renowned composers, musicians and ensembles. Music broadcasting in the country is regulated by the CRTC.

The Canadian Academy of Recording Arts and Sciences presents Canada's music industry awards, the Juno Awards, which were first awarded in 1970. The Canadian Music Hall of Fame established in 1976 honours Canadian musicians for their lifetime achievements. Patriotic music in Canada dates back over 200 years as a distinct category from British patriotism, preceding the first legal steps to independence by over 50 years. The earliest, The Bold Canadian, was written in 1812.

The national anthem of Canada, "O Canada", was originally commissioned by the Lieutenant Governor of Quebec, the Honourable Théodore Robitaille, for the 1880 St. Jean-Baptiste Day ceremony, and was officially adopted in 1980. Calixa Lavallée wrote the music, which was a setting of a patriotic poem composed by the poet and judge Sir Adolphe-Basile Routhier. The text was originally only in French, before it was translated to English in 1906.

CANADIAN OPERA COMPANIES

Calgary Opera Association	Opera Lyra Ottawa
Canadian Opera Co.	L' Opera de Montreal
Edmonton Opera Association	Opera Saskatchewan
Manitoba Opera Association	Pacific Opera Victoria
Opera Atelier	Prairie Opera Inc.
Opera Ontario	Vancouver Opera Association

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Event	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				
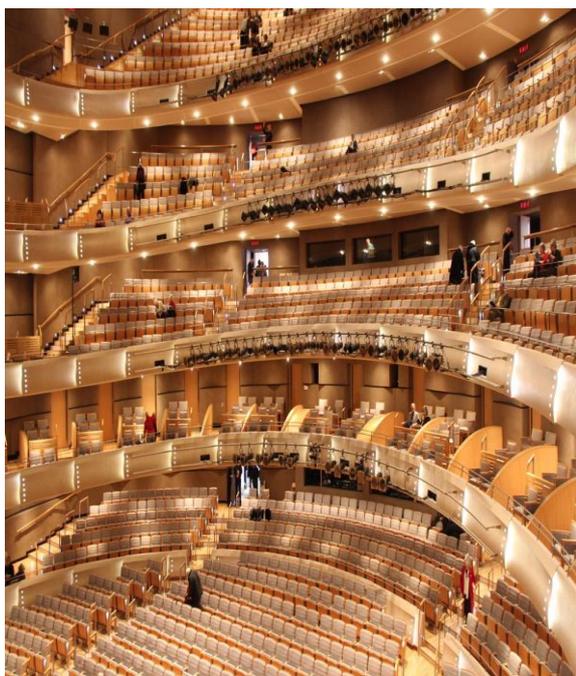
The Opera

VISUAL ARTS

A survey of the visual arts in Canada is presented in these pages by 20 art historians and curators, one chapter each, that covers the late 19th century to the present.

We introduce the founding art galleries, art societies and artist-run centres in Canada's major cities that established the country's visual arts culture. Both the National Gallery of Canada and Royal Canadian Academy were founded in 1880, followed by the establishment in the 1920s and 1930s of city art galleries in Montreal, Toronto, Winnipeg, Edmonton and Vancouver.

The exhibition and collecting policies of these institutions, together with artist-run centres, art magazines and cultural policy, have played a central role in "defining and re-defining" what can be described as "Canadian art", writes editor/contributor Anne Whitelaw.

The period 1890 to 1914 relates to the Barbizon and Hague Schools of painting, with some Impressionist elements of the new-century artists William Brymner, Horatio Walker, Helen McNicoll, Homer Watson, Maurice Cullen and William Henry Clapp. The work is luscious, although covered by only nine reproductions. Mural painting was introduced during this time in public buildings in Quebec's cathedrals and in provincial legislature buildings across the country by painters Frederick Challener, George Reid, E. Wyley Grier and Charles Huot. It is disappointing that scant attention is paid to this country's art dealers.

Tom Thomson and the Group of Seven deal with material that is well known and still well loved. The Emily Carr topic is beautiful. Contributing writer Gerta Moray, professor emerita at the University of Guelph, ranks Carr's reputation to important female artists Georgia O'Keeffe and Frida Kahlo. "Her stylistic experimentation, romance vision, and writings established her for Canadians as the prototype of the isolated visionary modern artist", Moray writes. Of great interest is Moray's account of Carr's influence on Canada's west coast ethno-cultural art history.

Joyce Zemans details the period of abstract and non-objective art from 1915 to 1961, beginning with the earliest of painters working in abstraction in the 1920s. She pays due attention to pioneers of the movement, among them Bertram Brooker, Fritz Brandtner, Lionel LeMoine FitzGerald, J.W.G. (Jock) Macdonald, Lawren Harris, Kathleen Munn, Edna Tacon and Marian Scott.

The foregoing three women, Zemans claims, "were among the most interesting pioneers of abstraction in Canada". She handles the postwar art of Painters Eleven, the Regina Five and Vancouver's West Coast style of abstraction with appropriate excitement and style.

The Paul-Émile Borduas and the Automatistes, by François-Marc Gagnon, who describes Borduas as "the most important figure in the history of modern Quebec art", presents a well-researched account of Quebec's art and its social history. The Automatistes manifesto *Refus global*, authored primarily by Borduas, a sweeping denunciation of the power wielded by the church and government over art, is accompanied by other less known dissident artists' manifestos.

Among the ones Gagnon cites are *Prism d'yeux*, written by Jacques de Tonnancour, "which defended diverse approaches to artmaking, gave more urgency to the Automatistes' own project".

Quebec Plasticens artists are well represented in the Geometric Abstraction after 1950, and topics on Inuit and native art provide valuable information on the co-operatives run largely by native artist activists and government initiatives that together have elevated early touristy native crafts to fine art. Pop Art, postmodernism, photography, furniture design and experimental video art are included as worthy elements in Canada's visual art culture.

Nonetheless, it is disappointing that scant attention is paid to this country's art dealers, who championed pioneering artists. Similarly, patrons whose gifts of art grace virtually every art gallery in this country are scarcely acknowledged. Disappointing also is the lack of attention paid to the graphic arts, from Canada's esteemed early pioneers Tom Thomson, JE.H. MacDonald and C.W. Jefferys to modernists Jack Bush, William Winter, Oscar Cahén, Harold Town and James Hill.

Canadian art at the Art Gallery of Ontario

Joseph Edward Southall

George Dunlop Leslie

SPORTS

In Canada, leisure in the country is related to the decline in work hours and is shaped by moral values, and the ethnic-religious and gender communities. In a cold country with winter's long nights, and summer's extended daylight, favourite leisure activities include horse racing, team sports such as hockey, singalongs, Roller skating and board games. The churches tried to steer leisure activities, by preaching against drinking and scheduling annual revivals and weekly club activities.

By 1930 radio played a major role in uniting Canadians behind their local or regional hockey teams. Play-by-play sports coverage, especially of ice hockey, absorbed fans far more intensely than newspaper accounts the next day. Rural areas were especially influenced by sports coverage.

Canadians in the 19th century came to believe themselves possessed of a unique "northern character", due to the long, harsh winters that only those of hardy body and mind could survive.

This hardiness was claimed as a Canadian trait, and such sports as ice hockey and snowshoeing that reflected this were asserted as characteristically Canadian. Outside the sports arena Canadians express the national characteristics of being peaceful, orderly and polite.

Inside they scream their lungs out at ice hockey games, cheering the speed, ferocity, and violence, making hockey an ambiguous symbol of Canada.

The roots of organized sports in Canada date back to the 1770s. Canada's official national sports are ice hockey and lacrosse. Seven of Canada's eight largest metropolitan areas – Toronto, Montreal, Vancouver, Ottawa, Calgary, Edmonton and Winnipeg – have franchises in the National Hockey League (NHL) while Quebec City had the Quebec Nordiques until they relocated to Colorado in 1995. Canada does have one Major League Baseball team, the Toronto Blue Jays, one professional basketball team, the Toronto Raptors, three Major League Soccer teams and four National Lacrosse League teams. Canada has participated in almost every Olympic Games since its Olympic debut in 1900, and has hosted several high-profile international sporting events, including the 1976 Summer Olympics in Montreal, the 1988 Winter Olympics in Calgary, the 1994 Basketball World Championship, the 2007 FIFA U-20 World Cup, the 2010 Winter Olympics in Vancouver and Whistler, British Columbia and the 2015 FIFA Women's World Cup.

Other popular spectator sports in Canada include curling and Canadian football; the latter is played professionally in the Canadian Football League (CFL). Golf, tennis, baseball, skiing, cricket, volleyball, rugby union, Australian Rules Football, soccer and basketball are widely played at youth and amateur levels, but professional leagues and franchises are not widespread.

Canadians are a sports-minded people. Men and women engage the year round in a variety of competitive and non-competitive sports, outdoors and indoors.

As spectators, they flock in thousands to tournaments and games. Their rest for vigorous living,

Various racial origins, the diversity of their country's climate and terrain – all have contributed to the multiplicity of sports that distinguishes the nation's recreation.

Winter sports – ice-hockey. **Ice hockey** is perhaps the premier Canadian sport it was originated and developed wholly in Canada, and is played throughout the nation. Ice hockey began in military garrisons in the 19th century as a game for the Canadian winters. The rules varied widely until the late 1870's, when a group of students in Montreal drew up a code that was generally adopted. The game has spread until it now is played in at least 25 countries and is the principal winter sport in the Olympic Games. Across Canada, more than 250000 youth play in organized leagues, and thousands more play informally on frozen ponds and outdoor rinks.

The growing popularity of professional hockey led to the expansion of the National Hockey league (established in 917) to 18 teams by the mid 1970's its rival circuit, the world Hockey league, was formed in 1972, and later expanded to 14 teams in Canadian and U.S. cities. Hockey is Canada's most popular spectator sport and is considered to be the national winter sport. The National Hockey League plays for the championship Stanley Cup, donated by Lord Stanley, the Gr. General, in 1892.

The Clarkson Cup, established in 2005 by Adrienne Clarkson, the 26th Governor General (and the first of Asian origin), is awarded for women's hockey. Many young Canadians play hockey at school, in a hockey league or on quiet streets – road hockey or street hockey – and are taken to the hockey rink by their parents. Canadian children have collected hockey cards for generations.

Canadian football is the second most popular sport. Curling, an ice game introduced by Scottish pioneers, is popular. Other winter sports include curling, skiing, tobogganing, and ice-skating-figure skating, speed skating, and skating for fun. Canada is a regular participant in the Olympic Winter Games. **Curling** attracts thousands of Canadians in the winter. Each province holds a series of games for men and women to determine the provincial champion rink.

The provincial title winners compete annually to decide the Canadian Champion. The men's winning rink represents Canada in the world competition. In summer the variety of sports ranges from archery to automobile racing. Almost every sport popular in other lands has its counterpart in Canada.

Other seasons also have their special sports: rugby football, fishing, and hunting.

Summer sports-lacrosse. Lacrosse, an ancient sport first played by Aboriginals, is the official summer sport. Soccer has the most registered players of any game in Canada.

The native Indians taught lacrosse to the white men and were generous that they allowed their opponents play 25 men on a side against their 20. The game finally was codified with 12 men on a team and became a rage. In the 1860's, when Montreal's population was about 100000, an important lacrosse match often drew 1000 spectators. Lacrosse was called Canada's national game and was introduced successfully in the British Isles, the USA, and Australia. It attained its peak of popularity in Canada in the early 1900's and was featured in the Olympic Games at St. Louis, 1904.

Suddenly its popularity declined. Some attributed this to the excessive roughness of the game; others, to the encroachments of professionalism. But in 1930, a new form of the game called "box-lacrosse" was developed. This is played by 6 men on a side and can be adapted to outdoor or indoor play, especially in arenas originally designed for hockey.

Golf. As a sport for participants and spectators, golf is popular throughout the country.

Many local and regional tournaments are held, the annual Canadian Open, in which the world's best players have competed for stakes totalling 1200000 may draw 20000 watchers on one day.

Through more than a century competition, many Canadians have achieved international fame.

Ned Hanlan was a world champion skater late in the 19th century. Louis Rubenstein was the 1st world's champion figure skating (1890). Louis Cyr was a celebrated weight lifter.

Tommy Burns and Timmy McLarnin were world champion boxers. Bill Sherring was a noted distance runner, and Percy Williams won the 100 – and 200 – meter sprints at the 1928 Olympic Games. Many Canadian teams, especially in hockey and curling, have ranked as the world's best.

Many women athletes also have excelled. Barabara Ann Scott won the world and Olympic figure skating titles and two others in one month. Marlene Stewart, then a teenager, won the Canadian and British women's open golf championships. Marilyn bell, another teenager, swam across Lake Ontario, the Strait of Juan de Fuca, and the English Channel. Ann Heggweit and Nancy Greene won women's skiing titles. The Edmonton Grads women's basketball team was internationally famous for 20 years.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	When	Where	Score
1.				
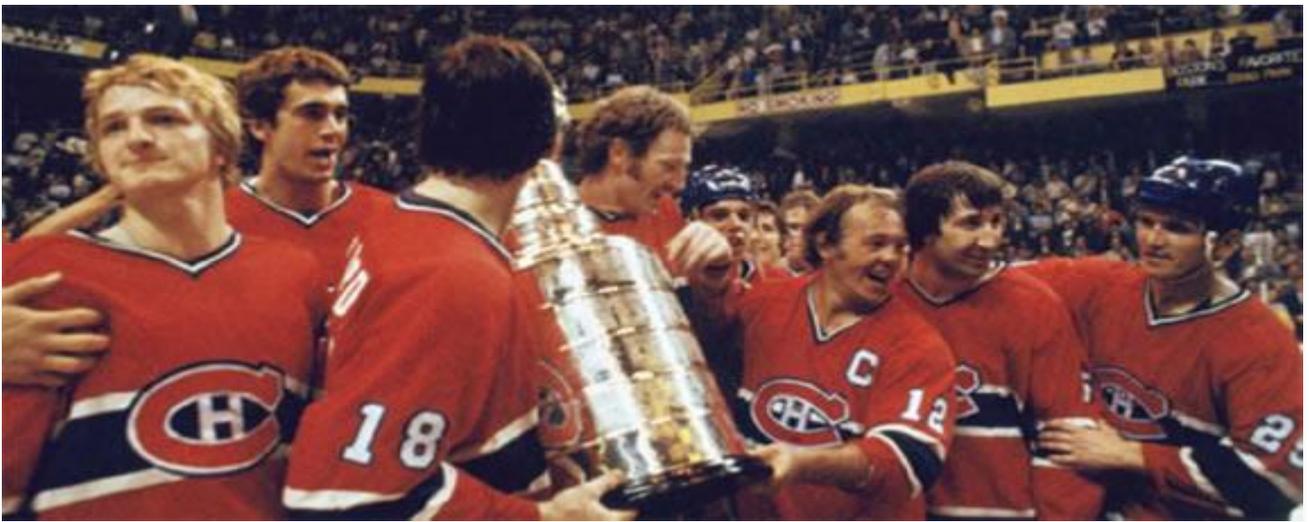
Montreal Canadiens Stanley Cup Champions, 1978

UNITIII. TOURISM

INTRODUCTION

Until the early 20th century, Canada was primarily an agricultural nation. Since then it has become one of the most highly industrialized countries in the world. To a large extent the manufacturing industries are supplied with raw materials produced by the agricultural, mining, forestry, and fishing sectors of the Canadian economy. There is one thing about our industry. We may have our ups and downs from time to time but things are certainly never dull. In fact, February has been one of our more eventful months in Canadian tourism. First, of course, is the good news in the federal budget.

The value of our industry and the contributions we are making to Canada's economic and social objectives are becoming increasingly clear to legislators. We have made some very strong headway in the last few years we have been operating as a industry-led consortium of private and public sector tourism interests. In fact in many cases we have surpassed many of our own rather demanding targets.

The substantial increase in funding into our already strong marketing programs should provide us with the ability to build on our early successes with even greater confidence.

The pool of funds that will be available through the Business Development Bank of Canada will help finance private sector tourism infrastructure. This will expand the availability of high quality facilities that will attract more visitors from abroad. The consensus among board members is that the time has come to focus on major issues facing our industry in the years ahead. Our marketing and industry enhancement efforts are working very well. However, if we are to be around for the long haul, we must also take a longer look at the horizons our industry is heading toward.

Canada has a large domestic and foreign tourism industry. The second largest country in the world, Canada's incredible geographical variety is a significant tourist attractor. Much of the country's tourism is centred on Canada's five largest metropolitan areas, Toronto, Montreal, Vancouver,Calgary, and Ottawa, well known for their culture, diversity, as well as the many national parks and historic sites.

In 2012, over 16 million tourists arrived in Canada, bringing US$17.4 billion in international tourism receipts to the economy. Domestic and international tourism combined directly contributes 1% of Canada's total GDP and supports 309,000 jobs in the country.

There are 17 World Heritage sites in Canada, including one of the oldest, Nahanni National Park, Northwest Territories, and one of the newest, the Red Bay Basque Whaling Station, Newfoundland and Labrador. Of these 17 sites, 8 of them are Cultural Heritages and 9 are Natural Heritages.

Tourism is a complete and naturally related collection of services with a single unifying purpose: to provide transportation, accommodation, food and beverage services, recreation and entertainment to Canadians or foreigners travelling in Canada for any purpose. It is an important and fast-growing industry. Canada's tourism industry earned over $44 billion in 1998, representing, directly or indirectly, more than 10% of the labour force.

By the year 2015 it could be one of the most important single economic activities in Canada. Money spent on tourism products has a great impact on employment, both directly and indirectly, that is at least equal to, and in many cases more than, spending in the nation's leading 40 industries.

Visitors from outside Canada make tourism Canada's fifth-largest earner of foreign exchange after motor vehicles, auto parts, crude petroleum and newsprint. The bulk of Canada's tourism comes from Canadians travelling in and exploring their own country. On the international travel account, Canada has a falling share of the international markett: Canadians spent $7.5 billion outside Canada.

Catering to tourists in Canada involves many large companies and about 100 000 small and medium-sized businesses, including almost 300 000 hotel and motel rooms, more than 45 000 eating

places and 4000 travel agencies. These businesses serve over 34 million visitors a year. Every 100 000 visitors to a community can mean $9 million in revenue throughout the local economy.

At the federal level tourism is the responsibility of the minister of state for small business and tourism through Tourism Canada in the Department of Regional Industrial Expansion. The promotion and development of tourism through a designated federal agency dates from 1934. The recognized national industry association is the Ottawa-based Tourism Industry Association of Canada (TIAC).

It is an umbrella organization representing private sector companies, organizations, institutions and individuals engaged in tourism in Canada and working in partnership with provincial and territorial tourism-industry associations. TIAC has represented the Canadian tourism industry for 69 years and exists to lobby government, to communicate with industry, and to increase public awareness of the importance of tourism and the need for public support.

Tourism dates back to the early history of Canada. Writings by the early explorers and traders contributed to the growing knowledge of the Canadian landscape, still the primary attraction of Canada's tourism industry. From the mid-18th to the early 19th century topographic painters recorded an idealized landscape, scenes that were often reproduced as engravings in travel books published in Europe. The Canadian Pacific Railway, through its rail and steamship services, its hotels and publicity campaigns, attracted affluent European and American tourists to Canada. Modern travel and the opportunity for mass travel came with the jet airplane. Business travel illustrates the degree of change: travel and related expenses are the third-largest expenditure of Canadian business, after payroll and data-processing expenditures.

The Canadian tourism industry requires sophisticated marketing, delivering value and service. Beginning in 1984 Canada experienced a turnaround following 10 years of decline during which its balance of payments deficit on the international travel account grew from $300 million to $2.2 billion.

1986 was an exceptional year: foreign visitors increased 18%. The primary reasons for this growth were EXPO 86 in Vancouver, a favourable exchange rate with the US, an aggressive federal government advertising campaign in the US and negative incidents in other parts of the world which discouraged N Americans from travelling overseas. The best potential new source for travellers to Canada is likely in the Pacific Rim countries. Arrivals from Japan and Hong Kong are expected to show an increase, continuing an upward trend that started in 1979. Australia remains stable.

The US continues to be Canada's primary source of visitors; they comprise over 85% of our tourism market. Traditional European markets, including the UK, France, W Germany and the Netherlands, are expected to produce moderate growth over the next few years.

Contemporary Canadian tourist attractions are often the same as those extolled by early travel writers – the fjorded coast of B.C., the majestic grandeur of the Canadian Rockies, the wide open spaces of the Prairies, the lakes, forests and rivers of central Canada, the Atlantic coast in its infinite variety of bays, coves, beaches and scenic vistas, the arctic environment and people, and, of course, such old favourites as NIAGARA FALLS. The works of humans have been added to these natural assets through the development of modern and sophisticated cities, and through galleries and museums, performing arts, historic sites, FESTIVALS, and events such as Expo 86, the CALGARY STAMPEDE and winter OLYMPIC GAMES. To most of the world Canada is known as a tourist destination through its scenery, space and environment.

Exercise 1. Describe the festivals in Canada.

Exercise 2. Analyze the advantages of the tourism development in Canada.

Exercise 3. Create some itineraries in Canada.

NIAGARA FALLS

Niagara Falls is the collective name for three waterfalls that straddle the international border between Canada and the USA; specifically, between the province of Ontario and the state of New York. They form the southern end of the Niagara Gorge.

From largest to smallest, the three waterfalls are the Horseshoe Falls, the American Falls and the Bridal Veil Falls. The Horseshoe Falls lie mostly on the Canadian side and the American Falls entirely on the American side, separated by Goat Island. The smaller Bridal Veil Falls are also on the American side, separated from the other waterfalls by Luna Island.

The international boundary line was originally drawn through Horseshoe Falls in 1819, but the boundary has long been in dispute due to natural erosion and construction. Located on the Niagara River, which drains Lake Erie into Lake Ontario, the combined falls form the highest flow rate of any waterfall in the world, with a vertical drop of more than 165 feet (50 m). Horseshoe Falls is the most powerful waterfall in North America, as measured by vertical height and flow rate. The falls are 17 miles (27 km) north-northwest of Buffalo, New York, and 75 miles (121 km) south-southeast ofToronto, between the twin cities of Niagara Falls, Ontario, and Niagara Falls, New York.

Niagara Falls were formed when glaciers receded at the end of the Wisconsin glaciation (the last ice age), and water from the newly formed Great Lakes carved a path through the Niagara Escarpment en route to the Atlantic Ocean. While not exceptionally high, the Niagara Falls are very wide. More than six million cubic feet (168,000 m^3) of water falls over the crest line every minute in high flow, and almost four million cubic feet (110,000 m^3) on average.

The Niagara Falls are renowned both for their beauty and as a valuable source of hydroelectric power. Balancing recreational, commercial, and industrial uses has been a challenge for the stewards of the falls since the 19th century.

The Horseshoe Falls drop about 188 feet (57 m), while the height of the American Falls varies between 70 and 100 feet (21 and 30 m) because of the presence of giant boulders at its base.

The larger Horseshoe Falls are about 2,600 feet (790 m) wide, while the American Falls are 1,060 feet (320 m) wide. The distance between the American extremity of the Niagara Falls and the Canadian extremity is 3,409 feet (1,039 m).

The volume of water approaching the falls during peak flow season may sometimes be as much as 225,000 cubic feet (6,400 m^3) per second. The average annual flow rate is 85,000 cubic feet (2,400 m^3) per second. Since the flow is a direct function of the Lake Erie water elevation, it typically peaks in late spring or early summer. During the summer months, at least 100,000 cubic feet (2,800 m^3) per second of water traverses the falls, some 90% of which goes over the Horseshoe Falls, while the balance is diverted to hydroelectric facilities.

This is accomplished by employing a weir with movable gates upstream from the Horseshoe Falls. The falls' flow is further halved at night, and, during the low tourist season in the winter, remains a minimum of 50,000 cubic feet (1,400 m^3) per second. Water diversion is regulated by the 1950 Niagara Treaty and is administered by the International Niagara Board of Control (IJC).

The verdant green colour of the water flowing over the Niagara Falls is a byproduct of the estimated 60 tonnes/minute of dissolved salts and "rock flour" (very finely ground rock) generated by the erosive force of the Niagara River itself. The current rate of erosion is approximately 1 foot (0.30 m) per year, down from a historical average of 3 feet (0.91 m) per year. It is estimated that 50,000 years from now, even at this reduced rate of erosion, the remaining 20 miles (32 km) to Lake Erie will have been undermined and the falls will cease to exist. There are differing theories as to the origin of the name of the falls. According to Iroquoian scholar Bruce Trigger, "Niagara" is derived from the name given to a branch of the local native Neutral Confederacy, who is described as being called the "Niagagarega" people on several late-17th-century French maps of the area. According to George R. Stewart, it comes from the name of an Iroquois town called "Ongniaahra", meaning "point of land cut in two".
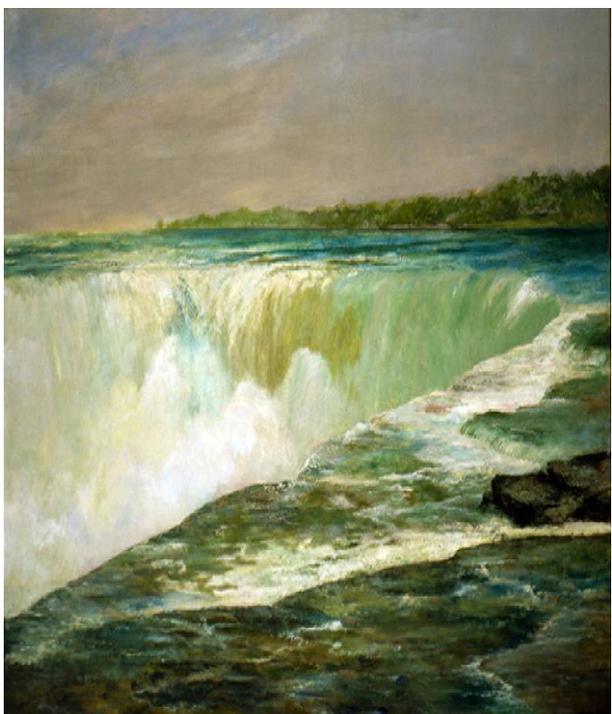
CALGARY STAMPEDE

The Calgary Stampede is an annual rodeo, exhibition and festival held every July in Calgary, Alberta, Canada. The ten-day event, which bills itself as "The Greatest Outdoor Show on Earth" attracts over one million visitors per year and features one of the world's largest rodeos, aparade, midway, stage shows, concerts, agricultural competitions, chuckwagon racing and First Nations exhibitions.

The event's roots are traced to 1886 when the Calgary and District Agricultural Society held its first fair. In 1912, American promoter Guy Weadick organized his first rodeo and festival, known as the Stampede. He returned to Calgary in 1919 to organize the Victory Stampede in honour of soldiers returning from World War I. Weadick's festival became an annual event in 1923 when it merged with the Calgary Industrial Exhibition to create the Calgary Exhibition and Stampede.

Organized by thousands of volunteers and supported by civic leaders, the Calgary Stampede has grown into one of the world's richest rodeos, one of Canada's largest festivals and a significant tourist attraction for the city. Rodeo and chuckwagon racing events are televised across Canada.

However, both have been the target of increasing international criticism by animal welfare groups and politicians concerned about particular events as well as animal rights organizations seeking to ban rodeo in general. Calgary's national and international identity is tied to the event. It is known as the "Stampede City", carries the informal nickname of "Cowtown" and the local Canadian Football League team is called the Stampeders. The city takes on a party atmosphere during Stampede: office buildings and storefronts are painted in cowboy themes, residents don western wear and events held across the city include hundreds of pancake breakfasts and barbecues.

The Calgary and District Agricultural Society was formed in 1884 to promote the town and encourage farmers and ranchers from eastern Canada to move west. The society held its first fair two years later, attracting a quarter of the town's 2,000 residents. By 1889, it had acquired land on the banks of the Elbow River to host the exhibitions, but crop failures, poor weather, and a declining economy resulted in the society ceasing operations in 1895.

The land passed briefly to future Prime Minister R. B. Bennett who sold it to the city.

The area was called Victoria Park, after Queen Victoria, and the newly formed Western Pacific Exhibition Company hosted its first agricultural and industrial fair in 1899.

The exhibition grew annually, and in 1908 the Government of Canada announced that Calgary would host the federally funded Dominion Exhibitionthat year. Seeking to take advantage of the opportunity to promote itself, the city spent C$145,000 to build six new pavilions and a racetrack.

It held a lavish parade as well as rodeo, horse racing, and trick roping competitions as part of the event. The exhibition was a success, drawing 100,000 people to the fairgrounds over seven days despite an economic recession that afflicted the city of 25,000.

Guy Weadick, an American trick roper who participated in the Dominion Exhibition as part of the Miller Brothers 101 Ranch Real Wild West Show, returned to Calgary in 1912 in the hopes of establishing an event that more accurately represented the "wild west" than the shows he was a part of. The city built a rodeo arena on the fairgrounds and over 100,000 people attended the six-day event in September 1912 to watch hundreds of cowboys from Western Canada, the USA and Mexico compete for $20,000 in prizes. The event generated $120,000 in revenue and was hailed as a success. Weadick set about planning the 1913 Stampede, promoting the event across North America. However, the Big Four were not interested in hosting another such event.

Businessmen in Winnipeg convinced Weadick to host his second Stampede in their city, but the show failed financially. A third attempt held in New York State in 1916 suffered the same fate. Weadick returned to Calgary in 1919 where he gained the support of E. L. Richardson, the general manager of the Calgary Industrial Exhibition. The two convinced numerous Calgarians, including the Big Four, to back the "Great Victory Stampede" in celebration of Canada's soldiers returning from World War I.

A cowboy attempts to wrestle a steer to the ground

A cowgirl races around a barrel

Jamie Salé and David Pelletierperform at the 2011 ice show in theStampede Corral

A bull rider in action; supporters of the rodeo argue the livestock is well cared for

NATIONAL HISTORIC SITES OF CANADA

National Historic Sites of Canada (French: Lieux historiques nationaux du Canada) are places that have been designated by the federal Minister of the Environment on the advice of the Historic Sites and Monuments Board of Canada (HSMBC), as being of national historic significance.

Parks Canada, a federal agency, manages the National Historic Sites program. As of 2016, there are 976 National Historic Sites, 169 of which are administered by Parks Canada; the remainder are administered and/or owned by other levels of government or private entities. The sites are located across all ten provinces and three territories, with two sites located in France (the Beaumont-Hamel Newfoundland Memorial and Canadian National Vimy Memorial).

There are related federal designations for National Historic Persons and National Historic Events. Emerging Canadian nationalist sentiment in the late 19th century and early 20th century led to an increased interest in preserving Canada's historic sites. There were galvanizing precedents in other countries. With the support of notables such as Victor Hugo and Eugène Viollet-le-Duc, the Commission des monuments historique was created in France in 1837, and it published its first list of designated sites, containing 934 entries, in 1840. In the United Kingdom, the National Trust for Places of Historic Interest or Natural Beauty was created in 1894 to protect that country's historic and natural heritage. While there was no National Park Service in the USA until 1916, battlefields of the Civil War were designated and managed by the War Department: Chickamauga and Chattanooga (created 1890), Antietam (1890), Shiloh (1894), Gettysburg (1895), Vicksburg(1899), and Chalmette (1907).

Domestically, Lord Dufferin, the Governor General from 1872 to 1878, initiated some of the earliest, high-profile efforts to preserve Canada's historic sites. He was instrumental in stopping the demolition of the fortifications of Quebec City, and he was the first public official to call for the creation of a park on the lands next to Niagara Falls.

The 1908 tricentennial of the founding of Quebec City, and the establishment that same year of the National Battlefields Commission to preserve thePlains of Abraham, acted as a catalyst for federal efforts to designate and preserve historic sites across Canada. At the same time, the federal government was looking for ways to extend the National Park system to Eastern Canada.

The more populated east did not have the same large expanses of undeveloped Crown land that had become parks in the west, so the Dominion Parks Branch (the predecessor to Parks Canada) looked to historic features to act as focal points for new national parks.

In 1914, the Parks Branch undertook a survey of historic sites in Canada, with the objective of creating new recreational areas rather than preserving historic places. Fort Howe in Saint John, New Brunswick was designated a national historic park in 1914, named the "Fort Howe National Park".

The fort was not a site of significant national historic importance, but its designation provided a rationale for the acquisition of land for a park. Fort Anne in Annapolis Royal, Nova Scotia was also designated in 1917.

In 1919, William James Roche, the Minister of the Interior, was concerned over the fate of old fur trade posts in Western Canada, and he was also being lobbied by historical associations across Canada for federal funds to assist with the preservation and commemoration of local landmarks.

At the same time, the Department of Militia and Defence was anxious to transfer old forts, and the associated expenses, to the Parks Branch. Roche asked James B. Harkin, the first Commissioner of Dominion Parks, to develop a departmental heritage policy.

Harkin believed that the Parks Branch did not have the necessary expertise to manage historic resources; he was troubled by the relatively weak historic value of Fort Howe, the country's first historic park, and feared that the Branch's park improvements were incompatible with the heritage attributes of Fort Anne, the second historic park.

Exercise 1. Find out some add information on the topic and make a report.

Fort Anne National Historic Site of Canada is Canada's oldest. It is a present-day reminder of a time when conflict between Europe's empire builders was .

Áísínai'pi, a location of significant cultural and religious importance to the Blackfoot people, was designated

Oil sands, tar sands or Athabasca oil sands in isolated northern Alberta

TOURISM TRAINING BOOSTS EMPLOYMENT

In the highly competitive business of tourism, employees are critical to a company's success – knowledge, skills, service and attitude make a real difference.

A well-trained, knowledgeable, service-driven workforce is coming to be much more widely respected as a concept and accepted as a practice among enlightened managers.

Over one million Canadians are employed as servers, chefs, guides, front desk agents and in many other occupations – half of which owe their income to tourism revenues. Thousands more jobs in the industry are likely to be created in the near future. Thus, coupled with the Canadian tourism industry's aggressive drives in domestic and international markets in recent years means the pressure is on. Good customer service brings our clients back. Thus, many in the industry, in governments, in the labour movement and the academic community are committed to developing and retaining dedicated tourism professionals throughout all industry sectors and an all occupations.

They recognize that a workforce of world-class calibre means individual tourism enterprises and the Canadian industry function more effectively and more profitably. And that makes Canadian tourism healthier and more internationally competitive. They focus on the development and implementation of national occupational skill standards, and the certification of professionals who meet those standards.

Training programs, videos, career planning material and more are also available to help businesses and individuals reach their goals and become professionally certified.

The success of Canada's tourism industry depends on the quality of service guests receive when they visit our hotels, parks, restaurants, museums, and numerous other attractions and events, or when they avail themselves of tourism – related services. Professional service is not just an expectation of the travelling public, it is a demand. The tourism industry's recognition of the importance of service professionalism has led to the development of more than 35 national standards for tourism-related occupations. Industry professionals who demonstrate the appropriate attitudes and attain the skills and knowledge outlined in the standards are recognized through national occupational certification. Certification leads to increased employee self – esteem, pride in work and career advancement opportunities. Employers can be satisfied that certified employees provide them with a professional, efficient, career-oriented workforce.

Certification is a valued measure of achievement that heightens service delivery and helps ensure Canada's tourism industry remains competitive in the global marketplace. Employees who demonstrate professional competencies as set out in the standards by written and practical, on – the – job testing are rewarded with a lapel pin and a national certificate of achievement.

Finance minister Paul Martin's budget announcement contained two measures that are bound to stimulate Canadian tourism though marketing, product development and visitor tax rebates. He announced $ 15 million in incremental funding in each of the next three years, mostly for tourism promotion in foreign markets. That will bring the overall marketing fund to about $150 million a year over the three-year period. To help finance tourism infrastructure in the private sector, Mr. Martin also announced a $ 50 million equity injection into the Business Development Bank of Canada. That means tourism entrepreneurs outside urban areas will now have better access to capital, a longstanding sore point with resort developers and managers, among others.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Event	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

TOURISM IN CANADA

Foreign and domestic visitors spent a record $ 41.8 billion in Canada in 2015. The announcement contains good news on the employment front. Over 8,000 new jobs were created in the Canadian tourism industry during the period, bringing the total to 488,000. Foreign international travellers made nearly 17 million person trips to Canada in 1995. While Canadian outbound travel dropped slightly.

The importance of overseas visitors continues to rise and now represents one-quarter of all international trips to Canada. The net effect was that Canadian travel receipts in 2015 were up by 13% to nearly $ 11 billion, while payments rose by 2,4 % to just over $ 14 billion, resulting in a 23.6%, or $ 1 billion drop in the travel deficit. With 2.97 % of global tourism market share in 2015, Canada gained a step, ranking 11th in the world. Tourism also now ranks fourth among Canadian export industries, behind motor vehicles (cars and trucks), automotive parts, and business services.

A new program available to tourism partners this year offers buy-in opportunities to regional marketing initiatives that promote medium and long-haul travel within Canada.

The Rediscover Canada Regional Marketing Initiatives Program allows private sector tourism organisations to create marketing partnerships with Canadian Tourism Committee.

CTC promotes interprovincial travel during non-peak seasons. It entails marketing attractive Canadian travel packages that have a value-added component and a strong call to action, and is designed to complement the ongoing Rediscover Canada program theme.

The CTC will provide matching funding to regional consortia presenting strong proposals to promote interprovincial travel in the shoulder and off-seasons. Minimum project investment by potential partners is $ 12,500 and the maximum is $ 100,000, to be matched equally by the CTC. Lead applicants should be tourism industry organisations, associations and businesses involved directly in marketing tourism products, packages and services. Individual provinces may form part of the partner mix.

The Canada marketing committee will consider the following in assessing proposals:
- Is it   a new initiative that would not take place without CTC involvement?
- Does it contain a minimum of three major partners and is it led by a consortium pf private sector business?
- Does it promote increased inter-provincial travel by Canadians?
- Are participants matching funds?
- Does it promote shoulder and / or off-season domestic tourism Products?
- Will the project become self-sufficient over time?

Proposals should outline clearly the following:
- objectives and applicable sales targets;
- target audiences;
- domestic target markets;
- regional tourism products to be promoted;
- description of marketing and communications activity plan;
- budget breakdown;
- all partner contributions to the proposal;
- evaluation and measurement criteria.

Tracking and evaluating the results is essential. Successful applicants will be required to submit status reports at regular intervals, and a final evaluation report outlining the CTC.

Exercise 1. Digest the information briefly in English.

Exercise 2. Explain all the figures from the text.

Exercise 3. Comment on questions given in the text.

TOURISM PROGRAM

Heading into the second year as an industry / government, they are continuing to move on the aggressive, fast-paced action plan to reach the targets for increased visitation and tourism receipts by the year 2020. The goal they are aiming for is very straightforward – $60 mln. in new dollars from the tourism industry, to complement the federal government's $50 mln. annual contribution to the programs.

That's what they need to entice millions more visitors to experience Canada.

That's what they need to encourage more Canadians to "Rediscover Canada". The only way to get there is to make sure the tourism industry does its part. They have asked for this brave new world and they've got it. So now it's up to them to keep making it work. They are scouring the country for tourism partners. They will be offering industry the chance to share in profitable business relationships, whether they are traditional or non-traditional tourism enterprises.

They will be presenting their sales prospects on why businesses should partner and how they can go about it, along with best practice cases and testimonials. They will be presenting opportunities that should not be missed. They can look back on their many accomplishments in a very short period of time with pride and satisfaction. But only for a moment. They must keep their eyes on the prize at all times, and that's straight ahead of them.

But there is a new definition under which all countries are revising the components of their travel accounts, following recommendations from the International Monetary Fund (IMF).

The revised travel account components now include international visitor spending, and commercial transportation crew spending as before – with the new categories of health-related spending, and student-education spending added to the list.

The international passenger fares component of the previous travel account has been moved to another area of the Balance of Payments, namely, a new transportation account. The IMF ruling seems somewhat out of which for a country with a tourism satellite account, such as Canada. It makes the travel account somewhat less useful as a monitor of international travel trends.

Most countries do not have a satellite account to measure tourism activity and performance.

Thus, traditional economists do not seem to hold the view that tourism is a legitimate industry whose economic size and structure demands the kinds of statistical measurement breakouts where research-based planning is used as a basis for vital business decisions.

Preliminary data on Canadian tourism for 2015 show a continuing positive story from most of Canada's major tourism markets, but a few areas are exhibiting some weakness and bear watching.

The early numbers reveal a levelling off in U.S. travel to Canada in 2015, after three years of solid growth from the market. U.S. entries for the year are expected to reach 13 mln. down a fractional 0.3% from 2010. However, for the first three quarters of 2015, spending in Canada by U.S. visitors rose by about 5%. As well, for the first time in four years, overnight travel by Canadian tourists to U.S. destinations is expected to be up by 3.7%, to 15.2 mln. Canadian travel to overseas destinations in 2015 is expected to rise to 3.7 mln. trips, an increase of 3.7%

On the other hand there is a trend toward continued growth in travel to Canada from overseas markets, as disclosed by the 2015 statistics. The momentum is part of an expansionary trend that began in 1992 and has continued unabated.

Preliminary data show tourists from the UK will be up 8.3% for the year to 694,000. France will be up to 458,000, a 6.5% increase, an; Germany will be up 6.8%, to 449,000. Japan will register a 9.8% increase, at 647,000 visitors to Canada.

Exercise 1. Characterize the tourism programm in Canada.

Exercise 2. Design the perspectives for tourism in Canada.

Exercise 3. Formulate the Canadian motto for tourism.

OFF – SEASON / SHOULDER SEASON OPPORTUNITIES

Stimulating domestic tourism demand in the shoulder and off-seasons is a Canadian travel industry priority. A special report on shoulder and off-season marketing was prepared for the CTC to complement the main report on the domestic travel market that was issued in the fall of 2015.

The report illuminates seasonal variations in domestic travel and takes a look at customer segments within the market that may be candidates for shoulder and off-season travel within Canada.

Shoulder and off-seasons account for variances in travel volume and the nature of domestic trips taken by Canadians. Almost half of all spring trips last for three nights or under, and are less likely to be taken with children. Trip expenditures, therefore, are generally somewhat lower than the average. In the fall, travel tends to be VER-oriented, so sightseeing and similar activities are less popular. Other than beach resort trips and those to sun destinations, winter trips tend to average less than six nights, resulting in expenditures about 60% lower than the norm.

Given that winter trips involve short stops with friends and relatives, or to ski destinations, they are less likely to involve package travel, air transportation or complex decision-making. Shoulder and off-season travellers who took three or more trips in spring, fall or winter are differentiated from the overall market by their characteristics and motivations.

Spring travellers generally resemble domestic travellers in the sense they are approaching middle age, married middle-income earners. But they are more likely to be interested in outdoor activities like wildlife viewing, visiting national parks, hiking, climbing and camping. Over 90% interviewed showed higher than average interest in outdoors trips and summer beach vacations.

Nearly a third of fall travellers are over 60 years of age, which may help account for their interest in VER trips. Most likely retired, they have more freedom to travel when they like. They tend to be well-educated and seek personal enrichment and learning as part of their vacation experiences. While they tend to shun big cities and beaches, they enjoy arts and cultural attractions.

Winter travellers are usually fairly young, with about half being under the age of 35.

A contributing factor to their ability to travel in the off-season is that many do not have children living at home. They also tend to be fairly affluent, with a higher than average number of two-income earners. At 62%, this segment has the highest proportion of men. An active group, they enjoy such activities as water sports, golf, alpine skiing, hunting and fishing. As part of the study an analysis was conducted to determine who might respond best to the use of special incentives to attract Canadians to domestic tourism experiences, such as seasonal discounts, special packages and value-added extras. As the study found, Canadians willing to travel within Canada during the spring and fall – given the availability of special packages or value-added offers:

- are generally oriented toward package use;
- tend to be less affluent and less able to afford peak season vacations;
- are highly motivated by value for money factors;
- are generally more enthusiastic about domestic travel, and feel Canada has a lot to offer;
- show a greater commitment to pleasure travel in general.

The report concludes that a sizeable proportion of the domestic market could be enticed to travel within Canada during the shoulder and off-seasons, but not without powerful incentives to do so.

If the goal is to convince Canadians to take their main vacation in Canada outside the peak seasons, an all-out effort is required by Canadian industry partners, including aggressive marketing aimed at the most promising customer segments.

But, it adds, a successful program will do much even demand, improve the flow and volume of travel receipts and reduce strains on the industry during peak seasons.

Exercise 1. Compare the domestic and international tourism in Canada.

Exercise 2. Generate the principles of domestic tourism in Canada.

CANADA, EH!

Out of market, out of mind hasn't got much to do with a psychological disorder, but it offers an apt characterisation of the state our country's domestic tourism picture was in for too many years.

The Canada marketing program is now entering its third year of operation under the aegis of the CTC's government and industry partners. They use the euphemism import substitution for our hard-nosed goal of convincing Canadians to experience the pleasures of their country, instead of venturing south for products they have here. That is both the crux of our problem and the source of our opportunity. Understandably, then, it is also the raison deter of our Canada marketing program.

The simple fact is, they have come a long way in a short period of time in helping Canadians through the various innovative and effective programs they have launched. So, they we've had to be on a learning curve, play the catch-up numbers game, and get in full throttle as a marketing program.

This has enabled Canada's tourism partners to find increased marketing opportunities. And that's been the fun part of their job. On a more serious note, we are completely committed to making their most lucrative travel market work better for Canada and Canadians.

They made some progress in a short period of time, despite the odds. Outbound travel by Canadians to the U.S. was on the decline up until 2015, and their tourism expenditures followed suit.

Last year, however, the tables turned somewhat and their early forecasts tell us that when the numbers come in, we can expect to find out that Canadian travel to the U.S. went back up again, by about 3.7%. It may not be particularly good news for the domestic market, but it's the news we expected as our dollar strengthened, as people became more accustomed to the exchange rate.

In 2015 Canadians travelling in Canada accounted for nearly $ 31billion of their total $ 42 billion in tourism receipts! What is more, their research tells us there is a great deal of untapped potential for domestic travel. To paraphrase what a famous Canadian said: "Just watch us!" better still, why not join us?

How strong is the demand for off-season tourism products in Canada?

Quite strong, say tour operators. In a letter to the CTC an American tour operator said that if the selling season in Canada was extended, "incoming tourist numbers would increase dramatically".

But would the numbers increase enough for some operations to open up earlier, or do tour operators have to be discouraged from selling certain destinations during certain periods? It's a chicken-and-egg situation. If we are open and ready, will tourists come?

A case in point: The tourist season in the Halifax area generally begins in June. Some travellers visiting Halifax last May expressed disappointment because many of the popular tourist sports were closed. "Almost everything that we were to visit was closed.

It was quite a letdown", wrote one American tourist. Commission research has identified opportunities to promote shoulder and off-season travel within Canada.

Thus, the industry enhancement committee is establishing industry linkages to develop product and infrastructure to include off-season offerings.

The advertising campaign focusing on off-season products that ran in France and Germany last fall, helped ensure that visitor targets for the 1998 / 1999 were surpassed.

Initial feedback resulting from a similar campaign now underway in the Asia / Pacific market – especially Japan – shows strong customer response to Canada's off-season products.

All indicators are that the demand for off-season products is there. The Canadian tourism industry has to keep working together to respond to that demand.

Exercise 1. Classify demands for off-season and peak-season tourism in Canada.

Exercise 2. Give an exaple of tourism product in Canada.

Exercise 3. Explain a chicken-and-egg situation.

CANADA – JAPAN

Canada's strategy of encouraging more Japanese travel during off peak seasons and to new regions of the country has struck a responsive chord from delegates to the 4th Canada-Japan Tourism Conference in Kobe, Japan, October 28 to 30. Their participation reinforced the strong ties developed over the years between the two countries, and gave credence to their proposals to strengthen Japanese travel to different regions of Canada, and during off-peak seasons.

We have experienced a strong renewal of the cooperative spirit for two-way tourism between our countries. The meetings have reaffirmed a strong commitment to much focused action plans and shared common objectives. Canada stands ready to utilize our human and financial resources in partnership with our Japanese colleagues to achieve these objectives.

Within this positioning framework the research-based program for Japan is targeting key high yield customer segments and niche markets. The campaign also is designed as a tightly focused strategic mix of advertising, communications and special events aimed at producing maximum return for cost-effective partnered investment.

By promoting spring / fall and non-ski winter holiday experiences they can reduce the stresses and strains on peak season capacity problems, both for operators and carriers, generating profitable business for Canada in underutilized seasonal periods. All are lucrative sources of business for Canada, as the numbers have proven and as the projections are forecasting. Their varied interests and demands fit comfortably with the variety and quality of their offerings.

 If you think the Stanley Cup finals are big, how about a television audience of 30 million, and how about as many as 5,000 Japanese fans coming to Canada, and how about 350 Japanese journalists and media personalities in attendance? That's what had happened in Vancouver in June 1998, a first for Canada. It's called the Sumo (Canada) Basho, a truly unique Japanese cultural event, a combination of ancient athletic and aesthetic rite dating back to 23 B. C.

The CTC is currently working with Canadian and Japanese partners hopefully to ensure that the event is confirmed in the near future. The Basho would provide Canada with a unique and unprecedented opportunity to promote its tourism offerings to huge Japanese audiences, through television and print media. Only eight official Bashos have been held outside Japan, each of which has attracted sponsorship from major Japanese and international corporations.

CTC-Japan drives sales and education at new tourism workshop

JAPANESE TRAVEL STUDY ISSUES CLUES TO MARKETERS

Marketers should get ready to discard old notions about the classic Japanese tourist if they want to capitalise on a market of 25 million potential long haul travellers in the next five years.

The advice comes from the results of the first study of the Japanese pleasure travel market since 1989. It was conducted on behalf of the CTC, the U.S. Travel and Tourism Administration.

The report says it is not good enough to take for granted that all Japanese travellers want to travel by tour bus, shopping, sightseeing and taking pictures along the way. The Japanese pleasure travel market is evolving into a number of distinct market segments, with different motivations and interests, it says. Its cites growing demand for special interest tour products, geared to narrow market segments as one example of the changing dimensions of the market.

Heading to the year 2000, destinations and attractions that key on the right market segments for their products, understand their characteristics and needs, and target their campaigns accordingly, will gain the upper hand in this very lucrative market, the report suggests.

With as many as 16 million potential Japanese pleasure travellers interested in visiting Canada – almost ten million both interested in and likely to visit the country within the next five years – the promise the market holds is extremely high.

There are many factors that bode well for Canada. Japanese visits to Canada quadrupled in the ten year period to 1995 averaging about 16% growth. In each of the next two years it is expected to reach 11%, which means there would be more than 700,000 Japanese arrivals in Canada by 2000.

It revealed that Canada is the third most popular future destination among Japanese travellers, next to the USA and Australia. Canada is also well-rated in five of the top six Japanese travel motivators, and more than a third of respondents named the country among their top five choice destinations.

Japanese travellers generally express a higher-level satisfaction with their travel experiences in Canada compared with other long-haul destinations. They have particularly high regard for Canada as a country and favourable impressions of its tourism attributes. These facts may account in part for the study's claim that there is strong potential to develop repeat business from the market. Adding to the strength of the argument is that almost 90% of Japanese long-haul pleasure travellers indicate they are likely to return to the same vacation destination in the next years.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and make up the chart about it.

№	A c t i v i t y			
	Event	**When**	**Where**	**Score**
1.				

A LOOK AT TRAVEL MARKET TRENDS TO 2000-2020

A forecast of international travel market trends to the year 2000-2020 are based on an econometric model that relates economic variables to the historical movements of trips. The study predicts that pleasure travel will continue to grow at a faster rate than business travel for Canada's major markets, in large part because the Canadian dollar will remain favourable to foreign visitors.

The optimistic outlook for inbound travel to Canada should result in double digit spending growth from Germany, Japan and France. Of the major markets, Germany and Japan, with improving economies and strong currencies, will continue to be the fastest growing in the 1996-2000 period.

The 1995 decline in French travel growth is expected to rebound as threats of terrorism in Paris subside. There should also be increased spending from the U.S. pleasure travel market, with more high yield air travellers coming to Canada due to the Open Skies agreement. While the incredible pace of growth from the Taiwanese and South Korean are not expected to reach their 1995 levels of 56% and 44% respectively, the untapped potential of both countries should still result in about 20% growth between 1996 and 2000. This is due to their continuing strong economies and the easing of outbound travel restrictions. The low value of the Canadian dollar has had the twofold effect of increasing American travel spending in Canada, while reducing Canadian spending in the U.S.

The saying, "It takes a long time to grow an old friend", contains both wisdom for humanity and sound advice for those interested in doing business in the Japanese travel market. It could also be the motto for the CTC's Asia / Pacific marketing group partners, because the expression has been a guiding force for the way they have approached the market for the past 30 years.

It was recognised in Tourism Canada days that building long-term trust relationships with government and industry would be essential if they were to have any lasting success in the Japanese travel market. That is why such patience and care were taken to look beyond the immediate, to resist the pressures to grasp short-term, quick-fix gain and reach for the horizon. They carefully picked their sports and contented themselves with small, but important victories, all the while building a foundation for strength and endurance in a market that rewards patience and appreciates respect.

It is part of the phenomenal increase in outbound travel from other Asia / Pacific markets. Last year, for example, Canada received over 22% more Japanese visitors than the year before. There were over 53% more from Taiwan, over 43% more from South Korea, over 21% more from Australia, and 20% more from New Zealand. So to say that Japanese is an important international travel market within a huge and growing Asia / Pacific market is the epitome of understatement. And world-wide in the next five years it offers a potential of almost 25 million pleasure travellers from which to draw.

For Canada that could mean between 10 to 16 mln. plus visitors.

238

ABORIGINAL HOSPITALITY TRAINING

Experiencing the cultures, lifestyles and values of Aboriginal peoples in Canada is more in demand by guests and visitors from the domestic and international travel markets than ever before.

Many successful Aboriginal-owned and managed cultural tourism offerings are currently operating in all parts of Canada, coming on line-resorts, lodges, hotels, attractions, events, cultural and social experiences, to name just a few. The growth in Aboriginal tourism has sparked a need for trained Aboriginal tourism professionals, and a British Columbia-based program is delivering the goods.

First Host was developed by the Urban Native Indian Education Society, in agreement with BC's Ministry of Education, Skills and Training, Human resources Development Canada, and in co-operation with the Pacific Rim Institute of Tourism.

First Host leaders background in tourism and customer service. They train local people to deliver the workshops to ensure they meet specific regional and community needs. Upon successful completion of the workshops, participants receive a First Host pin and certificate in recognition of their accomplishment.

First Host uses the international values of Aboriginal peoples and modern-day service quality, and adapts them to the needs of Aboriginal tourism businesses anywhere.

First Host has been recognised by the World Travel and Human Resources Council for its Tourism good Practices, and is listed in its international magazine and on its Internet site.

In Canada, tourism operations that are majority owned and operated by First Nations, Métis, and Inuit people comprise this segment of the industry. This chapter explores the global context for Aboriginal tourism development, the history of the sector in BC, and important facts about Aboriginal tourism in BC today.

Globally, *indigenous peoples* are those groups protected under international or national legislation as having specific rights based on their historical ties to a particular territory and their cultural or historical distinctiveness from other populations. Indigenous people in Canada are often called First peoples or *Aboriginal peoples* and have diverse languages, ceremonies, traditions, and histories.

The Canadian Constitution Act recognizes three groups of Aboriginal people: First Nations, Inuit, and Métis. Before learning more about Canadian First peoples and their social and cultural connections to tourism, let's acknowledge the often negative impacts of recent history on indigenous peoples around the globe. Current attempts to influence positive change in this area will then be highlighted. The history of tourism has seen considerable exploitation of indigenous peoples. Land has been expropriated, economic activity suppressed by outside interests, and cultural expressions (such as arts and crafts) have been appropriated by outside groups.

Appropriation refers to the act of taking something for one's own use, typically without the owner's permission. In recognition of these wider concerns, in 2007, the United Nations created the *Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous People*. This marked a significant achievement in obtaining international recognition of key rights, including, but not limited to, self-determination, land use, and natural resources rights. It set forth the minimum standards for the survival, dignity, and well-being of the indigenous peoples of the world (United Nations, 2007).

Themes related to *indigenous tourism* were raised at this time, but it was not until 2012 that the Pacific Asia Travel Association organized a gathering of global indigenous tourism professionals to establish guiding principles for the development of indigenous tourism. These principles are now known as the *Larrakia Declaration* on the Development of Indigenous Tourism, named after the Larrakia Nation, the Australian Aboriginal host community for the meeting

According to the Larrakia Declaration, these are the key principles that should guide all culturally respectful indigenous tourism business development: "It is hereby resolved to adopt the following principles; that …

- Respect for customary law and lore, land and water, traditional knowledge, traditional cultural expressions, cultural heritage that will underpin all tourism decisions.

▪ Indigenous culture, the land and waters on which it is based, will be protected and promoted through well managed tourism practices and appropriate interpretation.

▪ Indigenous peoples will determine the extent, nature and organisational arrangements for their participation in tourism and that governments and multilateral agencies will support the empowerment of Indigenous people.

▪ That governments have a duty to consult and accommodate Indigenous peoples before undertaking decisions on public policy and programs designed to foster the development of Indigenous tourism.

▪ The tourism industry will respect Indigenous intellectual property rights, cultures and traditional practices, the need for sustainable and equitable business partnerships and the proper care of the environment and communities that support them.

▪ That equitable partnerships between the tourism industry and Indigenous people will include the sharing of cultural awareness and skills development which support the well-being of communities and enable enhancement of individual livelihoods."

Using these guiding principles, it becomes clear that Aboriginal tourism development can be considered successful only if the rights of indigenous people are upheld.

Before turning our attention to Canadian and BC Aboriginal tourism examples, let's briefly consider the context in which these activities in tourism are occurring, and review more important definitions.

We can do this by taking a closer look at Canada's First peoples. In 2011, approximately 1.4 mln. people in Canada identified themselves as Aboriginal – roughly 4.3% of the total population.

A Haida sculpture welcomes people arriving at Vancouver International Airport

First Nations people are Aboriginal peoples who do not identify as Inuit or Métis. They have lived across present-day Canada for thousands of years and have numerous languages, cultures, and spiritual beliefs. For centuries, they managed their lands and resources with their own governments, laws, and traditions, but with the formation of the country of Canada, their way of life was changed forever. The government forced a system of band governance on First Nations so that they could no longer use their system of government. There are now 203 bands in BC, and 614 across the country (Colonial settlement has left a legacy of land displacement, economic deprivation, and negative health consequences that Canada's First Nations are still striving to overcome.

However, First Nations people are working hard to reclaim their traditions, and in many places there is an increasing pride in a revitalized culture.

Indian (or Native Indian) is still an important legal term in Canada, but many Aboriginal people associate it with government regulation and colonialism and its use has gone out of favour, unlike in the USA where *American Indian* is still common.

Inuit have lived in the Arctic region of Canada for countless years. Many Inuit still rely on the resources of the land, ice, and sea to maintain traditional connections to the land.

The old ways of life were seriously compromised, however, when Inuit began to participate with European settlers in the fur trade. The Government of Canada accelerated this change by requiring many Inuit communities to move away from their traditional hunting and gathering ways of life on the land and into permanent, centralized settlements. Today, in spite of social and economic hardships created by this change, many Inuit communities focus on protecting their traditional way of life and language. Recently the inukshuk, an Inuit symbol used as a welcoming signpost for hunters, was used as a key emblem for the 2010 Olympic and Paralympic Games. Note that non-Inuit people used to call Inuit people **Eskimo,** but this is now considered insulting and should be avoided.

Métis comes from the words *to mix*. In the 1600s and 1700s, many French and Scottish men migrated to Canada for the fur trade. Some of them had children with First Nations women and formed new communities, and their people became the first to be called Métis. Today, the infinity symbol on the Métis flag symbolizes the joining of two cultures that will live forever. The distinct Métis culture is known for its fine beadwork, fiddling, and jigging. Canadian and international tourists can learn from and enjoy participating in a large number of Métis festivals in most provinces across the country.

There is an increasing appreciation that intercultural exchanges can help strengthen cultures at risk, if managed thoughtfully. For example, the growing niche of Arctic cruise tourism has brought both opportunities and challenges to the isolated small communities of Canada's rugged Arctic coast. In recognition, the World Wildlife Fund produced a Code of Conduct for Arctic tourists. In part it reads:

First Nations performer at the opening of the Aboriginal Pavilion for the 2010 Olympic and Paralympic Games

Respect Local Cultures:

- Learn about the culture and customs of the areas you will visit before you go.
- Respect the rights of Arctic residents. You are most likely to be accepted and welcomed if you travel with an open mind, learn about local culture and traditions, respect customs and etiquette.
- If you are not travelling with a tour, let the community you will visit know that you are coming.
- Supplies are sometimes scarce in the Arctic, so be prepared to bring your own.
- Ask permission before you photograph people or enter their property or living spaces.

Tourism can promote community and economic development while preserving indigenous culture. With that in mind, let's have a look at the evolution of Aboriginal tourism in Canada, and at some strategies to advance this segment of the industry.

While there has always been some demand among visitors to Canada to learn more about Aboriginal heritage, driven by the strong interest of Europeans in particular, until recently there has been no concerted effort to focus on defining and strengthening *Aboriginal cultural tourism*.

However, over the last 20 years or so, steps have been taken to support authentic Aboriginal cultural products and experiences and to counter decades of appropriation of Aboriginal symbols and arts and crafts by non-Aboriginal Canadians. Aboriginal exhibits and displays were developed for tourism attractions and museums by well-meaning non-Aboriginals who did not consult with local communities.

Souvenir shops were often filled with inexpensive overseas-made replicas of authentic Aboriginal arts and crafts, and some still are. To this day, we see the Canadian Prairie Aboriginal headdress being used as a way of (mis)representing First Nations across Canada.

Cultural products for sale as souvenirs

As the number of Aboriginal tourism businesses started to increase in the 1980s and 1990s, the federal government initiated discussions on Aboriginal tourism. The outcome was the formation of national organizations that provided a coordinated industry voice for operators:

Aboriginal Tourism Team Canada (ATTC), Aboriginal Tourism Canada, and Aboriginal Tourism Marketing Circle (ATMC), and others. These groups started the trend of defining Aboriginal cultural tourism standards and promoting the establishment of regional, provincial, and territorial organizations to develop and market more successful businesses. Today, these functions are performed by the *Aboriginal Tourism Association of Canada (ATAC).*

Despite challenges such as appropriation, thanks to these organizations, tourism is becoming a major economic and cultural driver for Aboriginal communities across Canada. It is estimated that in 2014 "Aboriginal tourism provided over 37,000 jobs in Canada and generated almost $3 billion in gross output into the Canadian economy … up substantially since 2002 where jobs were estimated at 13,000 and gross output was estimated at $2.3 billion". To define this segment of the industry, the Aboriginal Tourism Association of Canada uses these terms:

Aboriginal tourism: describes all tourism businesses that are majority-owned and operated by First Nations, Métis and Inuit. They must also demonstrate a connection and responsibility to the local Aboriginal community and traditional territory where the operation resides.

*Aboriginal cultural tourism***:** meets the Aboriginal tourism criteria and in addition, a significant portion of the experience incorporates Aboriginal culture in a manner that is appropriate, respectful and true to the Aboriginal culture being portrayed. The authenticity is ensured through the active involvement of Aboriginal people in the development and delivery of the experience.

*Aboriginal cultural experiences***:** offer the visitor a cultural experience in a manner that is appropriate, respectful and true to the Aboriginal culture being portrayed.

This 2008 document from the Canadian Tourism Commission looks at the growing opportunities for Aboriginal tourism development, and promotion to overseas markets including the UK, Germany, and France. It includes market research and consumer data as well as an examination of ways to partner with the travel services sector. Tourism is of significant interest to growing numbers of Aboriginal communities in Canada. If developed in a thoughtful and sensitive manner, it can have potential positive economic, cultural, and social impacts. Many communities have undertaken tourism development activities to support cultural revival, intercultural awareness, and economic growth.

This growth brings jobs and career opportunities for Aboriginal people at all skill levels.

Ancient totem and mortuary poles at Ninstints, Haida Gwaii

In the Aboriginal Cultural Tourism Business Planning Guide, the following are suggested as the foundational building blocks necessary to run a successful and authentic Aboriginal tourism business:

- Understand the industry, learn about cultural tourists, and develop products carefully.
- Ensure experiences are culturally authentic.
- Involve the community's "culture keepers" and Elders.
- Practice environmental sustainability.
- Prepare an Aboriginal cultural tourism business plan.
- Meet visitor expectations through staff training and excellent hospitality, provided from a cultural perspective.
- Ensure an effective web and social media presence.
- Build personal support networks.

The guide also highlights the importance of place to the Aboriginal tourism experience. It suggests that guests leave an authentic tourism experience with a memorable collection of feelings, memories, and images that all contribute to a unique sense of place and help guests understand the culture being shared. In order to highlight this sense of place, operators are encouraged to reflect on and impart aspects of their culture with the following elements of their business:

- Decor such as signage, displays, art, photography.
- Company name.
- Branding elements such as logo and website design.
- Employee uniforms or dress code.
- Food and beverage.
- Traditional stories shared with guests.
- Key words and expressions from the Aboriginal host language shared in guest interactions.

These touch points create a richer, and more authentic, experience for the visitor.

As an Elder once stated, Aboriginal tourism businesses showcase "culture, heritage and traditions," and "because these belong to the entire community, the community should have some input". For this reason, the guide suggests operators consider the extent to which:

- Community members understand the project or business as it is being proposed
- Keepers of the culture are engaged in the development of the idea
- The business or experience reflects community values

Over the past decades, hundreds of Aboriginal-focused tourism experiences have developed in Canada. Examples include:

- The Head-Smashed-In Buffalo Jump interpretive centre in Alberta.
- Northern lights viewing with indigenous hosts at Aurora Village in Yellowknife, Northwest Territories.
- Essipit whale watching with the Innu in Quebec.
- Driving the Great Spirit Circle Trail of Aboriginal experiences on Manitoulin Island in Ontario.

Sunrise at St. Eugene Mission Resort owned by the Ktunaxa, the Samson Cree, the Mnjikaning First Nations
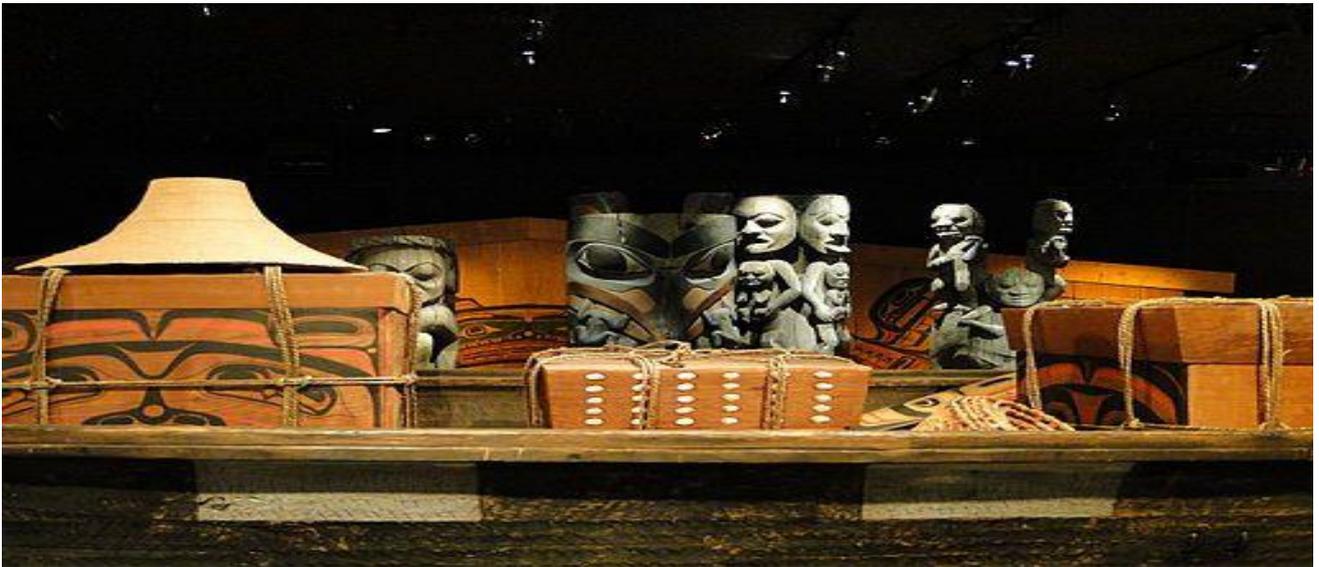
First Nations Exhibit – Royal Museum, Victoria BC

FEDERAL BUDGET: GOOD NEWS FOR TOURISM

There is one thing about the industry. They may have ups and downs from time to time but things are certainly never dull. In fact the value of the industry and the contributions they are making to Canada's economic and social objectives are becoming increasingly clear to legislators.

They have made some very strong headway in the last few years they have been operating as a industry-led consortium of private and public sector tourism interests. In fact in many cases they have surpassed many of their own rather demanding targets. Finance minister Paul Martin's budget announcement February 18 contained tree measures that are bound to stimulate Canadian tourism through marketing, product development and visitor tax debates. He announced $ 15 mln. in incremental funding in each of the next three years, mostly for tourism promotion in foreign markets. That will bring the overall CTC marketing fund to about $150 mln. a year over the three-year period.

To help finance tourism infrastructure in the private sector, Mr. Martin also announced a $50 mln. equity injection into the Business Development Bank of Canada.

That means tourism entrepreneurs outside urban areas will now have better access to capital, a longstanding sore point with resort developers and managers, among others.

"All three initiatives are good news for Canada's tourism industry", said CTC president Doug Fyfe, "and the timing couldn't have been much better. At a time when we're getting even more aggressive in the marketplace, at home and abroad, we're being given the kinds of vehicles we need to deliver the goods". In the vanguard of the push toward wider acceptance of the adoption of higher standards, more and better training and certification of industry professionals is the Canadian Tourism Human Resource Council (CTHRC).

The CTHRC is non-profit organisation that provides a national forum for the tourism industry's labour market partners, including the *Canadian Tourism Commission.* Businesses of all sizes, national associations, provincial / territorial associations, labour unions, colleges and universities participate.

They focus on the development and implementation of national occupational skill standards, and the certification of professionals who meet those standards. Training programs, videos, career planning material and more are also available to help businesses and individuals reach their goals and become professionally certified. One of our most important tasks is to bring employers and employees together to establish skill and knowledge standards for tourism occupations.

These standards are validated by people working in the occupations across Canada.

They form the basis for rigorous written and practical examinations leading to professional certification. Included in these efforts is the ongoing promotion of a training culture within the Canadian tourism industry through the encouragement of good human resource management practices.

Dissemination of best practices, labour market analysis and career information help attract and retain the best and the brightest in the industry. The Council is a national facilitator and clearing house for Canadian tourism human resources development, not a delivery agent.

While the Council's business, labour, national association and education members provide direction and co-ordination; the actual delivery of training programs comes from tourism education councils – one in each province and territory. The Council offers a range of programs and services to help the industry improve service delivery. Train the trainer seminars are designed to provide supervisors with the skills necessary to deliver training in the workplace. Companion trainer's guides and participant workbooks and videos treating subjects like "handling complaints", assist with that workplace training.

The tourism education council's co-ordinate industry volunteers who make presentations on tourism careers to high school career preparation classes. The CTHRC is the founding partner of the Canadian Academy of Travel and Tourism, providing a tourism specialisation in high school. The Council delivers "Tourism Careers for Youth", providing a skill-building bridge between high school and the tourism workplace.

SKI & SNOWBOARD INDUSTRY PRODUCT CLUB

The Ski and Snowboard Industry Product Club (SIPC) program is designed to cultivate alliances between the ski and snowboard sector and the tourism industry to make the Canadian product stronger and more competitive the end objective is to make skiing and snowboarding a lucrative contender as a tourism product in the 21st century.

The program will aim to become more sophisticated in offering ski and snowboard packages, by working in conjunction with transportation and accommodation partners. It will also engage in marketing the product more aggressively, regionally and internationally.

A new alliance of four conservation authorities in Southern Ontario will band together local outdoor tourism businesses, outdoor providers, restaurants and accommodation properties.

The partnership will become a model for co-operative marketing and sustainable eco-tourism in an urban fringe area. The newly created Greek Town Product Club in Toronto's Danforth Businesses Improvement Area brings together 400 businesses to enhance one of the cities most vibrant multicultural tourism product offerings. Through the project Canada's largest Greek community, which consists of tourism and other businesses in the Danforth area, will be able to build on past successful campaign to bring more tourists to the area.

Folklorama captures five awards from IFFA

Winning awards has become a Folklorama tradition over the 27 years of its existence.

Sponsored by the City of Winnipeg in 1970 as a one time event to commemorate Manitoba's 100th birthday, the festival has been recognised as the First Event in Canada and named repeatedly as a Top ten Super Event in North America by the American Bus Association it has been cited by the World Tourism Organisation as the festival best depicting Canadian culture, and was one of the most valued contributors to the nation-wide Canada 125 celebrations in 1992.

The festival plays host to about 420,000 visitors each year.

NEVER TRAVEL ON AN EMPTY STOMACH!

Whenever and wherever one travels, be it for business or pleasure, a common activity unites us on a global scale. The activity? "Eating", you say? Right you would be.

The average traveller engages in eating twice to frequently four times daily. How has the Canadian food service and hospitality industry addressed the challenge of marketing Canada as a destination with gastronomic verve? Perhaps in keeping with their national identity struggles, regions and industries have sought to market Canada's bounty somewhat fractionally.

What is needed is a concerted effort to establish their destination as offering unique, world-class produce, prepared the Canadian way. Why now? Canadians are consistently winning at the World Culinary Olympics and at other international competitions. Their wines have emerged to win merits of global excellence. Canadian seafood is revered in North American and Far Eastern markets.

They have the outstanding produce and resources to establish Canada's identity as a destination offering not only breathtaking natural beauty, scenic solitudes and exciting urban centres, but also exceptional Canadian cuisine – yes, there is such a thing! – And the efforts of their global tourism marketing groups should be directed at incorporating this very important facet of travel into their programs. Virtually every hot tourist destination is known in part because of its food.

The 90s traveller is erudite in expectations and food represents a great portion of a destination's perceptions. Including it in promotional campaigns can beget positive public relations of inestimable value. How to go about establishing Canada's gastronomic identity? Develop the theme and execute a first class product, a showcase of Canada's best from sea to shining sea.

Their sweet Atlantic lobster from down east, the astounding variety of gifts from the pacific, to all the exquisite regional delicacies in between. The showcase can be developed to suit the global marketplace, offering a culinary tour of the great land. A video, a web site, a coffee table book hosted by a knowledgeable Canadian food authority to lend the project credentials.

A challenge is issued to the food and related industries to unite their efforts, establish the authority, get in place and promote, market, sell culinary Canada.

Whatever the venue it begs to be done now. And, done well, it can only help their global tourism marketing efforts. It may even bring Canadian's together. Canada – land of incomparable natural beauty and incomparable Canadian cuisine. Now that's a destination!

NATIONAL PARKS OF CANADA

National Parks of Canada are protected natural spaces throughout the country that represent distinct geographical regions of the nation. Under the administration of Parks Canada, a government branch, National Parks allow for public enjoyment without compromising the area for future generations, including the management of wildlife and habitat within the ecosystems of the park.

Within Parks Canada's administration is a wide range of protected areas, encompassing National Historic Sites, National Marine Conservation Areas (NMCA), and National Park Reserves.

Canada's first national park, located in Banff, was established in 1885. Tourism and commercialization dominated early park development, followed closely by resource extraction. Commodifying the parks for the profit of Canada's national economy as well as conserving the natural areas for public and future use became an integrated method of park creation. The process of establishing National Parks has included the often forced displacement of indigenous and non-indigenous residents of areas within the proposed park boundaries. The conflicts between the creation of parks and the residents of the area have been negotiated through co-management practices, as Parks Canada acknowledged the importance of community involvement in order to sustain a healthy ecosystem.

A transition towards developing parks as a place of preservation began with the *National Parks Act* of 1930. This event marked a shift in park management practices. Revised in 1979 under the National Parks Policy, the Act placed greater emphasis on preserving the natural areas in an unimpaired state through ecological integrity and restoration, moving away from development based heavily on profit. Acting as national symbols, Canada's National Parks exist in every province and territory representing a variety of landscapes that mark Canada's natural heritage.

- 1885 – Banff National Park established as Canada's first National Park. Originally this park was called Banff Hot Springs Reserve and later the Rocky Mountains National Park.
- 1908-1912 – Four National Parks established in Alberta and Saskatchewan with a mission akin to national wildlife refuges. All would be abolished by 1947 once their goals were achieved.
- 1911 – Dominion Parks Branch created, the world's first national park service. Resided in the Department of the Interior – Parks Canada, the governing body of Canada's National Parks.
- 1930 – Canada's parliament passes the first National Parks Act, regulating their protection.
- 1930 – Transfer of resources agreement signed.
- 1970s - National Parks System Plan devised with an aim to protect a representative sample of each of Canada's 39 natural spaces.
- 1979 – National Parks policy is revised to make preserving ecological integrity the priority in Canadian Parks, ending the so-called dual-mandate with recreational uses.
- 1984 – First National Park established through a land claim agreement.
- 1988 – National Parks Act amended formalizing the principle of ecological integrity in the park system.
- 1989 – The Endangered Spaces campaign is launched by the Canadian Parks and Wilderness Society and World Wildlife Canada to encourage the completion of the national parks system. The goal of the campaign is to have parks and protected areas which represent each of the country's natural regions.
- 2011 – To mark the 100th anniversary of the creation of the national parks system, Parks Canada, Primitive Entertainment and Discovery World HD commissioned the National Parks Project to create a series of documentary films about various parks in the system.
- 2017 - Free National Parks in 2017: In celebration of Canada's 150th birthday on 1 July 2017, Parks Canada is offering free admission to national parks and national historic sites for the entire year.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

CREATION & DEVELOPMENT

On July 20, 1871, the Crown Colony of British Columbia committed to Confederation with Canada. Under the union's terms, Canada was to begin construction of a transcontinental railway to connect the Pacific Coast to the eastern provinces. As the Canadian Pacific Railway went underway in 1875 and surveyors began to study the land, the location of the country's natural resources sprouted further interest. Evidence of minerals quickly introduced the construction of mines and resource exploitation in Canada's previously untouched wilderness.

Exploration led to the discovery of hot springs near Banff, Alberta and in November 1885, the Canadian Government made the springs public property, removing them from the possibility of private ownership and exploitation.

This event brought about the beginning of Canada's movement towards preserving land and setting it aside for public usage as National Parks.

By the late 1880s, Thomas White, Canada's Minister of the Interior, responsible for federal land management, Indian affairs, and natural resources extraction, began establishing a legislative motion towards establishing Canada's first National Park in Banff.

May 1911 marked one of the most significant events in the administration and development of National Parks in Canada as the Dominion Forest Reserves and Parks Act were granted royal assent. This law saw the creation of the first administrative body, the Dominion Parks Branch, now known as Parks Canada, to administer National Parks in Canada.

With the Branch in place, the parks system expanded from Banff eastward, combining both use and protection as the foundation to national park management.

The major motives behind the creation of National Parks in Canada were profit and preservation.

Inspired by the establishment and success of Yellowstone National Park in the United States, Canada blended the conflicting ideas of preservation and commercialism in order to satisfy its natural resource needs, conservationist views of modern management, a growing public interest in the outdoors and the new popularity of getting back to nature.

This growing interest to escape the hustle and bustle of the city brought about ideas of conserving Canada's unspoiled wildernesses by creating public parks.

As a country dependent on natural resources, Canada's National Parks represent an example of a compromise between the demand for profit from the land's resources and tourism, with the need for preservation and sustainable development.

While conservationist ideas and a common Canadian movement towards getting back to nature were evident in the early development of National Parks in Canada, a greater role was played by chambers of commerce, local governments, promoters of tourism and recreational groups who advocated profit-driven commercial development, while incorporating wildlife preservation when possible.

Canada's National Parks allowed the public an avenue into nature, while also integrating ideas of preserving Canada's scenic landscape and wildlife populations in an era of development and major resource extraction.

Exercise 1. Render the main idea of the information.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Events	When	Where	Score
1.				

TOURISM & COMMERCIALIZATION

The integration of public visitation for National Parks in Canada heavily contributed to the beginnings of public constituencies for certain parks. The parks who mobilized with a public constituency tended to prosper at a faster rate. As a tactic to increase the number of people traveling to and through National Parks, members of each constituency surrounding National Parks began to advocate the construction of well-built roads, including the development of the Trans-Canada Highway.

As the main highway traveling through the Canadian Rockies, the Trans-Canada Highway has provided accessible visitation and commerce to the area. The highway is designed to provide a heavy flow of traffic, while also including many accessible pull-offs and picnic areas.

With a high-frequency of travelers and many destinations to stop, tourism boomed after the Trans-Canada Highway was established. As the highway travels through Banff and the Bow Valley area, it includes scenic views of most of the mountains, and an environment rich in wildlife.

With an increase in tourism to Rocky Mountain Park, growth and prosperity came to the town of Banff. The Banff hot springs were made more accessible after a tunnel was blasted in 1886.

Horse-drawn carriages were replaced by busses and taxis, and by the 1960s small cabins had been largely replaced by hotels and motels as the community became geared towards building the national park as a tourist destination. In 1964 the first visitor service centre was established at Lake Louise Station, which included the development of a campground, trailer park, and other attractions. Cave and Basin Springs were forced to rebuild their bathing pools in 1904 and then again in 1912, because of growing public interest in the hot springs.

By 1927 campground accommodations at Tunnel Mountain were adapting to include room for trailers as well as tents. Due to increased demand the campground was extended, and by 1969 it was the biggest campground in the national park system. Banff became a year-round recreational centre as the growth of winter sport activities provided added incentive for tourism. The implementation of T-bars and chairlifts on Banff's ski hills helped develop Banff into a ski and winter sports destination.

Since the inception of Canada's National Parks, business and profit had been a major element to their creation and development. Although tourism was the first source of profit in the National Parks, the exploitation of natural resources such as coal, lumber, and other minerals became another major area of revenue. These resources were found in abundance in the Rocky Mountains and were interpreted as being inexhaustible.

Coal was the most plentiful and profitable of all the minerals and therefore its mining in parks was accepted by politicians and Canadian Pacific Railway officials. This was demonstrated by the creation of Bankhead, a coal town on the road to Lake Minnewanka that was established.

This coal town was not viewed as a detriment to the overall scenery of Banff National Park, but was instead an added attraction for visitors.

In this case, resource exploitation and tourism worked in conjunction with each other to create a more profitable national park. Although tourism and resource development could work together, it was clear from policy making that tourism became secondary to resource exploitation.

The resources that were exploited from the National Parks were essential to the CPR's income as it freighted these resources across the country. In 1887, the Rocky Mountains Park Act was established under the Macdonald government and it reflected the importance of resource exploitation for Canada's economy. Under this regulation, National Parks were not fully preserved in their natural states as mining, logging and grazing continued to be permitted. When the Rocky Mountains Park Bill was proposed, it elicited various criticisms at the time, one being the implicit contradiction between the exploitation of resources within this national reservation.[21] However, the overarching nineteenth century ideology that lumbering and mining would contribute to the usefulness of the reserve as opposed to depreciating the park overshadowed the concerns of resource exploitation.

The natural resources within the parks were seen as being unlimited and therefore should be used as it was economically beneficial for the nation.

By 1911, as Canadians became aware of the depletion occurring within America's natural resources, a debate focused on the extent of resource exploitation in Canada's National Parks erupted. This debate began as early as 1906 at the Forestry Convention in Ottawa as it stimulated a new interest in conservation which spoke to the governmental, academic, and public level. Canada's National Parks were no longer places of unlimited natural resources, but were now considered a place where resources needed to be conserved through regulation to ensure future and continued use.

J.B. Harkin, the Parks Commissioner in 1911, advocated the complete eradication of coal and mineral extraction in the parks. However, Harkin's vision did not come to fruition until 1930 when the National Parks Act was established. Under this act, mineral exploration and development were banned and only limited use of timber was permitted within the parks.

For Canada to continue its economic success through resource development, the boundaries of Canada's National Parks were altered prior to the 1930 Act in order to exclude resource rich land from park areas. The exclusion of resource development in Canada's National Parks marked a minor shift towards preservationist attitudes over Canada's parks as recreational use and development was still permitted. The initial ideal of National Parks was one of uninhabited wilderness.

Creating this required the displacement of indigenous and non-indigenous residents who lived within intended park boundaries, and restrictions on the way these residents had previously used the land and resources within parks for subsistence.

Jasper National Park, established in 1907, restricted the hunting and other income-generating and culturally valuable activities of the aboriginal groups who had used the region. Jasper is a large park in a southern, frequently visited portion of Canada, and one of many parks geared towards tourism more than preservation. Most parks are designed to have both the appeal of uninhabited wilderness and have amenities and roads to facilitate visitors. Human activity within the park was allowed, but primarily activities which generated revenue, such as snowboarding and lodging for tourists.

Some have claimed that the selection which activities to allow had a non-native bias, as it precluded traditional sources of subsistence such as hunting and trapping.

Parks in less frequently visited, northern parts of Canada were created with more consideration of aboriginal usage. Kluane National Park and Reserve in the Yukon did have initial restrictions on hunting in order to preserve the presence of wildlife in the park, as did Ivvavik National Park in the Northern Yukon. Through grassroots organizations and political lobbying, indigenous residents of these areas were able to have greater influence over the process of park creation.

For both Kluane and Ivvavik parks, indigenous organizations protested and testified to Parliamentary Committees, describing how these restrictions infringed on their ability to provide for themselves through traditional fishing, hunting, and trapping. Ivvavik National Park, established in 1984, was the first in Canada to be created through a comprehensive land claim settlement, and set a precedent for collaboration and co-management in future parks.

In June 1984, the Inuvialuit Final Agreement was signed, which deviated from past parks by committing to a more extensive inclusion of aboriginal interests and gave the Inuvialuit exclusive rights to hunting and harvesting game within the park. This agreement was an example of and the beginning of co-management, which ensured indigenous voices would be heard and given equal representatives on parks boards. Non-indigenous groups were also dispossessed from their land during the creation of National Parks, such as the Acadians of Kouchibouguac National Park in New Brunswick.

This park was created in 1969, and included recognition of the aboriginal groups which had once resided there, but no recognition of the Acadians who comprised approximately 85 % of the over 1,500 people who were displaced to create the park. Many inhabits dispossessed of their land by Parks Canada resisted.

The Acadian residents' resistance of eviction was extensive enough to delay the official opening of the park until 1979.

Through protest and civil disobedience, they won greater compensation from the government to address the loss of fishing within the park which had previously been their main source of income.

The resistance of the Acadians impacted future park creation, as in 1979 Parks Canada announced that it would no longer use forced relocation in new parks. An advisory committee was created by Parks Canada in 2008 to reflect on the Kouchibouguac process and address outstanding grievances. In the late 19th century, Canadians began to change their view of nature and resources from one in which the wilderness was seen as a land of abundance to one where the land became seen as a limited storehouse and opinions started to focus on conservationist ideas.

Created in 1909, the Commission of Conservation became the Canadian forum for conservation issues, acting as an advisory and consultative body used to answer questions related to conservation and better utilization of Canada's natural and human resources.

The Commission focused on a concept that maximized future profits through good management in the present. Rather than preserving through non-use, the Commission was concerned with managing resources for long term gain.

Other conservation-minded organizations, like the Alpine Club, had different ideas that focused on the preservation of natural wilderness and opposed any type of development or construction.

This movement was successful as the creation of parks solely for preservation purposes, like the bird sanctuary in Point Pelee, began developing. In order to push their views further, this movement, headed by James B. Harkin and Arthur Oliver Wheeler, was forced to argue that divine scenery was itself a source of profit – tourism – in order to push aside what they saw as a far greater avenue of exploitation: resource extraction.

By 1930, even the conservation movements within Canada came to understand that the country's National Parks had an entrenched system of profit-based motives.

Exercise 1. Choose the keywords that best convey the gist of the information.

Exercise 2. Analyze the information and make a chart about it.

№	Activity			
	Events	When	Where	Score

Algonquin Park

Scenic view of Maligne Lake in Jasper National Park in Canada.

ECOLOGICAL INTEGRITY

According to Parks Canada, ecological integrity is defined as a state where three elements exist which are non-living elements, living elements and series of ecological functions.

By having all three elements, there are healthy ecosystem. Ecosystem in National Parks has been often damaged due to the exploitation of resources, the expansion of tourism and external land use practices outside National Parks. Through Parks Canadarealizing the necessity of managing National Parks by human hands to maintain biotic and abiotic components, Parks Canada placed an emphasis on ecological integrity within the National Parks that marked a shift from profit to preservation.

The change in values is derived from the establishment of 1930 National Parks Act that limited use of resource for park management, and in 1979, under revised National Parks Policy, the maintenance of ecological integrity was prioritized for the preservation of National Parks of Canada.

In 1988, National Parks Act was amended and the regulation of ecological integrity was embodied. Due to the conflicting interests of profit and preservation, the maintenance of ecological integrity has progressed slowly.

The big movement on maintenance of ecological integrity has happened since 2001. Canada National Parks Act of 2001 reinforced the necessity of maintenance and restorations of ecological integrity by saving natural resources and ecosystem. It sets new principles for park management plans.

Wilderness areas in the Banff, Jasper, Yoho and Kootenay National Parks have been officially designate land as wilderness in national parks. The boundaries of all communities in national parks are changed and the developments of commerce in their communities are restricted. Profit no longer became priority and initiative for preservation through ecological integrity became increased.

To maintain or restore ecological integrity, ecosystem restorations are implemented in many parks, attempting to back damaged ecosystems to the original healthy state and making them sustainable.

Grasslands National park brought back Bison bison for a prairie restoration. The bison grazing patterns help to maintain a variety of prairie biodiversity.

In Gwaii Haanas National Park, removing Norway rats, which were accidentally brought in the area, is conducted because they eat eggs, some young and even adults' seabird, and reducing the seabird's population. Staffs monitor for the return of rats by trapping and poison baits for recovering native seabird populations. Through parks policies and operation practices, Parks Canada has recognized the importance of working together with indigenous peoples and other communities to manage parks' healthy ecosystem within and around National Parks.

In 1984, Ivvavik National Park was established as a result of an Aboriginal land claim agreement.

Now, Ivvavik is managed co-operatively by Parks Canada and the Inuvialuit. Their mutual goals are to protect wild life, keep the ecosystem healthy and protect their cultural resources.

In addition, they ensure that the preservation of Inuvialuit traditional way of living, including trapping,hunting and fishing. Another example is Torngat Mountains National Park.

In 2005, Torngat Moungtains national park was established as a result of the Labrador Inuit Land Claims Agreement. It preserves the aboriginal rights of the Labrador Inuit in Canada which are land,resources and self-government rights. The federal government also signed the Labrador Inuit Park Impacts and Benefits Agreement with Inuit Association. As with the Ivvavik agreement, it ensures that Inuit can continue to use land and resources as their traditional activities and keep their exclusive relationship with the land and ecosystems. In addition, they agreed to manage the park cooperatively.

A seven-member co-operative management board will be established to advise the federal minister of Environment for the matters of parks eco-management. Parks Canada recognized indigenous knowledge and their unique historical and cultural relationship with the lands, and thus Parks Canada started to cooperate with indigenous people for park management.

Exercise 1. Analyze the information and use it in practice.

Banff National Park

Thousand Island Ontario

How adventure travelers prepared for their last trips

Researched online	69%
Consulted friends and family	64%
Booked airfare or hotel online	36%
Watched a travel program about the destination	28%
Consulted newspapers and magazines	26%
VISITED A TRAVEL AGENT	25%
Purchased a guide book	25%
Booked through a tour operator	17%
BOOKED THROUGH A TRAVEL AGENT	17%
Visited a DMO or tourism promotion organization	12%
Did not prepare prior to going on the trip	12%
Other	9%

Source: Adventure Tourism Market Study
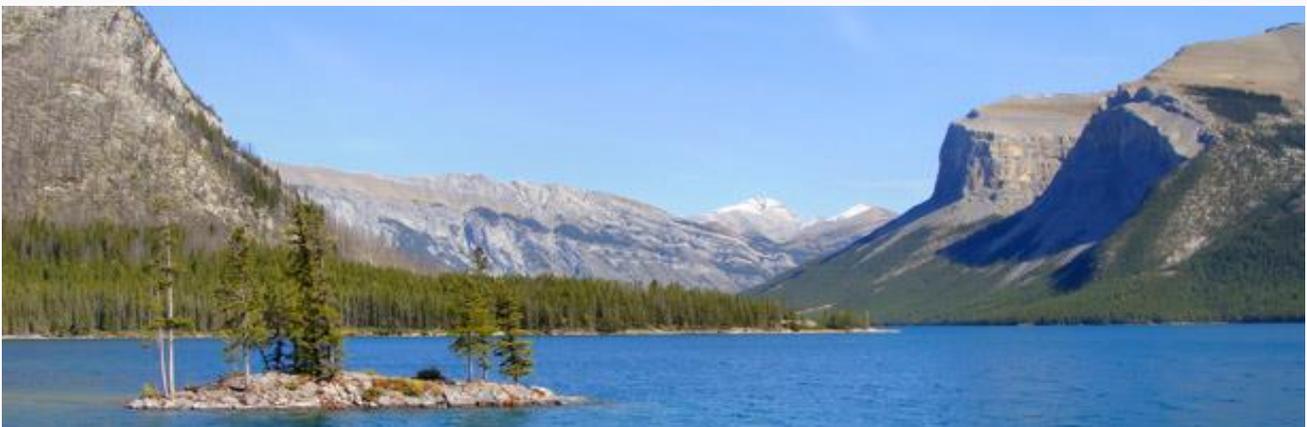
STUDY QUESTIONS

One of the basic requirements of citizenship is to demonstrate that you have adequate knowledge of Canada. The citizenship test is used to assess your knowledge of Canada and the rights and responsibilities of being a citizen in Canada. All the citizenship test questions are based on information provided in this study guide. You will be asked about facts and ideas presented in the guide. The questions below are similar to the questions that are found on the citizenship test. Use these questions to prepare for your test. All the answers can be found in this study guide.

What are three responsibilities of citizenship?

a. Being loyal to Canada, recycling newspapers, serving in the navy, army or air force.
b. Obeying the law, taking responsibility for oneself and one's family, serving on a jury.
c. Learning both official languages, voting in elections, belonging to a union.
d. Buying Canadian products, owning your own business, using less water.

What is the meaning of the Remembrance Day poppy?

a. To remember our Sovereign, Queen Elizabeth II.
b. To celebrate Confederation.
c. To honour prime ministers who have died.
d. To remember the sacrifice of Canadians who have served or died in wars up to the present day.

How are Members of Parliament chosen?

a. They are appointed by the United Nations.
b. They are chosen by the provincial premiers.
c. They are elected by voters in their local constituency (riding).
d. They are elected by landowners and police chiefs.

OTHER STUDY QUESTIONS

- Name two key documents that contain rights and freedoms.
- Identify four (4) rights that Canadians enjoy.
- Name four (4) fundamental freedoms that Canadians enjoy.
- What is meant by the equality of women and men?
- Who were the founding peoples of Canada?
- Who are the Métis?
- What does the word "Inuit" mean?
- What is meant by the term "responsible government"?
- Who was Sir Louis-Hippolyte La Fontaine?
- What did the Canadian Pacific Railway symbolize?
- What does Confederation mean?
- What is the significance of the discovery of insulin by Sir Frederick Banting and Charles Best?
- What does it mean to say that Canada is a constitutional monarchy?
- What are the three branches of government?
- What is the difference between the role of the Queen and that of the Prime Minister?
- What is the highest honour that Canadians can receive?
- When Canadians go to vote on Election Day, what do they do?
- Who is entitled to vote in Canadian federal elections?
- After an election, which party forms the government?
- What are the three levels of government?
- What is the role of the courts in Canada?
- Name two Canadian symbols.
- What provinces are referred to as the Atlantic Provinces?

REFERENCE BOOKS

- Andrea A. J., McGeough K., Mierse W. E. World History Encyclopedia. ABC-CLIO, 2011. – p. 99.
- Bothwell R. Alliance and illusion: Canada and the world, 1945–1984. UBC Press, 2007. – pp. 11, 31.
- Boyer J. P. (1996). Direct Democracy in Canada: The History and Future of Referendums. Dundurn, 2006. – p. 119.
- Buckner P. Canada and the British Empire. – Oxford University Press. – pp. 37–40,
- Buckner P. A., Reid J. G. The Atlantic Region to Confederation: A History. University of Toronto Press, 2014. – pp. 55–56.
- Canadian Geographic. Royal Canadian Geographical Society, 2008. – p. 20.
- Canada ranked fourth in the world for scientific research". The Globe and Mail. September 26, 2012.
- Careless J. M. S. Canada: A Story of Challenge. Cambridge University Press, 2012.
- Courtney J.; Smith D. The Oxford Handbook of Canadian Politics. Oxford Handbooks Online, 2010 –p. 114.
- Derek H. Canada: an illustrated history. Douglas & Mcintyre, 2008. – pp. 7, 13.
- Dillehay T. D. The Settlement of the Americas: A New Prehistory. Basic Books, 2008. – p. 61.
- Edmonston B. Fong E. The Changing Canadian Population. McGill-Queen's Press. 2011. – p. 181.
- Graber C. B.; Kuprecht K.; Lai J. C. International Trade in Indigenous Cultural Heritage: Legal and Policy Issues. Edward Elgar Publishing ,2012. – p.366.
- Green J. "Canada's population hits 35 million". The Toronto Star, 2012.
- Johnson D. Thinking Government: Public Sector Management in Canada. University of Toronto Press, 2006. – pp. 374.
- Juneau T. "Canada's Policy to Confront the Islamic State". Canadian Global Affairs Institute, 2015.
- International Monetary Fund. "Report for Selected Countries and Subjects: Canada". Human development report" (PDF). UNDP. 2015.
- Madison G. B. Is There a Canadian Philosophy?: Reflections on the Canadian Identity. – University of Ottawa Press, 2000. – pp.128.
- Magocsi P. R. Encyclopaedia of Canada's Peoples. University of Toronto Press, 2015. – p.1048.
- McCormick P. Supreme at last: the evolution of the Supreme Court of Canada. James Lorimar & Company Ltd. 2011. – pp. 2, 86, 154.
- McKenna P. Canada Looks South: In Search of an Americas Policy. University of Toronto Press, 2012. – p. 91.
- Northcott D. M. Dying and Death in Canada. University of Toronto Press, 2008. – pp. 25–27.
- Rayburn A. Naming Canada: Stories about Canadian Place Names. University of Toronto Press. – pp. 14–22.
- Russell T. "Population history of Native North Americans". In Haines, Michael R; Steckel, Richard Hall. A population history of North America. Cambridge University Press, 2000. – pp.13,
- Sarrouh E. "Social Policies in Canada: A Model for Development". Social Policy Series, – No. 1. – United Nations. – pp. 14–16, 22–37.
- Statistics Canada "Population and dwelling counts, for Canada, provinces and territories, 2011 and 2006 censuses".
- The Canadian Encyclopaedia "John Cabot". Historica Canada. 2014.

Appreciation: the increase in the value of a currency relative to others under free market conditions.

Balanced budget: when a government's budget is balanced, all revenues equal expenditures in a budget year. Thus there is no surplus or deficit, but a national debt may still exist.

Balance of payments: a measure of all yearly business transactions between one country and the rest of the world. It is the difference between the value of exports and imports, as well as the difference between investment money coming into and leaving the country.

Bank of Canada: the sole money – issuing bank in Canada, acting as banker to all other financial institutions and the government. It is responsible for Canada's banking system, sets interest rates and regulates the money supply.

Bank rate: the interest rate at which the Bank of Canada is prepared to lend money to the chartered banks.

Cartel: a group of companies in a specific industry, which band together to restrict output and increase prices in order to get higher profits. In Canada, cartels are illegal. The best-known international cartel is the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC).

Consumer price index: an indexed measure of the average prices of household goods to show inflationary trends; compiled monthly by Statistics Canada.

Cost of living: the cost of maintaining a particular standard of living measured in terms of purchased goods and services. The rise in the cost of living in the same as the rate of inflation.

Deficit spending: the practice whereby a government goes into debt to finance some of its expenditures.

Demand – side economics: a school of thinking, which states that an economy can prosper through policies, which tend to increase public and private spending on goods and services.

Depreciation: the decrease in the value of a currency relative to other currencies under free market conditions. This differs from a devaluation.

Depression: a long period of little business activity when prices are low, unemployment is high, and purchasing power decreases sharply.

Devaluation: the official lowering of the value of a nation's currency relative to foreign currencies.

Disposable Income: income after taxes, which is available to persons for spending and saving.

Equalization payments: transfers of tax revenues from the Canadian government to provinces with a higher proportion of lower income earners, to compensate them for their lower per capita tax revenues.

Exchange rate: the price of one country's currency relative to another country's currency.

Fiscal policy: the deliberate use of government budget measures (i. e., tax and spending policies) to alleviate economic problems such as low GNP, high unemployment and inflation.

Free trade: a system whereby the free movement of all goods and services, investment money and workers between countries is neither restricted nor encouraged by governments.

Gross domestic product (GDP): the value of all goods and services produces in a country.

Gross national product (GNP): the value of all goods and services produces by citizens of a country both inside and outside the country.

Inflation: a steady rise in the average level of prices in an economy.

Less developed countries (L D Cs): also known as Third World countries, these are countries considered economically – underdeveloped relative to the western industrialized nations.

Minimum wage: a minimum hourly wage as set by federal or provincial legislation.

Monetary policy: the government's manipulation of interest rates and the money supply to achieve economic growth, employment and price stability.

Money supply: the amount of money in an economy, with money defined as all currency in circulation and chequing accounts.

National debt: the debt of the central government; in Canada's case, the federal government.

Per capita GNP: also known as per capita income, it is the nation's gross national product divided by its population.

Prime interest rate: the rate charged by chartered banks on short – term loans to large commercial customers with the highest credit rating.

Protectionism: government policies designed to restrict imports in order to protect domestic industries. These policies include customs duties of imports (quotas).

Real GNP: gross national product adjusted for inflation.

Recession: not as severe or as long- lasting as a depression but with the same general characteristics: a decline in real GNP for two consecutive quarters, with consequent unemployment and widespread softening in many sectors of the economy.

Stagflation: a high inflation rate combined with a high unemployment rate.

Supply – side economics: a school of thinking which states that an economy can prosper through policies affecting costs of production – that is, by giving production incentives to labour and greater financial rewards to investors.

Trade balance: the difference between the value of exports and imports.

Transfer payments: government payments to the provinces where no productive return is provided such as old age pensions, unemployment insurance and welfare.

Wage – price controls: legislation whereby the government sets wage, salary and price increases in order to curb inflation.

Wage – price spiral: inflation brought about by increased wages, which increase costs to the producers, who in turn increase prices. The increase in prices would cause labour to bargain for higher wages, resulting in a spiralling inflation.

INVESTMENT

Annual report: A report issued by a company to its shareholders at the end of the fiscal year. It contains a report on company operations and formal financial statements.

Banker's acceptance: A commercial draft backed by the guarantee of a bank. The bankers' acceptance promises repayment on a certain date, usually not more than 90 days away, and bears a rate of return competitive with other chartered bank securities.

Bear market: A market in which prices are falling.

Bid and ask: the bid price is the highest price anyone is willing to pay to buy a stock; the ask is the lowest price anyone will accept t sell a stock: Together, the bid and ask prices are a "quote".

Blue chip stocks: Stocks with good investment qualities, usually common shares of well – established companies with good earnings records and long- time dividend payments.

Board Lot: A unit of trading. Board lots on The Toronto Stock Exchange are: under 10 cents each – 1000 shares; between 10 cents and 99 cents each – 500 shares; at and above $1 each – 100 shares.

Bond: A written promise or IOU by the issuer to repay a fixed amount of borrowed money on specified date, and to pay a set annual rate of interest in the meantime, generally at semi- annual intervals. Bonds are usually considered a safe investment because the borrower (whether a company or the government) must make interest payments before its money is spent on anything else.

Bull market: A market in which prices are rising.

Call: An option to buy a fixed amount of a certain stock at specified price within a specified time.

Canada Savings Bonds: These are issued each fall, and are popular with small investors, because they come in denominations starting at $100. They are not traded. They have a term of several years, and a minimum guaranteed rate of interest. However, the government sets an effective rate during the issuing period each year, and adjusts it when necessary to conform to interest rate trends. Interest can be awarded yearly or compounded; depending upon which type of bond the purchaser buys.

Capital gain or loss: profit or loss resulting from the sale of an asset, such as a security. The gain or loss is the difference between the buying and selling price of the security, with commissions figured in.

Commercial paper: Short-term negotiable securities issued by corporations, which call for the payment of a specific amount of money at a given time.

Common shares: Securities issued by the company, which represent part – ownership in the company. Common shares sometimes carry a voting privilege and entitle the holder to a share in the company's profits usually issued in the form of dividends.

Corporate bonds: Evidence of debt by corporation. The bond bears interest much like a government bond, and matures at a certain date in the future. Considered safer than the common or preferred stock of the same company.

Day Order: An order to buy or sell a security valid only for the day the order is given.

Dividend: A portion of a company's profit paid to the common and preferred shareholders. The amount is decided upon by the company's board of directors, and may be paid in cash or stock.

Equities: Common and preferred stocks, which represent a share in the ownership of a company.

Ex – dividend: Without dividend. The buyer of shares quoted ex – dividend is not entitled to receive an already declared dividend. When shares are un – dividend, the purchaser will receive the declared dividend.

Floor trader: A brokerage firm employee who works on the tock exchange trading floor, and is responsible for executing buy and sell orders on behalf of the firm and its clients.

Futures: Contracts to buy or sell specific quantities of a commodity or financial instrument with delivery delayed until some agreed – upon time in the future.

Government of Canada Bonds: These bear a fixed rate of interest and maturation date in the future, and are traded on the market, with the price rising and falling in response to interest rate trends. Long-term government bonds are considered a safe investment. Provinces and municipalities may also issue long-term bonds.

Index: Statistical measure of the state of the stock market or economy, based on the performance of stocks or other components. Examples are the TSE 300 Composite Index and the Toronto 35 Index.

Limit order: An order to buy or sell securities in which the client has specified the price. The order can be executed only at the specified price or a better one.

Liquidity: The measure of how quickly an investor can turn securities into cash. A security is liquid if it can be bought and sold quickly with small price changes between transactions.

Long: A term signifying ownership of securities. "I am long 100 XYZ,» means that the speaker owns 100 shares of XYZ.

Margin: The amount paid by clients when they use credit to buy a security, the balance being loaned by their brokers.

Market order: An order to buy a security immediately at the best possible price.

Money market: Part of the capital market established for short-term borrowing and lending of funds. Money market dealers conduct business over the telephone, and trade securities such as short-term

(3 years and less) government bonds, government treasury bills and commercial paper.

Mutual fund: A portfolio, or selection, of professionally bought and managed stocks, in which the investor pools money along with thousands of other people. A share price is based on net asset value, or the value of all the investments owned by the fund, less any debt, and divided by the total number of shares. The major advantage is less risk – an investment is spread out over many stocks, and if one or two do badly, the remainder may shield the investor from the losses. Bond funds are mutual funds that deal in the bond market exclusively. Money market mutual funds concentrate on debt instruments sold on the money market. Equity mutual funds place their investments in the common shares of companies.

Odd lot: A number of shares less than a board lot.

Open order: An order to buy or sell a security at a specified price, valid until executed or cancelled.

Over – The – Counter: The over – the – counter (OTC) or unlisted market is market maintained by securities dealers for issues not listed on a stock exchange.

Penny stock: Low- priced, often speculative issues selling at less than $1 a share.

Preferred shares: Shares that carry dividends at fixed rates, which must be paid before any dividends are paid to common shareholders.

Price / earnings ratio: A common stock's current market price divided by the company's annual per share earnings.

Prospectus: A legal document describing securities being offered for sale to the public. It must be prepared in accordance with provincial securities commission regulations.

Put: An option to sell a fixed amount of a certain stock at a specified price within a specified time.

Registered representative: A salesperson or broker employed by an investment firm. Salesperson must be registered with the provincial securities commission.

Right: A temporary privilege granted to existing common shareholders to purchase additional shares directly from the company at a stated price.

Short sale: the sale of shares, which the seller does not own. The seller is speculating that the stock price will fall, in the hope of later purchasing the same number of securities at a lower price, thereby making a profit. Sellers must advise their brokers when they are selling short.

Stock yield: the %age of the dividend paid in relation to the price of the stock. For example, a stock selling at $40 a share with an annual dividend of $2 a share yields five %.

Transfer agent: A trust company appointed by a company to keep a record of the names, addresses and numbers of shares held by its shareholders. Transfer agents are often responsible for distributing dividend cheques.

Underwriting: The purchase for resale of a new issue of securities b an investment dealer or group dealers.

Warrant: A certificate giving the holder the right to purchase securities at a stipulated price within a specified period of time. They are often detachable and may be traded separately.

APPENDIX II

- **Aboriginal cultural experiences:** experiences that are offered in a manner that is appropriate, respectful, and true to the Aboriginal culture being portrayed
- **Aboriginal cultural tourism:** Aboriginal tourism that incorporates Aboriginal culture as a significant portion of the experience in a manner that is appropriate, respectful, and true
- **Aboriginal peoples:** the indigenous people (see below) of Canada, recognized in the Canadian Constitution Act as comprising three groups: First Nations, Métis, and Inuit
- **Aboriginal tourism:** tourism businesses that are majority owned and operated by First Nations, Métis, and Inuit (known as indigenous tourism outside of Canada)
- **Aboriginal Tourism Association BC (AtBC):** the organization responsible for developing and marketing Aboriginal tourism experiences in BC in a strategic way; members are over 51% owned and operated by First Nations, Métis, and Inuit
- **Aboriginal Tourism Association Canada (ATAC):** a consortium of over 20 Aboriginal tourism industry organizations and government representatives from across Canada
- **American Indian:** a term used to describe First people in the United States, still used today
- **Appropriation:** the action of taking something for one's own use, without the owner's permission
- **Authentic Indigenous Artisan Program:** protects Aboriginal artists by identifying three tiers of artwork based on the degree to which Aboriginal people have participated in their creation; a tool to combat cultural appropriation
- **Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous People:** a 2007 statement that set forth the minimum standards for the survival, dignity, and well-being of the indigenous peoples of the world
- **Eskimo**: a term once used by non-Inuit people to describe Inuit people; no longer considered appropriate
- **Export-ready criteria:** the highest level of market readiness, with sophisticated travel distribution trade channels, to attract out-of-town visitors and highly reliable service standards, particularly with groups
- **First Nation:** one of the three recognized groups of Canada's Aboriginal peoples (along with Inuit and Métis)
- **FirstHost:** an Aboriginal tourism workshop focusing on hospitality service delivery and the special importance of the host, guest, and place relationship
- **Indian (or Native Indian):** a legal term in Canada, once used to describe Aboriginal people but now considered inappropriate
- **Indigenous peoples:** groups specially protected in international or national legislation as having a set of specific rights based on their historical ties to a particular territory, and their cultural or historical distinctiveness from other populations
- **Indigenous tourism:** a synonym for Aboriginal tourism, the more commonly used term in BC **Inuit:** one of the three recognized groups of Canada's Aboriginal peoples (along with First Nation and Métis), from the Arctic region of Canada
- **Larrakia Declaration:** a set of principles developed to guide appropriate indigenous tourism development
- **Marae:** a communal or sacred centre that serves a religious and social purpose in Polynesian societies
- **Market-ready business:** a business that goes beyond visitor readiness to demonstrate strengths in customer service, marketing, pricing and payments policies, response times and reservations systems, and so on
- **Métis:** one of the three recognized groups of Canada's Aboriginal peoples (along with First Nation and Inuit), meaning "to mix"
- **Visitor-ready business:** often a start-up or small operation that might qualify for a listing in a tourism directory but is not ready for more complex promotions (like cooperative marketing); may not have a predictable business cycle or offerings

APPENDIX III
Lists of National Historic Sites by location

Alberta sites	Frog Lake (1923)
Manitoba sites	Exchange District (1996)
New Brunswick sites	Hartland Covered Bridge (1980)
Newfoundland and Labrador sites	Signal Hill (1951)
Nova Scotia sites	Pier 21 (1997)
Ontario sites	McCrae House (1966)
Prince Edward Island sites	L.M. Montgomery's Cavendish (2004)
Quebec sites	Île d'Orléans Seigneury (1990)
Saskatchewan sites	Canadian Bank of Commerce (1976)

APPENDIX IV
CANADIAN POLITICIANS

.	Portrait	Name (Birth–Death) District	Term of office	Electoral mandates (Parliaments)	Political party	Min.
1		Sir **John A. Macdonald** (1815–1891) MP for Kingston, ON	July 1, 1867 – November 5, 1873	(no parl't) Title created 1867 election(1st Parl't) 1872 election(2nd Parl't)	Liberal-Conservative Party	1st
			Minister of Justice; Integration of Rupert's Land and the North-Western Territory into Canada; Manitoba Act; Red River Rebellion; British Columbia and Prince Edward Island join confederation; Creation of the North-West Mounted Police; Resigned over Pacific Scandal			
2		**Alexander Mackenzie** (1822–1892) MP for Lambton, ON	November 7, 1873 – October 8, 1878	(Appointment2nd Parl't) 1874 election(3rd Parl't)	Liberal Party Named leader in 1873	2nd
			Pacific Scandal; Creation of the Supreme Court; Establishment of the Royal Military College; Created the office of the Auditor General			
(1)		Sir **John A. Macdonald** (1815–1891) MP for Victoria, BC until 1882 MP for Carleton, ON until 1887 MP for Kingston, ON	October 17, 1878 – June 6, 1891	1878 election(4th Parl't) 1882 election(5th Parl't) 1887 election(6th Parl't) 1891 election(7th Parl't)	Liberal-Conservative Party	3rd
			National Policy; Railway to the Pacific; North-West Rebellion; Hanging of Louis Riel. Died in office (stroke).			
3		Sir **John Abbott** (1821–1893) Senator for Quebec	June 16, 1891– November 24, 1892	(Appointment7th Parl't)	Liberal-Conservative Party	4th
			Minister without Portfolio; Succeeded on Macdonald's death due to objections to the Catholic John Thompson. In ill health; retired. First of only two prime ministers to serve while in the Senate.			
4		Sir **John Thompson** (1845–1894) MP for Antigonish, NS	December 5, 1892 – December 12, 1894	(Appointment7th Parl't)	Liberal-Conservative Party	5th
			Minister of Justice; First Catholic Prime Minister. Manitoba Schools Question. Died in office (heart attack).			
5		Sir **Mackenzie Bowell** (1823–1917) Senator for Ontario	December 21, 1894 – April 27, 1896	(Appointment7th Parl't)	Conservative Party (historical)	6th
			Minister of Customs; Minister of Militia and Defence; Manitoba Schools Question. As of 2015, last prime minister to serve while in the Senate.			
6		Sir **Charles Tupper** (1821–1915) Did not serve in Parliament while Prime Minister	May 1, 1896 – July 8, 1896	(no parl't) Appointment	Conservative Party (historical)	7th
			Minister of Customs, Minister of Railways and Canals; Oldest Canadian PM. Aimed to defeat Patrons of Industry, but dominated by Manitoba Schools Question. Never sat in parliament as Prime Minister.			

7		Sir **Wilfrid Laurier** (1841–1919) MP for Quebec East, QC	July 11, 1896 – October 6, 1911	1896 election(8th Parl't) 1900 election(9th Parl't) 1904 election(10th Parl't) 1908 election(11th Parl't)	Liberal Party Named leader in 1887	8th
			Manitoba Schools Question; Boer War; Alberta and Saskatchewan created; Creation of the Royal Canadian Navy; Reciprocity with the US; Department of External Affairs established; First French Canadian Prime Minister, removed the right of status Indians to vote.			
8		Sir **Robert Borden** (1854–1937) MP for Halifax, NS until 1917 MP for Kings, NS	October 10, 1911 – October 11, 1917	1911 election(12th Parl't)	Conservative Party (historical) Named leader in 1901	9th
			October 12,1917 – July 10, 1920	1917 election(13th Parl't)	Unionist Party	10th
			First World War; Military Service Act; Conscription Crisis of 1917; Union government; National Research Council; Introduction of income tax; Nickle Resolution; Women's suffrage; Suppression of Winnipeg General Strike; Canada sits at the Paris Peace Conference, signs the Treaty of Versailles and joinsLeague of Nations.			
9		**Arthur Meighen** (1874–1960) MP for Portage la Prairie, MB	July 10, 1920 – December 29, 1921	(Appointment13th Parl't)	National Liberal and Conservative Party Named leader in 1920	11th
			Solicitor General of Canada, Minister of Mines, Secretary of State for Canada, Minister of the Interior, Superintendant Indian Affairs; Grand Trunk Railwayplaced under control of Canadian National Railways.			
10		**William Lyon Mackenzie King** (1874–1950) MP for York North, ON until 1925 MP for Prince Albert, SK	December 29, 1921 – June 28, 1926	1921 election(14th Parl't) 1925 election(15th Parl't)[LS] [Min.]	Liberal Party Named leader in 1919	12th
			Minister of Labour; Chanak Crisis; lower tariffs; reinstated Crowsnest Pass Agreement; 1923 Imperial Conference; Halibut Treaty; Continued after 1925 withthird party Progressive support until resigning after his request for an election was refused by Governor General Lord Byng.			
(9)		**Arthur Meighen** (1874–1960) MP for Portage la Prairie, MB	June 29, 1926 – September 25, 1926	(Appointment15th Parl't)[Min.]	Conservative Party (historical)	13th
			Appointed as a result of the King–Byng Affair.			
(10)		**William Lyon Mackenzie King** (1874–1950) MP for Prince Albert, SK	September 25, 1926 – August 7, 1930	1926 election(16th Parl't)[Min.]	Liberal Party	14th
			Balfour Declaration; Introduction of old age pensions; first Canadian envoys with full diplomatic status sent to foreign countries (USA, France, Japan); Great Depression.			
11		**R. B. Bennett** (1870–1947) MP for Calgary West, AB	August 7, 1930 – October 23, 1935	1930 election(17th Parl't)	Conservative Party (historical) Named leader in 1927	15th
			Minister of Justice, Minister of Finance; Great Depression; Imperial Preference; Canadian Radio Broadcasting Commission; Canadian Wheat Board; Creation of the Bank of Canada.			

(10)		**William Lyon Mackenzie King** (1874–1950) MP for Prince Albert, SK until 1945 MP for Glengarry, ON	October 23, 1935 – November 15, 1948	1935 election(18th Parl't) 1940 election(19th Parl't) 1945 election(20th Parl't)	Liberal Party	16th
			Creation of the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation; National Film Board of Canada; Unemployment Insurance Act of 1940; Nationalisation of the Bank of Canada; Second World War; Conscription Crisis of 1944; Canada's entry into the United Nations; Trans-Canada Airlines; Gouzenko Affair.			
12		**Louis St. Laurent** (1882–1973) MP for Quebec East, QC	November 15, 1948 – June 21, 1957	(Appointment20th Parl't) 1949 election(21st Parl't) 1953 election(22nd Parl't)	Liberal Party Named leader in 1948	17th
			Minister of Justice, Secretary of State for External Affairs; Newfoundland joins confederation; right of appeal to Judicial Committee of the Privy Council ended; Canada's entrance into NATO; Suez Crisis; Creation of the United Nations Emergency Force; London Declaration; Newfoundland Act; Equalization; Trans-Canada Highway; St. Lawrence Seaway; Trans-Canada Pipeline; Pipeline Debate.			
13		**John Diefenbaker** (1895–1979) MP for Prince Albert, SK	June 21, 1957 – April 22, 1963	1957 election(23rd Parl't)[Min.] 1958 election(24th Parl't) 1962 election(25th Parl't)[Min.]	Progressive Conservative Party Named leader in 1956	18th
			Avro Arrow cancellation; Coyne Affair; Cuban Missile Crisis; NORAD; Canadian Bill of Rights; Allowed status aboriginals to vote in federal elections 1960;Alouette 1 satellite programme.			
14		**Lester B. Pearson** (1897–1972) MP for Algoma East, ON	April 22, 1963 – April 20, 1968	1963 election(26th Parl't)[Min.] 1965 election(27th Parl't)[Min.]	Liberal Party Named leader in 1958	19th
			Secretary of State for External Affairs; Bomarc missile program; Federal involvement in universal healthcare; Canada Pension Plan; Canada Student Loans;Creation of a new Canadian flag; Auto Pact; Rejection of troop deployment to Vietnam; Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism; Unification of the Armed Forces; Canadian Centennial celebrations.			
15		**Pierre Trudeau** (1919–2000) MP for Mount Royal, QC	April 20, 1968 – June 3/4,[*] 1979	(Appointment27th Parl't) 1968 election(28th Parl't) 1972 election(29th Parl't)[Min.] 1974 election(30th Parl't)	Liberal Party Named leader in 1968	20th
			Minister of Justice; "Trudeaumania"; "Just Society"; October Crisis and Use of the War Measures Act; Official Languages Act; Establishment of relations with Communist China; Victoria Charter; Creation of Petro-Canada; Membership in the G7; Metric Commission.			
16		**Joe Clark** (b. 1939) MP for Yellowhead, AB	June 4, 1979 – March 2/3,[*] 1980	1979 election(31st Parl't)	Progressive Conservative Party Named leader in 1976	21st
			Youngest Canadian PM. Defeated in a motion of no confidence on first budget.			
(15)		**Pierre Trudeau** (1919–2000) MP for Mount Royal, QC	March 3, 1980 – June 29/30,[*] 1984	1980 election(32nd Parl't)	Liberal Party	22nd
			Quebec referendum, 1980; Access to Information Act; Patriation of the Canadian Constitution; Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms; National Energy Program; Canada Health Act; Western alienation.			

17		**John Turner** (b. 1929) Did not serve in Parliament while Prime Minister	June 30, 1984 – September 16/17,[*] 1984	(Appointment 32nd Parl't)	Liberal Party Named leader in 1984	23rd
			Minister of Justice, Minister of Finance; Trudeau Patronage Appointments. Never sat in parliament as Prime Minister.			
18		**Brian Mulroney** (b. 1939) MP for Manicouagan, QC until 1988 MP for Charlevoix, QC	September 17, 1984 – June 24/25, 1993	1984 election(33rd Parl't) 1988 election(34th Parl't)	Progressive Conservative Party Named leader in 1983	24th
			Cancellation of the NEP; Meech Lake Accord; Petro-Canada privatization; Canada-US Free Trade Agreement; Introduction of the GST; Charlottetown Accord; Gulf War; Oka Crisis; Environmental Protection Act; NAFTA; Airbus affair.			
19		**Kim Campbell** (b. 1947) MP for Vancouver Centre, BC	June 25, 1993 – November 3/4,[*] 1993	(Appointment 34th Parl't)	Progressive Conservative Party Named leader in 1993	25th
			Minister of Justice, Minister of Veterans Affairs, Minister of National Defence, Minister of Intergovernmental Affairs; First female Prime Minister of Canada. Defeated and lost her seat in 1993 election.			
20		**Jean Chrétien** (b. 1934) MP for Saint-Maurice, QC	November 4, 1993 – December 11/12,[*] 2003	1993 election(35th Parl't) 1997 election(36th Parl't) 2000 election(37th Parl't)	Liberal Party Named leader in 1990	26th
			Minister of Finance, Minister of Indian Affairs, Minister of Energy, Mines and Resources, Minister of Justice and Energy Minister, President of the Treasury Board, Minister of National Revenue, Deputy Prime Minister of Canada; Red Book; HST; Quebec referendum, 1995; Clarity Act; Assassination attempt; Kosovo War; 1997 Red River Flood; Social Union Framework Agreement; Creation of Nunavut Territory; Youth Criminal Justice Act; Invasion of Afghanistan; Opposition to the Invasion of Iraq; Sponsorship scandal; Kyoto Protocol; Gomery Inquiry.			
21		**Paul Martin** (b. 1938) MP for LaSalle—Émard, QC	December 12, 2003 – February 5/6,[*] 2006	Appointment 37th Parl't) 2004 election(38th Parl't)[Min.]	Liberal Party Named leader in 2003	27th
			Minister of Finance; Minority government. Civil Marriage Act; Kelowna Accord; Rejection of US Anti-Missile Treaty; Sponsorship scandal; Gomery inquiry; G20; Atlantic Accord; Martin and his father Paul Martin Sr have the honorific title of Right Honourable			
22		**Stephen Harper** (b. 1959) MP for Calgary Southwest, AB	February 6, 2006 – November 3/4,[*] 2015	2006 election(39th Parl't)[Min.] 2008 election(40th Parl't)[Min.] 2011 election(41st Parl't)	Conservative Party Named leader in 2004	28th
			Accountability Act; Afghanistan Mission; Québécois nation motion; Apologies for Residential Schools and Head Tax; 2008 Financial crisis; Coalition crisis; Afghan detainee issue; Parliamentary contempt; Withdrawal from the Kyoto Protocol; Repeal of the Long-Gun Registry; Senate expenses scandal.			
23		**Justin Trudeau** (b. 1971) MP for Papineau, QC	November 4, 2015 – Incumbent	2015 election(42nd Parl't)	Liberal Party Named leader in 2013	29th
			Son of 15th Prime Minister Pierre Trudeau; simultaneously Minister of Intergovernmental Affairs and Youth; second father and son pair with honorific title of Right Honourable			

CONTENTS